

S

1822

A COMPLETE
ENGLISH GRAMMAR

On a NEW PLAN.

For the USE of FOREIGNERS,

AND

Such NATIVES as would acquire a Scientifical
Knowledge of their own Tongue.

In TWO PARTS.

CONTAINING,

I. An exact Analysis and
proper Division of Sound,
so far as it regards Pro-
nunciation, in all its Vari-
ety, according to the true
Genius and Idiom of the
ENGLISH Language.

II. The eight Parts of Speech
distinctly considered, with
the Declension of Articles,

Nouns, Pronouns, &c. and
the Conjugation of Verbs,
both regular and irregular;
at full length; by which
means, any one may learn
ENGLISH grammatically,
in the same easy, familiar,
and regular Manner as the
FRENCH and other Mo-
dern Languages.

The Whole interspersed with

Several short PRAXES and REMARKS at the End of
every Part of SPEECH.

To which are added,

SIMILAR COMPARISONS of the *Old English, Scotch, and
Welsh* Tongues, with the Modern ENGLISH; as also,
EXAMPLES for those who understand *Latin, Italian,
French, Spanish, Portuguese, &c.* shewing the Affinity of
the *English* to these Languages, and the natural Grada-
tion of Change, from one to another.

By CHARLES WISEMAN, N. P.

L O N D O N:

Printed for W. NICOL, in ST. PAUL'S CHURCH-
YARD. 1764.

THE COLLEGE OF GRAMMAR

OF THE UNIVERSITY

OF THE CITY OF BOSTON

AND OF THE COUNTY OF SUFFOLK

IN THE YEAR OF OUR LORD 1870

AND OF OUR INDEPENDENCE 100

AND OF THE FOUNDATION 100

THE COLLEGE OF GRAMMAR
OF THE UNIVERSITY
OF THE CITY OF BOSTON
AND OF THE COUNTY OF SUFFOLK
IN THE YEAR OF OUR LORD 1870
AND OF OUR INDEPENDENCE 100
AND OF THE FOUNDATION 100

THE COLLEGE OF GRAMMAR

OF THE UNIVERSITY
OF THE CITY OF BOSTON
AND OF THE COUNTY OF SUFFOLK

IN THE YEAR OF OUR LORD 1870

AND OF OUR INDEPENDENCE 100
AND OF THE FOUNDATION 100

CHAS. W. BARNES, A.B.

1870-1871

1870-1871
1870-1871
1870-1871

T O
His Most A U G U S T,
A N D
EXCELLENT MAJESTY,
G E O R G E the T H I R D,
King of GREAT-BRITAIN, &c.

T H I S
E N G L I S H G R A M M A R

Is most humbly inscribed,

B Y

His MAJESTY's

Ever Dutiful,

Loyal and Obedient,

Subject and Servant,

CHARLES WISEMAN.

TO THE
HONORABLE
THE HOUSE OF COMMONS
IN PARLIAMENT ASSEMBLED
PRESENTED BY
GEORGE THE THIRD
KING OF GREAT-BRITAIN,
BY
ROBERT GRAMMAR
A NEW EDITION
OF
THE HISTORY
OF THE
REIGN OF
GEORGE THE THIRD
BY
CHARLES WISEMAN.



T H E
P R E F A C E.

 F all parts of learning which our countrymen have cultivated, during this last century, with distinguished success, their own language seems to be that wherein their efforts have been most weak or unsuccessful. They stand justly foremost in other branches of Philosophy, and even their language is now considered by Foreigners as absolutely requisite to complete a learned education; yet the *English* themselves, either ignorant or unmindful of the treasure they possess, have carelessly suffered it to be adulterated by ignorance, or affectation. Like Kings panting after new conquests, they have indolently permitted their natural dominions to sink into desolation.

It must be owned, indeed, that many writers have been of late industriously employed in drawing up Grammatical Essays on the *English* tongue, incited, perhaps, by the apparent

rent utility of the design; but, probably, not sufficiently apprized of the labour which was to attend the undertaking. Thus we find them contenting themselves with driving their heavy labours in the track of former error, and never venturing from the beaten road in quest either of beauty or improvement. It is true, however, that in these there are often found some good grammatical instructions, which we have taken care to preserve and improve; yet the rules in all are so intricate and indigested, and so manifestly deficient, and even false in several places, that all but the writers themselves must be convinced of the necessity of another attempt to reduce our language into *system*. This I have undertaken; the errors of others I have taken care to correct, but the reader must judge for himself whether I have substituted any of my own.

Yet if the reader considers the number of prejudices to be surmounted in a work of this kind, and the many objections to be obviated, which either ignorance or vanity has thrown in our way, he will not be surprised to find us, while intent upon correcting the deviations of others, sometimes guilty of deviation ourselves. We were not only to guard against the errors of the ignorant, but the delusions of the learned. It has been asserted by the latter, for instance, that in order to produce a complete Grammar of our language, we should imitate the *Latin* in the formation

mation of our Cases, Moods, and Tenses; whilst others, on the contrary, affirm, that the *English* tongue has no similitude whatever with the *Latin* in this respect, and therefore they are for preventing our making use of the common technical terms usually employed in Grammars of our language: We have taken the liberty to dissent from both, and offer the present work as a proof that their opinions are erroneous. This Grammar will serve to shew that our language may be reduced to system, without the necessity of adhering so closely to the *Latin* as has been hitherto thought necessary; but, at the same time, care has been taken not to dissent so far from that standard language as to discard those grammatical terms borrowed from it, and which have acquired, by long use, a prescriptive right to be admitted into our own. Nothing but an excess of ridiculous affectation could induce some Grammarians to make use of new and barbarous terms, instead of those already well enough known to every novice in Grammar. The mere *English* reader frequently hears of the terms Noun Adjective, Verb or Adverb, and can probably tell what they mean from their frequent occurrence; but as for their modern substitutes, such as Name, Forename, Adname, and such like, he is quite at a loss to know their meaning, and requires as much information to lead him into their etymology as was requisite in the *Latin* terms themselves, but with
this

this disadvantage, that he may never meet with these again; whereas the *Latin* terms may probably occur in the next book he has recourse to. In order, therefore, to avoid such needless affectation, I have retained the common appellations of the several parts of speech; studious rather of improving things than words, as the perfection of an artist consists rather in making the proper use of known instruments, than in forming new for every occasion.

Others have with more plausibility insisted, that the *Latin* Grammar was the properest by which to learn *English*, and that, in order to come at the true construction and orthography of our own language, we should seek for both in the *Roman* tongue. But, whatever weight this might have with an *Italian* or *Spaniard*, whose languages have a near resemblance to the *Latin*, yet it can weigh but little with an *English* learner, who is to write a language very different both in sound and formation. If we were to learn any dialect previous to our own, it might, perhaps, with the greatest propriety, be the *Saxon*; from whence the greatest part of ours is derived, and with which it still bears the nearest affinity. The words which are merely of *Latin* derivation do not make up one fourth part of the *English* tongue; how then can the *Latin* be so absolutely necessary towards completing the *English* learner? It is so far otherwise,
that

that I will venture to affirm, that those, who never had the least acquaintance with *Latin*, may, by the proper use of this Grammar, become at once capable of writing *English* with correctness, elegance, and precision.

There is still another objection, which some are too apt to make, and with which they endeavour to palliate their own indolence; this is no other than that *English* may be very well learned without any Grammar whatsoever; but in this they most certainly are deceived, for though it is possible a young gentleman or lady may speak with tolerable propriety upon some particular subjects, yet when they come to write, even though it be but a letter, their deficiency will soon appear, and with this aggravating circumstance, that their name is generally signed to that which serves as a testimony of their defect. We acknowledge, indeed, that if they purloin from printed letters, they may flourish at a cheap expence, but not a volume of these can answer all the ordinary occurrences of life. To such young gentlemen or ladies, therefore, as desire to write with correctness, and at the same time decline the intricacies of a learned education, a work of this kind must be absolutely requisite, and I have accordingly endeavoured to make every part of it obvious to the meanest capacity. Either Foreigners, or the Fair Sex of our own nation,

x P R E F A C E.

nation, whose education is perhaps a little too much neglected, may here find a familiar and unaffected instructor, less solicitous to display his own abilities than to improve theirs.

As this work is chiefly calculated for the youth of both sexes, as well as for foreigners who are desirous of learning our language, I have taken the utmost care to adapt it to either class of learners. This has been attempted by others, but never so fully before; and the want there was of a good practical Grammar in all our schools induced me first to bend my studies towards supplying the defect. It was my design to draw up such a work as might lead the young scholar into a knowledge of *English*, in the same manner as he learns *French* or any other modern language. In it I have included all the parts of *English* speech, and have given upon every part such well-grounded rules as the assiduity of others might have pointed to me, or my own industry found useful. Nor have I been less careful in my examples to those rules; the reader of discernment will probably perceive them various and apposite, at once serving to illustrate the precept, and entertain the imagination. Some benefit may be also derived from their copiousness, as they may answer the purpose of an *English* vocabulary, furnishing a number of words which
the

the scholar will in the other parts of the work be taught to dispose, and thus make exercises from both in prose and verse. I have also fully and clearly explained the construction of all the parts of *English* speech; and have given the declensions of Articles, Nouns, and Pronouns, and the conjugation of all sorts of Verbs, both regular and irregular, at full length. At the end of every part of speech are inserted several short praxes and scientific remarks, calculated for those who have made a deeper progress in grammatical disquisitions.

Nor have I been less assiduous in directing the proper manner of pronouncing our language, than in the art of composition. In this respect, almost all Foreigners find the greatest difficulty, and demand the most able instructor. To pronounce our language with propriety, untinctured with provincial accent, foils even several Natives of our own empire; those therefore, I flatter myself, may by this Grammar in some measure remedy the defect. I have taken the utmost care to settle and mark the accents upon every word, so that its pronunciation may be precisely distinguished, except when the irregularity of our language absolutely rendered such an undertaking impossible. However, the redundant letters, which we as well as the *French*, have admitted into our language; letters which are always to be written yet are never pronounced, these,

these, I say, are always pointed out, so that Foreigners and Natives, at a distance from the capital, may be taught, as far as Books can teach, to give every word its true pronunciation and proper accent. When we thus ascertain the difference between speaking and writing, it in some measure prevents the future deviations of language, and hinders fashion from introducing barbarous affectation into our speech, and deters the orthographist from writing the language exactly as it is viciously pronounced.

As the instruction of Foreigners was no inconsiderable part of my aim in this work, I have not only been thus assiduous in directing their pronunciation, but have also added rules for such as understand the *Latin, Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, Dutch*, and other modern languages, in order to shew the near affinity between these and our own. The natural gradation from one language to another is pointed out in numerous examples, in a more distinct and conspicuous manner than in any thing of this kind ever yet published; so that we can at one view see how far our language is original, and how far we are indebted to others for its variety, richness, and beauty. This part of my undertaking has never been attempted before by any author in the same manner; I have, therefore, the timidity incident to every man, who adventures into an unfrequented region, solicitous to make new disco-

discoveries, yet if disappointed, ready to acknowledge my mistake.

As I have been thus solicitous to add to the grammatical store, by my own labours; equal pains have been used to retrench the former superfluity of others; a work of this kind should abound with all the rules necessary to instruct, but not to embarrass; it is designed not to gratify vain speculation, but to be converted into practical utility. It would have been needless, therefore, to engage the scholar's attention upon subjects not immediately useful; or to crowd the page, as others have done, with a multiplicity of notes collected from the Ancients, relative to the definitions, divisions and subdivisions of Grammar; all these the learned are supposed to know already, and the ignorant will find it a sufficient task at first to understand the more material parts of the art, without diving thus into the recesses of antiquity for fresh labour. Such a needless display of our abilities would only increase the Size, and consequently the price, of this volume; and at the same time consume those hours which the scholar might have more profitably employed in studying the necessary rules of the language. There is a delicate simplicity in all the finest works of art, and this simplicity Grammar sometimes teaches; let us, therefore, not admit foreign ornaments into a work of this kind, and thus destroy the force of our precept by the errors of our example.

Thus much with regard to the nature of the work offered to the public, it remains to say something of the manner of employing it, and the uses to which it may be applied. In learning any of the living languages, the first great point is to attain the proper pronunciation, on which, in a great measure, depends all its harmony and force. In learning *English* therefore, not Foreigners alone, but even *Englishmen* themselves, should be carefully instructed in this necessary part of the language, by which means they will avoid those provincial and local dialects, which are too often found in the mouths even of some who would be thought polite. Of all other languages, perhaps, our own requires the greatest care in this respect, the different manner in which numbers of words are pronounced and written, being so very anomalous, that many, even of the natives, can never attain the true sound without some assistance. At this part, therefore, it will be absolutely necessary for the young scholar to begin; and it should be the teacher's business, whether master or mistress (for this work is equally calculated for both) to shew him, by the help of Grammar, the various sounds that every particular letter, or combination of letters, is capable of admitting; thus he may be taught, for instance, that the letter *a* has different sounds, it is sounded like the *French* masculine *è* on most occasions, as in *face*, *place*; it hath a masculine sound like the *French a*, as in *tall*, *fall*; a feminine or weak sound, as in *man*, *can*; and

a sound between both these, as *arm*, *art*, *cart*, &c. and that it is sunk almost entirely in the words *Bargain*, *Captain*; and so of the rest. Thus the scholar will at length come to have a precise idea of the value of every letter, and give it upon every occasion, its proper pronunciation. As to Foreigners, they should first be taught the vowels, in the *English* manner, which is very different from the manner in which they are pronounced by other nations, and then they should be shewn their changes in composition. Above all things, they should be well grounded in the *English* orthography, for which purpose, they should be constantly employed in spelling words, from one to five or six syllables, and in reading some of our best authors, or even the news papers, the teacher all the time diligently attending and correcting any vicious pronunciation, and laying down the rules for every correction. Nor should the right placing the accent be ever omitted; for this purpose care should be taken to refer the learner to that part of Grammar, in which pronunciation is chiefly the object, so that he may be able to judge for himself of the propriety of every accent, which might to the inattentive appear the result of accident only. And here, perhaps, in this Grammar, while he seeks after the dryness of precept, he may be agreeably surprized with the fallies of imagination, as I have taken care at proper intervals to insert pleasant lessons, which like spots of verdure

in an Asiatic wild, may serve at once to afford the weary traveller rest and refreshment.

The pronounciation being thus settled, the tutor's next care should be to instruct his pupil in the declension of nouns, and the conjugation of some verbs, as they stand in the Grammar; and these the scholar should by all means get by heart, as in learning the *Latin* or *French* languages; but with respect to the remarks and other speculative rules, a diligent perusal will be sufficient.

As to the ornaments of style, they are fitter for the more advanced student than our young beginner, however, the teacher should not totally omit this part of his pupil's education. He should instruct him in the elegance of composition, rather by example than by mere precept. He should appoint him as a task, either to speak after, or transcribe the best authors, and his own taste should direct to the properest models to copy from. Were I to advise beginners, especially children, they should read only such Books as are easily understood, and written in the most plain and natural style, upon subjects capable of interesting the virtuous part of their passions, or subduing those which lead to Vice. Nor can I here avoid recommending several of this nature, published by Mr. *Newbery*, which seem happily adapted to delight and rectify the growing mind, and lead it up to truth, through the flowery paths of pleasure.

Æsop's

Æsop's fables, both in prose and verse, will also be a proper instructor ; and as they advance, books of a higher strain, and a more speculative turn, may be put into their hands with safety, such as the *Spectators*, *Tatlers*, *Guardians*, the *Rambler*, *Idler*, and *Adventurer*, and a few other periodical pieces of a later date ; these, with perhaps the works of our great poet Mr. Pope, will open their minds to all the beauties of our admirable language, and shew at once both its strength and conciseness.

From this stage of education, the scholar may next proceed to history, in which extensive field, that of his own nation ought certainly to be preferred. Every *Englishman*, how destitute soever of other riches, has one inestimable treasure, his country ; with that treasure, and all its advantages, it should be at once his pleasure and his boast to be thoroughly acquainted.

Nor should the pupils delivery or manner of reading be omitted among the rest of his institutions ; for this purpose, perhaps, those works which we have in blank verse are extremely proper, and a portion from one of these should every day be first read by the master, with the proper pauses and just emphasis, and then the scholar should endeavour to imitate him, as far as his abilities will permit. When he is at a loss for the mean-

ing in some of these productions, his tutor should be very careful to explain it, to shew him the peculiar elegance of every expression, and to point out which are obsolete, or which but lately introduced into the language. The learner should not only be thus employed in reading, but in writing extracts from those books, and even should get some of the most striking passages by heart. By these means, having amassed a fund of beautiful metaphors and exquisite descriptions, he may be at length set to compose something either in prose or verse, either a letter or an epistle, which should be first corrected several times by himself, and then by his tutor, whose business it should be constantly to refer him to his Grammar for a just disposition of the Syntax, and even to go so far as to make him give an account of every part of speech which his epistle contains, and point to each according to the general praxis on Grammar, laid down in the 365th page of the present work.

Such are the helps given, and such are the difficulties to be surmounted in attaining a perfect knowledge of our language; a language, which the rest of Europe have been but lately made acquainted with, and which they now regard as a new discovered mine of the richest ore. This language is now cultivated by all the polite world abroad, while our countrymen seem supinely negligent of it at home. The supineness of my countrymen
is

is surely an object of contempt or surprize, to see them neglecting their own language, as not worth cultivation, when the judicious *Spaniards* have made a dictionary of theirs, containing six volumes in folio; when the *French* have made it a national concern to spread theirs among all the courts of Europe, and have taken this as one of their routs to universal empire. This neglect I have among others attempted to obviate. “Tongues, “(says the ingenious Mr. *Johnson*) like governments, have a natural tendency to degeneration. We have long preserved our constitution, let us make some struggles for our language.” A noble resolution this, and whatever may be my strength, yet as the same ardour, which excited him, inspires me, I offer myself a champion in the same glorious cause; though perhaps with much inferior abilities, yet being furnished and assisted by others Works, there is a possibility of making *English* Grammar more complete than they have left it. They have, it must be granted, amassed from a variety of stores the materials for completing the edifice, by coming after them, perhaps, it has been my fortune to give the materials the most artful arrangement. Mr. *Greenwood*, upon this subject observes, that no such thing as a complete Grammar was to be expected from any one person, and indeed his own Grammar, which though perhaps one of the best hitherto extant, is certainly no contradiction to the truth of his
general

general assertion; yet after all, something complete may result from the successive application of different abilities to the same undertaking, and I will venture to offer the present work, as the most complete of the kind that has yet appeared among us. I am not insensible, however, of the inattention of the public at this juncture, and their disinclination either to examine a work of labour, or to do it justice when examined. I know how easy it is for vanity to assume a right of judging, even without the pains of reading, and how often some have been found to demolish a palace, who were unable perhaps to build up a hovel: Yet still I have strong expectations from the candour and discernment of many, whose superior abilities have taught them to know, that even mediocrity in so difficult a work deserves applause.

E R R A T A.

PAGE 4, for *donne* read *donné*. Ibid. for *pollysyllables* r. *dissyllables*. P. 11, for *ght* r. *gh*. P. 30, for *monosyllables* r. *words*. P. 31, for *hereafter* r. *healthful*. Ibid. for *monosyllables* r. *words*. P. 48, for *shall* r. *shal*. P. 56, for *wrote* r. *written*. P. 64, for *I* r. *1*. P. 85, for *loving* r. *living*. P. 111, for *consonant* r. *vowel*. P. 107, for *bullock* r. *steer*. Ibid. for *bridemaide* r. *bride*. P. 137, delete *hundred*. P. 203, for *regular* r. *irregular*. P. 257, for *rested* r. *vested*. P. 230, for *reflexion* r. *inflexion*. P. 263, for *participle* r. *passive*. P. 405, for 1563 r. 1653.



THE CONTENTS.

PART I.

CHAP. I.

Page

OF the Letters of the Alphabet, shewing their Pronunciation at one View 2

Of the Definition of Consonants and Syllables, and Exemplification of the five Vowels 3

More copious Instructions for Pronunciation upon all the Letters of the Alphabet 4

Of Diphthongs 24

CHAP. II.

Of long and short Sounds, also a List of Words shewing the Use of silent *e* 27

A List of Words, shewing when *b* is aspirated and when not 28

A List of Words, shewing the Use of the Letter *i* 29

A List of Words, shewing wherein most of the Letters of the Alphabet are entirely redundant 30

CHAP. III.

Of LIQUID SOUNDS 39

A general Praxis on Liquid Sounds 43

CHAP. IV.

Of PECULIAR SOUNDS ib.

Of Peculiar Sounds in *tb* 44

_____ in *cb* 45

_____ in *ph* 46

_____ in *re* 47

_____ in *dle* 48

_____ in *cial* and *tial* ib.

_____ in *cian* and *tian* 49

_____ in *cient* and *tient* ib.

_____ in *ciate* and *tiate* ib.

_____ in *titious* and *tition* ib.

_____ in *cious* and *tious* 50

_____ in *eous*, &c. ib.

_____ in *sion* 51

_____ in *tions* 52

The CONTENTS.

Of Hissing Sounds	56
Of Acute and Sharp Sounds	58
Of Long and Effeminate Sounds	59
Of Broad and Masculine Sounds	60

CHAP. V.

Of NASSAL SOUNDS	61
A general Praxis on Nassal Sounds	62
A Note on Guttural Sounds	63

CHAP. VI.

Of EQUIVOCAL EXPRESSIONS	64
--------------------------	----

CHAP. VII.

A general Praxis on ENGLISH DICTION	77
-------------------------------------	----

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Accent, Apostrophé, and Emphasis	80
Remarks on Letters and their Pronunciation	83

P A R T II.

CHAP. I.

O F the several Parts of SPEECH	94
Of NOUNS or NAMES, their Divisions and Subdivisions	96
Of Numbers, both regular and irregular, with exemplary Tables of each	97
Of Cardinal, Ordinal, Collective, and Distributive Numbers	102
Of Cases, their Signs and Nature	104
Of Genders, with three Tables shewing the Masculine, Feminine, and Common Genders at one View	105
Of Articles, both general and limited	108
Of Declensions of Nouns	109
Of Comparison of Adjectives, in three Tables	116
Of different Modes of Comparison	121
Of Diminutive Nouns	123
Of the Derivation and Formation of Nouns Substantive and Adjective	125
Of Compound Words	131
Remarks on Nouns	ib.

CHAP. II.

Of PRONOUNS	139
Of the Declension of Personal Pronouns	140
_____ of Possessive Pronouns	141
_____ of Demonstrative Pronouns	142
_____ of Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	ib.
Sundry Praxes or Lessons on the Pronouns	243
Remarks on Pronouns	245

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. III.

Of VERBS or AFFIRMATIONS	150
Of Conjugation	ib.
Of Moods, with a Table of their Signs and Nature	151
Of the Division of Verbs	154
Of Auxiliary or Helping Verbs	155
Of the Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>to have</i>	159
_____ of the Auxiliary Verb <i>to be</i>	160
_____ of the Auxiliary Verb <i>to do</i>	163
_____ of the Auxiliary Verbs, <i>may, can,</i> <i>shall, and will</i>	165
_____ of Regular Verbs	167
_____ of the Regular Verb Active <i>to sail</i>	ib.
A List of Regular Verbs ending with a Consonant	169
Of the Conjugation of the Regular Verb Active <i>to love</i>	173
A List of Regular Verbs ending with a Vowel	176
Of the Conjugation of the Regular Verb Active <i>to edify</i> <i>or edifie</i>	178
A List of Regular Verbs ending in <i>y</i> or <i>ie</i>	181
Of the Conjugation of the Verb Passive <i>to be feared</i>	183
Of the double Conjugation of the Verb <i>to hear</i> both Active and Passive at one View	185
Of the Conjugation of the Irregular Verb <i>to read</i>	189
_____ <i>to bend</i>	191
_____ <i>to spell</i>	193
_____ <i>to bring</i>	196
_____ <i>to sweep</i>	198
_____ <i>to lead</i>	201
_____ <i>to bind</i>	203
_____ <i>to make</i>	205
Of the Conjugation of Irregular Verbs, whose Present Tense, Perfect Tense and Participle are distinct	207
Of the Conjugation of the Verb <i>to strive</i>	208
_____ <i>to throw</i>	209
_____ <i>to swear</i>	211
_____ <i>to sing</i>	213
_____ <i>to drink</i>	217
_____ <i>to hide</i>	220
_____ <i>to take</i>	222
_____ <i>to see</i>	224
_____ <i>to go</i>	226
A List of Irregular Verbs, conjugated as the above	229
Of Verbs of one Ending	230
Of Reflected Verbs	231
Of the Conjugation of the Reflected Verb <i>to flatter ones self</i>	232
Of Reciprocal Verbs	234
Of Impersonal Verbs	235
Of the Conjugation of Active and Neutral Impersonals	236

The CONTENTS.

Of the Conjugation of Passive and Neutral Impersonals	239
A general Praxis on Verbs Impersonal, expressing natural and moral Actions	242
Of the Conjugation of Verbs Active, in all their Significations, whether Affirmative, Negative, or Interrogative	242
Of the Conjugation of Verbs Passive in all their Significations	244
Remarks on Verbs	248
CHAP. IV.	
Of PARTICIPLES	263
Remarks on Participles	266
Of Gerunds	271
CHAP. V.	
Of ADVERBS	ib.
Remarks on Adverbs	279
CHAP. VI.	
Of CONJUNCTIONS, with Praxes on each	288
Remarks on Conjunctions	294
CHAP. VII.	
Of PREPOSITIONS, both separable and inseparable, with copious Examples on each	299
Remarks on the separable Prepositions	320
CHAP. VIII.	
Of INTERJECTIONS	340
Remarks on Interjections	341
Of SYNTAX or SENTENCE	343
Of Transposition or transplacing of Words	347
Of Ellipsis, or leaving out Words	349
Of Points or Pauses used as Intervals in reading	351
Praxis on Grammar in general	365
Exercises on False Syntax	367
Of Letters and Words that imply a Likeness to the Thing signified	371
Of Peculiarities	376
Of Technical Terms of Things in common Use	377
Of English Idioms	378
Of English Similitudes	383
Of Galicisms	385
Of English Proper Names	388
A Comparative View of the Scotch and English	399
————— of the Welsh and English	412
Examples of Words, for those who understand the Foreign Languages, shewing the great Affinity between them and the English	415



A

C O M P L E T E

ENGLISH Grammar.



C H A P. I.

Of PRONUNCIATION.

 PRONUNCIATION is a true and natural Manner of expressing Syllables and Words in any Language, according to its Genius, either with Regard to QUANTITY, TONE, or ACCENT, which in *English* may be divided into four manner of Sounds, viz. LONG, SHORT, LIQUID, and PECULIAR, as shall be shewn in distinct Chapters, to which I refer as to their proper Places.

B

Letters

Letters of the Alphabet, shewing their Pronunciation at one View.

The English Alphabet consists of twenty-six Letters.

Capital	Small	Eng. Words	Foreign Sounds corresponding.		
			Span. & Port.	French.	Italian.
A	a	a	e	ai or é	e
B	b	bee	bi	bi	bi
C	c	fee	fi	ci	fi
D	d	dee	di	di	di
E	e	e	i	i or y	i
F	f	eff	ef	eff	ef
G	g	jee	* gi	dgi	gi
H	h	aich	ech	aitch	èce
I	i	eye	ei	äi	ei
J	j	jay	* je	djai	g
K	k	kay	que	quai	che
L	l	ell	el	ell	el
M	m	em	em	emm	em
N	n	en	en	enn	en
O	o	owe	o	o or au	o
P	p	pee	pi	pi	pi
Q	q	cue	quiu	quiou	qu or chiù
R	r	ar	er	err	er
S	s	efs	efs	efs	efs
T	t	tea	ti	ti	ti
U	u	you	yu	iou	iu
V	v	vee	vi	vi	vi
W	w	double you	dobl' yu	doble iou	dobl' iu
X	x	eks	ex	ecs	ecs
Y	y	wy	vei	ouäi	vei
Z	z	izzard or zed	zed	zed	zed

* The *Spanish* and *Portuguese* Tongues have no Sounds corresponding to the *English* g, and j; for the former sound them guttural, and the latter soft as the *French* do.

The foregoing twenty-six Letters of the English Alphabet are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

A *Vowel* is a Letter which makes a perfect Sound of itself. There are five in Number, *a, e, i, o, u*, to which may be added *y*; but this having the same Sound as *i* at the latter End of Words, we need not make it a distinct Vowel.

A *Consonant* is a Letter that cannot be sounded without adding a Vowel either before or after it, as *m*, which is sounded *em*, and *p* as *pe*. It comes from the Latin *Consonans*, because it consones or sounds with another Letter.

A *Syllable* is a perfect Sound made of one or more Letters, expressed in one Breath, as, *Ca-la-mi-ty*, are four distinct Syllables.

The Quantity of LETTERS required to form a Syllable are generally any Number under ten, as in these Words, *I, he, she, that, thing, though, thought, thoughts, straights*.

The Quantity of SYLLABLES required to form a Word are seven or eight at the most, as *Re-con-ci-li-a-ti-on, Ra-ti-o-ci-na-ti-on, In-com-pre-hen-si-bi-li-ty*.

It may be observed that any of the five Vowels with a Consonant make a Syllable, but without a Vowel it cannot be formed, for Consonants alone spell nothing, as *frm*, but join *o* to them, which is a Vowel, and *f-r-o-m* spell *from*, and so of numerous other Instances of the like Kind: But I shall not insist much upon these Divisions and Distinctions, it being sufficient just to have mentioned them, and to observe in general that of *Letters* are formed *Syllables*, of *Syllables* *Words*, and of *Words* *Sentences*, which are what compose or make up the whole of all the Parts of Speech contained in any Language.

Exemplification of the five Vowels.

English Vowels {	a	e	i	o	u
Foreign Sounds. {	aw	a	e	o	eu or oo

Note, The English *e* is the Foreign *a*, and the Foreign *e* is the English *i*.

Upon these five Vowels depend the true Pronunciation of most of our modern Languages: And here it

may be remarked, that as every Nation has its peculiar Custom, so every Tongue has its prevailing Sound, which evidently distinguishes the People of that Nation; for Instance, the *Hebrew*, *Spanish*, and *Welsh* Languages are chiefly *guttural*, those of the *French* and *Portuguese* *nassal*, the *Italian* *soft* and *liquid*, the *Scotch* *broad* and *masculine*, and the *English* *weak* and *slender*, but no way disagreeable, except that it borders rather upon a kind of hissing, which, if it be a Fault, is much more prevalent in the *Latin* Tongue, from whence great Numbers of our Words are derived, as may be seen even in this single Instance of but five Words, which at the same Time are very applicable to all diligent Scholars, *Sat cito si sat bene*, they learn quick enough who learn well; but this only, by the way, for the Scholar's Amusement. I shall now proceed to

Further and more copious Instructions for Pronunciation upon all the Letters of the English Alphabet.

A

Is a Vowel whose Sound is so simple as to be formed only by the opening of the mouth; it is generally pronounced among us with a smaller and more slender Sound than among any other Nations, exactly in the same Manner as the *French* do their Diphthong *ai* in *jamais*, never, and their *é* masculine in *donné*, given, &c.

It has two Sorts of Sounds in the Formation of Words, which like those of the *French* may be distinguished into *masculine*, i. e. broad, as *all*, *tall*, *fall*, and into *feminine*, i. e. weak or slender, as *Man*, *can*, *pan*, &c. which last Words are long or short, according as they stand by themselves or are joined by the silent *e*, of which I shall speak hereafter.

It is also pronounced weak and short when *ll* or *nn* are parted in the Middle of a Word, as, *dally*, *rally*, *Pannic*, *Fanny*, &c. It is short in Monosyllables not ending with *e*, as *mad*, *had*, *bat*, *fat*, &c. and in Poly syllables, when followed by two Consonants, as *apply*, *assist*, *admire*, *aspire*, &c.

It is lost or sunk at the End of most Words terminating in *ain*, as *Bargain*, *Captain*, *Chaplain*, *Curtain*, *Fountain*, *Mountain*, *Murrain*, *Plantain*, *Villain*, all which are pronounced *Bargin*, *Captin*, *Chaplin*, &c. as also in the following Words, *weak*, *sneak*, *bead*, *spread*, *boat*, *coat*, &c. as may be more fully seen in treating of *a* redundant.

It is obscure, or not plainly pronounced in these Words, *Carriage*, *Marriage*, *Parliament*, *Thousand*: Also observe, there are none but proper Names that end with this Vowel, except the following seven that sound only the *e*, as *lea*, *flea*, *plea*, *pea*, *sea*, *tea*, *yea*, which last Word is become almost obsolete.

It has the Sound of *u* at the End of the following Words, as *Altar*, *Angular*, *Calendar*, *Jocular*, *Medlar*, *Pedlar*, *Pillar*, *Solar*, *Scholar*, &c. and is often superfluous at the Beginning, as *abide*, *amend*, *arise*, *awake*, &c. for, *bide*, *mend*, *rise*, *wake*, &c.

Observe, no *English* Word begins with two *aa*, except *Aaron*, which is rather a *Hebrew* name; and where *a* is double in the Middle of Words, as it is in many Scripture Names, drop one in the Pronunciation, as *Isaac*, *Balaam*, *Canaan*, except *Baal*, *Gaal*, &c.

Note, Our Alphabet seems to want a Letter, or some Sort of Character equivalent to it, to express the Sound we give *a*, as in the Words *all*, *wall*, *talk*, *walk*, *balk*, &c.

B

Is called in Latin *Litera labialis*, the Labial or Lip-Letter, because it cannot be pronounced without closing the Lips together.

It retains its natural Sound at the Beginning of all Words, as *bad*, *bed*, *bit*, *but*; but is not always pronounced in the Middle, as in the Word *doubt* and its Compounds, and is never used double at the End of Words. It sounds like two *bb*, in *double*, *treble*, &c.

It serves, like *e* final, to lengthen the Syllable in these following, *climb*, *bomb*, *comb*, *tomb*, *womb*.

It is entirely redundant at the End of many Words, as may be seen among the redundant Letters. It is

double in *abbot, abbess, abby, shabby, tabby, lobby, hobby, bobble, cobble, &c.*

C

Before *a, o, u, l,* and *r,* is always hard like *k,* as *cat, cot, cup, cloth, crab, &c.* though these Words seem more natural to be wrote with *k,* as the *Dutch* do in *Pakker*; but before *e, i,* and *y,* it is always sounded soft like *s,* as *cellar, city, cypress.* It has also the Sound of *s* in *muscle, ascend, disciple,* and also in Words that have an Apóstrophé, denoting the Absence of *e,* as *plac'd, trac'd,* for *placed, traced, &c.*

We have no Occasion to use the ç Cedilla of the *French,* or Plica of the *Portuguese,* because (the same being invented purely to supply the Defect in the Combination of *ce, ci,* in the Vowels *a, o, u,* as *ça, ço, çu,* which sounds *sa, so, su*) whenever the hard Sound of *c* comes before the Vowels *e, i,* or *y,* in *English* the Letter *k* is always put in its Stead, as *ken, kin, kind, Keyneton.*

But where this Letter *c* has a soft Sound at the End of a Syllable, or before a Consonant, or the Vowels *a, o, u,* we usually add the silent *e,* to render the Sound still softer, as *cháce, fóce, advánce.*

Most Words ending in the Sound of *ace, ece, ice, oce, uce,* must be written with *ce* and not *se,* except these Words, *base, abase, debase, cease, decrease, increase, geese, concise, paradise, promise, close, loose, use, recluse, abuse, abstruse, &c.* Also most Words ending with the Sound of *ance, ence, ince, once, and unce,* must be written with *c* between *n* and *e,* and not *s,* except in these Words following, *dense, condense, dispense, tense, intense, sense, propense, suspense.*

It has a peculiar Sound before *h,* like *tch,* as *chance, cherry, chip, chop, chuck, &c.* but in *chymist, chorus, &c.* it is hard like *k,* as will be seen afterwards, when we treat of peculiar Sounds. Also when double before a Consonant it is sounded hard like *k,* and shorter than single *c,* as *acclamation, accord, accomplice, account, accrue, accumulate, accuse, occur, &c.* but before the Vowels *e* and *i,* the first *c* is hard, and the second like
an

an *s*, as *access*, *accent*, *accept*, *accident*, *accidence*, &c. When single *c* is followed by *l* it has the Sound of *g*, in this one Word *clyster*.

It is lost or sunk in Words beginning with *sc*, as *scent*, *scene*, *science*, *scepter*, except in *sceptic*, *skeleton*, *scoundrel*; but in *conscience* it is sounded like *sh*, thus, *conshence*.

It is also lost in *verdict*, *viſuals*, *viſualler*, *indictment*, &c. and is entirely redundant in the following Sort of Monosyllables, *back*, *deck*, *lick*, *lock*, *luck*, &c. as may be more fully ſeen in *c* redundant.

D

At the Beginning of Words always retains its own genuine and natural Sound, as *day*, *deer*, *dine*, *done*, *due*, &c. but in the Middle is entirely redundant, as will be ſhewn hereafter.

It ſounds like two *dd* in *shadow* and *meadow*.

It is obſcure in theſe Words, *almond*, *ribband*, *worldly*, *friendſhip*.

It ſerves like *e* final, to lengthen the Syllable in all the following Words, *bind*, *find*, *kind*, *mind*, *hind*, *rind*, *wind*, &c. As to double *dd* at the End of Words, the laſt *d* ſeems ſuperfluous, but Cuſtom preſerves it in *add*, *odd*.

E

Is pronounced with an acute and clear Sound, and may be diſtinguiſhed by, or divided into *long* and *ſhort*; the former thus, *Eve*, *evil*, *even*, *evening*, *equal*, *Ely*, *Peter*, *Egypt*, &c. the latter thus, *hen*, *then*, *pen*, *den*, *men*, &c. Before *r* it has often (though not properly) the Sound of *a*, as *merchant*, *conſerve*, *preſerve*, *perfect*, *ſervant*, *ſervice*, &c.

It is ſcarce ever pronounced with an obſcure Sound, unleſs the ſhort *e* goes before *n*, as *bitten*, *beaten*, *bounden*, *beholden*, *garden*, *harden*, *haſten*, *lengthen*, *ſtrengthen*, *ſeven*, *heaven*, *eleven*, *raven*, *driven*, *cloven*, *ſloven*, *taken*, *forſaken*, &c. But *e* ſimple at the End of a Word, eſpecially a Monosyllable, is altogether mute or ſilent, having now

no Sound of its own at all, as *make, have, save, &c.* except the definite or limited Article *the*, and these personal Pronouns, viz. *he, she, me, we, ye*, and the auxiliary passive Verb *be*, all which are founded long like *ee*; to which may be added the following Names, *Cloe, Daphne, Phebe, Penelope, Thysbe*, and all other Words of foreign Extraction, such as, *Jesse, simile, jubile, catastrophe, apostrophe*, for, as hath been said, the single *e* is seldom or never pronounced at the End of Words; but whenever it is, it is expressed by another silent *e* added to it, as *see, fee, flee, free, lee, glee, knee, tree, three, Pharisee, Saducee*, and also the Pronoun *thee*, and the Substantive *Bee*, an Insect, so wrote to distinguish them from *the*, the Article, and *be*, the Verb; or else *a* is added to it, as *sea, pea, &c.* or by adjoining the Letter *y*, as *Marshalsey, Langley, Henley, Money*, though the *e* is now left out, as *Mony, Henly, &c.* Custom beginning to prevail in the Omission of it.

I shall not here trouble the *English* Scholar with an elaborate Account of the Original of this silent *e*, the Use of it as it now stands being of much more Importance to him; let him observe, that although the silent *e* be not now pronounced, yet it is not altogether unnecessary, for it serves for two Purposes, first, to preserve or lengthen the foregoing Vowel, and, secondly, to soften the Sound of *c, g, and th*, as in these Words, *since, huge, breathe, &c.* which if *e* were omitted, would sound harder and stronger, as *sinc, hug, breath*, besides that it gives quite a different Meaning to the same Word, as may be more amply seen in the List of Words, treating of silent *e*.

Words that end in silent *e*, whether they be afterwards compounded, or receive an additional Termination, do yet retain it if there be Occasion, and then it has the same Force as it had before, but it is scarce ever found in the Middle of a Word, unless it were originally a final *e*; so these Words, *miles, graves, lives, defiles, rarely, finely, changeable, chargeable, &c.* do all retain the silent *e*, because it was final and silent in *mile, grave, life, defile, rare, fine, change, charge, &c.* Here it is not founded in the Plural, because it

was

was not in the Singular; however observe, that the *e*, which is silent in the singular Number, is often pronounced in the Plural, as *house, houses, vice, vices, &c.*

The *e* is not sounded nor wrote in the following Plurals, *hands, lands, sands*, but in *tendeth, mendeth, liveth, giveth, maketh, &c.* the *e* is here sounded, not because it was a mute *e*, but because it belongs to the personal Termination *eth* at the End of those Verbs.

It has the Sound of *u* in all the following Words, *Her, anger, auger, adder, adulterer, ballister, blister, fodder, crupper, daughter, slipper, liberty, &c.*

It is pronounced like *a* in *there* and *where*.

The Sound of *ee* is very long, being to be pronounced like the Spanish *i* in *ido*, gone, as *bleed, creed, deed, feed, need, flee, freed, heed, weed, queen, seen, been*, where both *ees* are sounded together as one Letter; but in the following compound Words the two concurrent Vowels must be distinctly pronounced, like the Spanish in *leer*, to read, as *re-enter, re-edify, pre-eminence*, and also where *i* is joined to *e*, as *reinstate, reinforce*, and *e* to *a*, as *reassume, readmit, reanimate, beatitude, genealogy, theatre, create, creator*, and *e* to *o*, as *Creole, pre-ordain, preoccupy*; but these Words, *creature, feature*, and the like, are excepted, the Accent laying entirely on the first *e*, with the Force of *ee*, as will afterwards be shewn, when we treat of redundant Letters.

It begins double only in this one Word, *eel*.

The following Words *compleat, repleat, extream, supream*, are indifferently wrote, *complete, replete, extreme, supreme*, but this last Manner is the best, as being nearest the original Latin, from whence they are derived.

When *e* is joined to *m* or *n* at the Beginning of Words, it is generally pronounced like *i*, as *embrace, employ, entire, engage, endeavour, except, enter, entertainment*.

It is entirely silent in *heart, hearth, &c.* as may be seen in the List of Words treating of *e* redundant.

F

By some is reckoned a mute Consonant, by others a semi-vowel. It has with us much the same Sound as the Greek ϕ , for which Reason some affirm, that in Words of Greek extraction we should write *ph*, and *f* only in those of Latin Original.

As to *ff* at the End of Words, the last *f* seems quite superfluous, except in *off*, as *keep off*, *carried off*, *gone off*, &c. which is to distinguish it from the Particle *of*. But Custom has prevailed in the following Words, viz. *cliff*, *skiff*, *stiff*, *staff*, *scoff*, *buff*, *bluff*, *cuff*, *huff*, *muff*, *puff*, *stuff*, *snuff*, *rebuff*.

It is pronounced soft like *v*, in the following manner of Expression, *what of him*, as though it were wrote, *what ov him*, and sometimes is left out, as *what o' that*, i. e. *what of that*. The Dutch write and pronounce *vader*, i. e. father, which shews the great affinity of *f* and *v*, and *d* and *t*, as the English did in former Days, when they used *th* instead of *d*, as *mur-ther* for *murder*, and *d* for *th*, as *moder* for *mother*.

G

Has a hard and soft Sound according as it happens to come before particular Letters, viz. before *a*, *o*, and *u*, it is generally hard, as in *game*, *gore*, *gun*, &c. except *goal*, when it signifies a Prison, which sounds *jail*, and should be so wrote; but before *e* and *i* it has commonly a soft and easy Sound, like the Letter *j*, as in *giant*, *gentlemen*, *ginger*, *danger*, &c. except in the following Words, where it retains its hard Sound, as *geese*, *geer*, *anger*, *get*, *beget*, *auger*, *geld*, *gelding*, *linger*, *finger*, *longer*, *eager*, *tyger*, *together*, &c. also *begirt*, *begin*, *biggin*, *gig*, *giggle*, *gift*, *giddy*, *Gilbert*, *Gibbons*, *girl*, *gimlet*, *give*, *gimp*, *gills*, *gild*, *girt*, *gird*, *girdle*, *flaggon*, *pig*, *piggin*, *noggin*, &c.

It is also hard by the Addition of *u*, as *guess*, *guilt*, *guide*, *guile*, *beguile*, *guise*, *disguise*, *guild*, &c.

It has a nasal Sound at the End of Words, as *sing*, *bring*, &c. as will be shewn in treating of nasal Sounds, but

but it is not pronounced at all at the Beginning of Words, as *gnat*, *gnaw*, *gnash*.

It is written in many Words where the Sound is not perceived, both in the Middle and at the End, as *Seignor*, *seraglio*, *sign*, *design*, *consign*, *ensign*, *resign*, *condign*, *deign*, *feign*, *reign*, *arraign*, *foreign*, *sovereign*, *phlegm*, *bagnio*, *benign*, *malign*. When joined to *h* thus *gh*, in the same Syllable, it sounds like *ff*, as *laugh*, *rough*, *cough*, *hough*, *tough*, *enough*, as if wrote, *la^{ff}*, *rou^{ff}*, &c. but *ght*, like *e* final, serves to lengthen the Syllable, as *sight*, *light*, *might*, *tight*, *weight*, *bright*, *sight*, *fight*, *fright*, *plight*, *spight*, *spright*; though after all, the Sound of this Letter *g* is very uncertain, for in *monger* it is hard, but in *manger* it is soft like *j*. So likewise when it is double in the Middle of Words, as *dagger*, *swagger*, *stagger*, &c. both *g*'s are to be pronounced hard; but in the word *suggestion*, the first is hard, and the second soft like *j*, as if it were wrote thus, *sug^jgestion*. Also observe that *g* is never double at the End of Words, except in *egg* and *jagg*, and even here it might be spared.

H

Is the eighth Letter, and sixth Consonant in our Alphabet. Some Gentlemen over curious in their Criticisms have very much contested whether it is a Letter or no, calling it only a mere Aspiration or Breathing, tho' in our Language all the World (who are not PRISCIANUS blind) may plainly see it is really, and to all Intents and Purposes, as much a Letter as any other Consonant in the *English* Alphabet; for as its Aspiration distinguishes one Noun from another, as *edge* and *bedge*, so it also distinguishes one Verb from another, as *to allow*, *to hallo^w*, and a Verb from a Noun of the same Signification, as, *an owl*, *to howl*, and a Verb from a Pronoun, as, *it*, *to hit*, all which will be afterwards seen in the List of Words, shewing when *h* is and is not aspirated, and also in my Remarks upon this Letter.

H is not pronounced at all, either at the Beginning, Middle, or End of many Words, as may be seen in
treating

treating of *b* redundant, to which I refer, as to its proper Place.

I

Has a long and short Sound according to its Position; when it is long it is pronounced like *ei* and *ey* of the Spaniards in *Reino*, a Kingdom, *Ley*, a Law, as *mine*, *thine*, &c. when it is short it is sounded like the *i* of the French and other Nations, as *bit*, *quit*, *win*, *pin*, *twin*, *thin*, *din*, &c. nor is it always owing to the silent *e* that *i* is lengthened, as in *bite*, *quite*, *wine*, &c. for it has the same long Sound where no *e* follows, as *bind*, *kind*, *mind*, *blind*, *grind*, &c. and also in Verbs that have an Apóstrophé, denoting the Absence of *e*, as *lin'd*, *pin'd*, *twin'd*, &c. There is also a third Sort of *i*, sounded like *ee*, as *oblige*, which is pronounced *obleege*, much like the French *Magazine* and *Machine*, which last are also become English Words.

It is sounded full and long in most proper Names, as *Jeremiah*, *Hezekiah*, *Obediah*, *Zephania*, &c. but when followed by *r*, it is pronounced like *u*, as in these Words, *bird*, *birch*, *birth*, *mirth*, *firm*, *girdle*, *virgin*, *sir*, *stir*, *stirrup*, *spirt*, *shirt*, *squirt*, *skirt*, *skirmish*, *stirt*, *dirt*, *thirst*, *first*, *third*, *thirty*, *thirteen*, *firkin*, *kirk*, *smirk*, *whirl*, *twirl*, *squirrel*, but the Word *girl* is often pronounced *gal*.

It is lost in *brief*, *chief*, *raise*, *praise*, &c. and many more, as will be seen afterwards in treating of *i* redundant.

It is smothered in *venison*, *business*, *ordinary*, *chariot*, *medicine*, *regiment*, &c.

J

This is the *jota* so much used in most of the modern Languages, and is very properly so called, having a tail joined to the small *i*, and a jot or dot over it.

It differs very much in Sound from the foregoing Vowel *i*, and therefore it is an unpardonable Fault to pronounce it *i*, instead of *j* or *jay*, which too many of our Women Teachers are apt to do in their spelling,
for

for its true and genuine Sound is a Compound of *d* and *y*, as *dyentle*, for *gentle*, and *lodying* for *lodging*.

Its Use is to soften the Sound of *g* before any of the five Vowels *a, e, i, o, u*, as *James, Jesus, Jilt, Joseph, Jude*, which otherwise would be *Games, Gesus, Gilt, Goseph, Gude*.

It always begins a Syllable, and is constantly placed before, but never after a Vowel.

It has an unvaried Sound, being pronounced every where like soft *g*, as hath been said; but when *g* is founded soft at the End of a Word, it is expressed by *g* followed by silent *e*, as *rage, sage, wage*, and at the End of some Words by *dge*, as *knowledge, &c.* Many Words that now begin with *g* (before *e*) were originally spelt with *j*, as *jentleman* for *gentleman*, and indeed ought to be always thus written; but we must conform to the arbitrary Power of Custom, which has decreed otherwise.

K

Is of frequent Use in our Language, having exactly the same Sound as *che* in *Italian*, and *que* in *Spanish* and *Portuguese*. Many are the disputes that have arisen, and are still maintained, whether *k* be a different Letter from *c*. The following Word, which is by some begun with *k*, others begin with *c*, as *Katherine* or *Catherine, &c.* but if we consider the natural hard Sound of *k* before any of the five Vowels, we shall not be at a Loss to give *k* the Preference in the above Example; besides, the Contraction of this Word itself is wrote with *k*, and not with *c*, as *Kate* or *Kitty*; and although Custom has established that the Sound of this Letter at the Beginning of any Word before *a, o, or u*, shall be always expressed by *c*, as *cat, con, cup, &c.* yet we find *k* is always used when silent *e* follows, as *spake, spike, spoke, &c.* which else would be *space, spice, &c.* It is entirely redundant at the Beginning of Words, as may be seen in farther treating of this Letter.

L

Is the twelfth Letter in our Alphabet, and one of those Consonants called liquid, because of its soft and melting Sound.

It is now almost a general Rule (except in Surnames of some Persons) that Words of one Syllable have double *ll* at the End, as *ball, ball, full*; but when it ends Words of more Syllables than one it is single, as *handful, manful, &c.* except these Compounds, *bat-ball, cat-ball, cat-call, &c.*

It sounds like *m* in *salmon*, and like *r* in *Colonel*.

Its Pronunciation is very obscure in all the following Words, *balm, calm, palm, psalms, alms, balk, chalk, talk, stalk, walk, salve, calf, half, chaldron, Lincoln, Holbourn, Bristol, Norfolk, Suffolk, folks, faulcon, Ralph, almost, almond, fault, vault, soldier.*

M

Is a Semi-vowel that always retains its natural and genuine Sound, as *dram, dream, them, rim, &c.*

It is never double in Words of one Syllable, but frequently in Words of two or more, as *command, commerce, commit, commotion, communion, &c.*

It is pronounced quick, as if wrote with two *mm*'s, in these words, *comet, homage, image*, and sounds like *n* in *accompt*.

N

Is the fourteenth Letter of our Alphabet, and by those who have divided the whole into proper classes is also called a Liquid Consonant.

It is never double in Monosyllables, as *can, pan, &c.* but often in Words of two or more Syllables, as *cannot, cannibal, annual, connect, connive, cunning, cinnamon, &c.* nor at the End of Words, except *Lynn*, a Town in *Norfolk*, and *Inn*, a public victualling House, to distinguish it from *in*, a Preposition.

It is not pronounced, though wrote, after *m*, at the End of Words, as may be seen in treating of *n* redundant.

O

Is the fifteenth Letter, and fourth Vowel of the *English* Alphabet, and has both a long and short Sound.

The

The long *o* is pronounced like the Greek *ω*, *Omega*, and as the *French au*, in these Words, *sole*, *mole*, *more*, *most*, &c.

It is long in Syllables ending in *ow*, as *low*, *blow*, *crow*, *grow*, &c. but these following differ widely in Sound, *how*, *now*, *cow*, &c. being something sharper.

There are but few *English* Words ending in *o*, which are these twelve following, *do*, *go*, *ho*, *no*, *so*, *lo*, *to*, *too*, *two*, *unto*, *wo*, *who*. The Sound of *o*, at the End of Words, being generally expressed by *ow*, except these five, *toe*, *foe*, *roe*, *doe*, *hoe*.

It has sometimes a broad Sound like *aw*, as *fond*, *folly*, *Polly*, &c. which is the same with *a* in *fall*, and *aw* in *fawn*, &c.

The short *o* is pronounced in these Words, *cot*, *got*, *lot*, &c. and sometimes like the obscure *u*, as *abbot*, *armor*, *actor*, *anchor*, *assessor*, *ambassador*, *administrator*, *bombast*, *besom*, *colour*, *colony*, *columbine*, *comfort*, *condition*, *compass*, *kingdom*, *London*, *monk*, *opinion*, *second*, *utmost*, *wisdom*, *won*, *word*, *work*, *wort*, *world*, *worth*, *worship*, &c. as if written, *cundition*, *Lundon*, *cumfort*, &c. So likewise we pronounce these Words, *come*, *some*, *son*, *done*, *love*, *dove*, *glove*, *shove*, *above*, in a sharp Manner, as if they were written with *u*, as *cum*, *sum*, &c. but in *home*, *rove*, *grove*, *stove*, *strove*, the *o* retains its natural long Sound.

Its Sound is very obscure before *n*, at the End of Words, as *flaggon*, *waggon*, *bason*, *mason*, *bacon*, *beacon*, *capon*, *crimson*, *parson*, *prison*, *Hutton*, *button*, *glutton*, *mutton*, *falcon*, &c.

It is double in many Words in our Language, and then both *oo*'s are to be pronounced together with a long and sharp Tone, like the *Italian u*, in *crudo*, *raw*, viz. *boot*, *shoot*, *coop*, *groop*, *hoop*, *poop*, *soop*, *whoop*, but *door*, *floor*, *moor*, are excepted, being to be sounded like a single *o* long, thus *do-ur*, &c. as the *Dutch* do; but it sounds like short *u* in these Words, *flood*, *blood*, *foot*, *soot*, which were formerly wrote, *flud*, *blud*, &c.

It is pronounced like *oo* in these Words, *wolf*, *Rome*, *tomb*, *womb*, *do*, *who*, *prove*, *move*, &c. as though they were wrote, *woolf*, *Room*, *toom*.

It is founded distinct in these Words, *cooperate*, *coordinate*, *coagulate*, *coition*, *coalition*, *coincide*, &c. and ought to be divided by a Hyphen thus, *co-operate*, &c. which would immediately shew the true Pronunciation.

It is often founded like *ou*, in the following Words, *old*, *bold*, *scold*, *bold*, *molt*, *bolt*, *holt*, *colt*, *bolster*, *uphold*, *upholsterer*, &c. In Words ending with *ll*, such as *toll*, *poll*, *roll*, *controll*, &c. it is pronounced long, as if wrote, *tole*, *pole*, &c. So also in *sword*, *ford*, *gord*, &c. but *storm* and *form* are founded like *au*.

It is transposed in *apron*, *citron*, *iron*, *saffron*, *squadron*, &c. or, rather, it has the Sound of *u*, as *apurn*, &c.

It begins double only in this one Word, *ooze*.

It is not pronounced at all in words that are of *Greek* Extraction, nor in Adjectives ending in *ous*, as *amorous*, *pious*, *generous*, &c. and many of the like Sort, as may be seen in the List of Words, treating of *o* redundant.

P

Is the sixteenth Letter of our Alphabet, called a Consonant.

It generally retains its natural Sound, but when followed by *b* it changes into *f*, both at the Beginning, Middle, and End of Words, as *Philip*, *sulphur*, *triumph*, &c. as may be seen in the List of Words of Peculiar Sound in *ph*. But observe, *ph* must be parted in these Words, *uphold*, *upholsterer*, *Clapham*, *shepherd*.

It is frequently double in the Middle, but never at the End of Words, as *apple*, *apply*, *approve*, *happy*, *nappy*, &c. But these two Words, *copy* and *couple*, though they sound like two *p*'s, have but one, according to their respective Origin; the former being of *Latin*, the latter of *French* Extraction.

It is entirely superfluous in all these Sort of Words, viz. *attempt*, *receipt*, *empty*, as may be seen in the List of Words treating of *p* redundant.

Q

Is a mute Letter, and by the *Latins* is frequently changed into *c*, as of *sequor* come *secutus*, of *loquor*, *locutus*; but in *English* it is pronounced exactly like the Words *cue* or *kue*, and when joined to other Letters, has always *u* after it, making a liquid Sound, as *quaker*, *query*, *quiet*, &c. though the *u* seems quite superfluous, the *q* being entirely expressive of both Letters.

It is sometimes sounded like the *French* *que*, and therefore must be so pronounced in all Words derived from that Language, as *conquer*, *chequer*, *exchequer*, *liquor*, *masquerade*.

This Letter might be banished from the Alphabet as useless, *kue* expressing the full Power of *q*.

The same may be said with regard to *c*, which is always expressed either by *k* for the hard Sound, or by *s* for the soft Sound, which Opinion is abundantly confirmed by Sir *Thomas Smith*, and the learned Mr. *Hall*.

R

Is by the *Latins* termed *Litera Canina*, the Doggish Letter, because Dogs in grinning are supposed to sound this Letter.

It is a liquid Consonant, so called because of the Liquidity or Moisture that is retained in the mouth on pronouncing it, as in these and the like Words, viz. *rail*, *reason*, *reptile*, *romance*, *rumour*, &c.

Englishmen ought to consider that there is a vast Beauty in a nervous Expression of this Letter, because of the agreeable Trill it has upon the Tongue. But I have remarked a great Deficiency among us, as well as among the *Scotch* and *Irish*, some of whom are apt to pronounce it too strong, whilst we pass it over so slighty, as scarcely to give it any Sound at all; for in the following, and many other Words, our common People pronounce not half their Letters, as in *art*, *arm*, *artifice*, *argument*, *parliament*. &c.

It has *h* after it at the Beginning of Words derived from *Greek*, though not pronounced, as *Rhode*, *Rhine*, *rhime*, *rhetic*, &c.

It is almost sunk in *harsh, marsh, harslet, partridge.*

It sounds like two r's in *courage, flourish, nourish, &c.*

It is double in the Middle of the following Words, and many others, but never at the End, viz. *arrogance, aromatic, &c.*

S

May be very properly called the *Snake Letter*, as well by reason of its being made in fashion, double and twisting, like that Reptile, as because it is founded by turning the Tongue upwards, and striking it towards the Roof of the Mouth, and then hissing forth the Voice by a kind of Sibilation like a Snake.

It retains its natural hard Sound in these Words, *us, thus, this, yes, finis*; but towards the Close of Words it generally has a more obscure and soft Sound, like *z*, as also when it comes between two Vowels, as *advise, revise, devise, demise, dispise, present, presume, names, hears, reads, worms, storms, please, these, cheese, rose, dose, chose, those, &c.*

Although this Letter seems very regular in its Sound of *se* at the Beginning, and *es* at the End of Words, yet it is too apt to be mistaken for *c*, especially at the Beginning; but by observing the following Rules and Exceptions, the Mistake may be easily removed. Note then, that most Words beginning with the Sound of *s*, before *e, i, or y*, must be written with *s*, except these following, viz. *cease, cedar, civil, cieling, city, Cybele, Cyclops, cypress, cylindar, cymbal*; also the Sound of *s* in the Middle of Words is usually written with *s*, and not *c*, except these, viz. *acerbity, adjacent, antecedent, artificer, ancestor, cancel, cancer, chancel, chancellor, chancery, beneficence, conceal, concede, conceit, conceive, concert, concern, concenter, concession, de cease, deceit, deceive, decent, deception, exceed, excel, excellency, except, excess, grocer, imperceptible, incendiary, incense, incarcerate, incentive, incessant, incestuous, innocence, intercede, intercessor, &c.* and many more that may be found interspersed in our Language.

Also most Words ending in the Sound of *arce, erce,*
orce,

orce, urce, must be written with *s* between *r* and *e*, except *farce, scarce, amerce, fierce, pierce, source, divorce*.

After *ou*, *s* and not *c* must be written, as *house, mouse*, and so in Verbs, *to house, to mouse*, &c. unless *n* interposes, and then it must be with *c*, as *bounce, flounce, pounce, ounce*, &c. But here it should be observed, that the above Words, *house, mouse*, are to be pronounced hard like *ce*, when used as Substantives, but very soft like *z* when they are Verbs.

Note, these five Words have the Sound of *sh*, as *sure, sugar, surety, issue, tissue*; also that *ci, si, ti*, found exactly alike, both in Spelling and Pronunciation, as *musician, suspicion, aspersiion, admission, imitation, action*, &c. as will be seen hereafter, when we treat of these Terminations.

T

Is one of those Letters called a Consonant, and has three distinct Sounds before the Vowels; the first and most natural is hard, as *pity, city*, &c. which by the Way has the Sound of two *tt*'s; the second is like *ch*, as *question, celestial, fixture*; and the third like *sh*, as *nation, potion, expatiate*, &c. all which Distinctions may be seen at large in my List of Words, treating of these Sort of Sounds.

It is but little sounded between two *ss*'s, as *priests, feasts, beasts*.

It is double in the Middle, but never at the End of Words.

It is pronounced like *s* in all the following Words, *chasten, hasten, whistle, thistle, pistle, epistle, apostle, jostle, bustle, castle*, &c. but quite lost in *effects, neglects, respects, aspects*.

It is entirely superfluous in the following Words, *catch, stretch, ditch, botch, Dutch*, &c. and many more of the like Sort, as may be seen in the List of Words shewing where *t* is intirely redundant.

Its Pronunciation is very peculiar when followed by *h*, as will appear in treating of peculiar Sounds in *th*.

U

Is the fifth Vowel in our Alphabet, and has three distinct Sounds ; the first is long, having naturally a liquid Sound, made up as it were of *i u*, as *mute, muse, cure, &c.* the second is also long, like *oo*, or as the French *ou*, but not liquid, viz. *plume, rule, duty, dubious, &c.* the third is short and obscure, as *dub, grub, rub, rut, burst, curst, bun, gun, sun, tun*, like the Latin *cerdo, ternus, iter, &c.*

It is long in Words of many Syllables, as *curable, durable, purity, security, importunity, &c.* but this long Quality of *u* seems to come from *e* final, understood, though left out to avoid the Cacaphonia, or ill clashing of two Vowels, as *cureable, dureable, pureity, secureity, importuneity, &c.*

Observe, a following Vowel of any Kind after a single Consonant naturally lengthens the foregoing, except when the Sound of the following Consonant is double, and also except when the *u* is shortened, and falls into the Sound of short *e*, as *bury, buried*, or short *i*, as *busy, busied*, or *o* obscure, as *study, studied*.

It is short, or rather obscure in the following words, *adventure, conjure, conjecture, creature, feature, figure, fracture, furniture, gesture, imposture, inclosure, indenture, injure, jointure, lecture, leisure, manufacture, mixture, nature, picture, posture, pleasure, peradventure, rapture, scripture, stature, structure, tincture, torture, treasure, venture, vesture, verdure*, and also in *honour, favour, creatour, creditour, oratour*, which last are now generally wrote, *honor, favor, creator, creditor, orator*.

In several Instances *u* and *w* are indifferently used, as *foul, fowl, shroud, shrowd, &c.*

Observe, no English Word ends with *u*, except *you, thou, adieu*, the Sound of it being commonly expressed by *ue* or *ew*, as *true, ague, new, few, &c.*

It is not heard in these Words, *court, course, source, four*, nor would be wanted in many others, if *g* had its natural hard Sound, as *guide, guile, &c.* as may be seen in treating of *u* redundant.

These

These Words, *would, should, could*, found exactly like *oo*, as if wrote, *woold, shoold, coold*.

V

Is always a Consonant, both before and after any of the five Vowels, to which it is always joined.

It never ends a Word without the silent *e* after it, and often follows *l* and *r*, as *calves, halves, carve, starve, &c.*

It differs very much from the aforegoing *u*, Vowel, both in Shape and Pronunciation, and therefore they are extremely erroneous who give it the Sound of *u*, instead of *ve*, or *ev*; it having a Sound very near the Letter *f*. Besides, if it were indifferent which of them should be used, I would only ask how such Persons would spell *convulsion, divulge, vulgar, vulture, uvula, &c.*

W

Is a Consonant not used at all among the Ancients, nor among many of our Moderns, except the *Germans* and *Dutch*.

This Letter might more properly be called double *ve*, or double *ev*, being an absolute or perfect Union or Duplicate of the aforegoing *v*.

It follows the Vowels *a, e, o*, and unites with them into Dipthongs, *aw, ew, ow*, as in these Words, *saw, sew, sow*. It also precedes all the Vowels, except *u*, as, *was, we, wine, women*.

It has a Consonant after it in the Word *scowr*, which proves it to have the Force of a Vowel.

It follows *th*, as *thwart, thwack, &c.* and sounds exactly as the *Latins* do their *u* in *quando, lingua, suadeo, &c.*

It always concludes a Word, because the Genius of our Language utterly rejects a bare or naked *u*, as *paw, new, sow*.

It comes before the Letter *b*, though it is really founded after it, and so the *Saxons* used it, as *bwen, bwere, bwich, bwat, &c.* instead of *when, where, &c.* for the old *Saxon* Word *whit*, and the *French* *huit*, have exactly

exactly the same Sound; but Custom has prevailed in the present Pronunciation.

It loses its Sound when wrote before an *r*, as *wrong*, *wright*, *wreak*, &c. and also after *o*, as *low*, *row*, *stow*, &c. as may be seen in the List of Words where *w* is entirely redundant.

X

At the Beginning of Words is sounded like *x*, as *Xenophon*, *Xerxes*, *Xanthius*, *Xantipater*, &c. and at the End like *ks*, as *box*, *cox*, *fox*, *pox*, *flux*, *vortex*, which would sound exactly the same if wrote, *boks*, *coks*, &c. as would *books*, *cooks*, *looks*, *books*, if wrote with *x*, thus *boox*, *coox*, &c. But to enter more minutely into the Pronunciation of this Letter, which has the Power or Force of a double Consonant.

It has been demonstrated to have been expressed three different Ways; the first by *ks*, as above; the second by *cc* in the Middle of Words where *e* or *i* follow, as *accent*, *accept*, *access*, *accelerate*, *accident*, *success*, *succinct*; the third by *ct*, in Words ending in *ion*, as *action*, *election*, *perfection*, *prediction*, *concoction*, *destruction*, and at the End of some Words, as *acts*, *abstracts*, *contracts*, *collects*, *intellects*, *defects*, *effects*, *objects*, *projects*, *subjects*, &c.

Never write *s* after *ex* in these Words, *example* *exalt*, *examine*, &c. not thus, *exsample*, *exsalt*, *exsamine*, &c. and very seldom *c*, but in these Words, *except*, *exceed*, *excess*, *excuse*, *excite*, &c.

When *c* comes after *ex* before *o*, *u*, *l*, and *b*, it has a full Sound, as *excuse*, *exclaim*, *exchange*, *excommunicate*, &c. but it sounds soft like *g* in the above Examples, as *exalt*, *examine*, *exist*, &c.

Y

Is a Greek Letter, being composed of their *vi*, which joined in one makes our *y*.

It is a Consonant at the Beginning of all Words preceding any of the Vowels, making a perfect liquid Sound, as *yarn*, *yes*, *year*, *yield*, *your*, *youth*, &c. See more of these where I treat of liquid Sounds.

It

It is a Vowel at the End of all Words, as *merry, story, sorry, &c.* or as some hold, a Diphthong, supplying the Place of two Vowels, as *lie, tie, stie, pie, rie, &c.*

It is of great Use in our Language, which rejects the Ending of Words in *i*, when the Sound of it comes double, though in two distinct Syllables, as *dying, frying, crying, &c.*

When it follows a Consonant it is a Vowel, and (as was said) when it precedes a Vowel it is a Consonant; and though it ends such a Number of Words as a Vowel, it can end none at all as a Consonant.

It has a sharp, clear, and long Sound at the End of all Words of one Syllable joined to a Consonant, as *by, dry, why, shy, thy, my, &c.* but at the End of Words of more Syllables it generally sounds obscure, like *e*, as *many, godly, eternally, gloriously, liberty, &c.* except at the End of these and the like Verbs, as *apply, deny, defy, &c.* which is open as before.

It chiefly precedes *a, e, or o*, and these it also follows, and incorporates with, into double Vowels, for *ay, ey, oy*, have exactly the same Sound as *ai, ei, oi*; but the first Sort are more frequently used at the End of Words, for the Reasons above given.

In the Middle of Words it is not so commonly used as a Vowel, except in Words of Greek Origin, and then it has the short Sound of *i* simple, as *Egypt, embryo, mystery, pyramid, syntax, syncopation, tyranny, &c.* but in *Tyrant* it is long.

It seems redundant in *day, nay, may, lay, pray, say, &c.* and the like.

Z

Is the last Letter of our Alphabet, called a Consonant. It derives from the Hebrew *Zein*, or Greek *ξ, Zeta*, and is thought to be used in few Words but of Greek Original.

The *Latins* have no Occasion for it, and therefore use *s* in its Stead. But

It is used by us, both at the Beginning and Middle of Words, as *zeal, zealous, zealously, hazard, mazard, lizard,*

lizard, wizzard, buzzard, buzzing, mizzle, drizzle, frizzle, dixxy, imbezzle, muzzle, guzzle, puzzle, &c. but never at the End of Words, except by Contraction, as *buz* for *buzzing*, or abbreviating of some Words, which yet if wrote at length would be with an *s* or *ss*, as *cuz* for *cousin*, *poz* for *positive*, *phyz* for *physiognomy*, &c.

&

Note, Besides these Letters of the *English* Alphabet there is another Character very frequently made use of, not only by us, but by the *Latins* and *French*, which is what is called the Enclytic *Œ*, that serves as a Contraction of the *Latin* Conjunction *et*, *and*, which in *English* is pronounced exactly in this Manner, *m*, *p*, *c*, *and*.

Of DIPHTHONGS.

A DIPHTHONG is the Meeting of two Vowels in one and the same Syllable. They are very frequent in our Language; for although the Vowels be but five in Number, yet they admit of various Combinations.

These Dipthongs may be distinguished by open or proper, or close and improper.

The open or proper Dipthongs are those wherein both Vowels are distinctly pronounced.

The close or improper Dipthongs are those wherein both Vowels are not distinctly pronounced, but one is sunk, and consequently the greatest Stress lays upon the other.

OPEN

OPEN DIPHTHONGS.

<i>ai</i>	aid, faid, laid, air, fair, chair, stair, fail, pail, &c.
<i>ea</i>	earn, earnest, bearn, pearch, earl, pearl, &c.
<i>au</i>	cause, pause, paul, fraud, daub, author, autumn.
<i>aw</i>	awl, cawl, bawl, mawl, scrawl, dawn, yawn, pawn, law, saw, paw.
<i>ee</i>	been, seen, keen, queen, free, see, tree, bee, knee, thee.
<i>oo</i>	loose, noose, choose, fool, cool, tool, doom, room, broom, groom.
<i>oi</i>	toil, foil, coil, noise, oister, voice, choice, moist, poize, &c.
<i>oy</i>	boy, toy, joy, foy, coy, annoy, destroy, employ, alloy.
<i>ou</i>	foul, loud, proud, our, out, snout, house, mouse, bound, found.
<i>ow</i>	how, now, howl, bowl, growl, clown, brown, down, drown.
<i>ua</i>	quarrel, quality, quantity.
<i>ei</i>	either, neither, height, weight.
<i>ew</i>	few, pew, Jew, dew, shew, shrew.

Note, When an open or proper Dipthong loses its natural Sound, and changes to any other simple Sound, it then ceases to be a proper, and immediately becomes a close or improper Dipthong, as having only the single Sound of some one single Vowel.

CLOSE DIPTHONGS.

<i>ai</i>	certain, captain, mountain, fountain.
<i>ui</i>	build, guild, guile, guilt, juice, fruit, suit.
<i>ea</i>	head, bread, dread, spread, thread.
<i>oa</i>	board, hoard, oath, boat, float, goat.
<i>oe</i>	foe, toe, doe, roe, oeconomy.
<i>eo</i>	péople, jéopardy, léopard, Léonard, féofment.
<i>ue</i>	cue, spue, accrue, persue, residue.
<i>eu</i>	feud, lieu, Europe.
<i>uy</i>	buy, guy.
<i>ou</i>	you, your, youth, young.
<i>uo</i>	quote, quotation, quotient.
<i>ie</i>	field, piece, thief, shield.
<i>ei</i>	receive, seize, forfeit, surfeit.
<i>oi</i>	anoint, ointment, joists, oil, spoil, poison.
<i>oy</i>	royal, loyal, joyner.
<i>ua</i>	guard, guarantee.
<i>au</i>	gauge, gauging, &c.

Of TRIPTHONGS.

A TRIPTHONG is the Meeting of three Vowels together in one Syllable. We have few or none in *English*, except *view*, *buoy*, *beau*, *beauty*, *beaufeit*, *bureau*, *flambeau*, which five last are of *French* Extraction.



C H A P. II.

Of LONG *and* SHORT SOUNDS.

THE following is a List of Words shewing the Use of silent *e*.

Note, The chief Use of this Letter, which to Foreigners may seem superfluous, is to preserve the Quantity of the foregoing Vowel; that is, it serves both to lengthen and soften that Word, which otherwise would be short or hard; besides that, the Addition of it gives a different Sense to the same Word.

<i>a</i>	care	gate	mope	rate
are	code	gage	<i>n</i>	rape
ate	croke	<i>h</i>	nape	range
<i>b</i>	cone	hate	node	ride
babe	chide	haste	note	ripe
bade	<i>d</i>	hope	<i>o</i>	robe
bane	dame	here	one	rode
bate	dane	huge	ore	rote
bare	done	<i>j</i>	<i>p</i>	rime
bathe	dine	jibe	pate	<i>s</i>
bede	doe	<i>k</i>	plate	slime
bide	demure	kine	pare	scare
blote	diverse	kite	pane	stare
breathe	<i>f</i>	<i>l</i>	pine	scrape
bite	fare	lade	pipe	singe
<i>c</i>	fore	lathe	pope	shame
cane	fate	lothe	prime	shine
cape	fine	<i>m</i>	plume	fire
chine	fane	made	pure	fithe
clothe	flame	mane	<i>q</i>	foothe
cage	fire	mare	quite	fite
cube	<i>g</i>	mate	<i>r</i>	snipe
cure	glade	mete	rage	stride

shade	stripe	tripe	u
swinge	slope	trape	use
fame	fale	toe	v
smite	sole	tare	vane
severe		tube	w
slope	t	tipe	waste
stage	time	twine	ware
spine	theme	tune	wine
spite	thine	tope	write

List of Words, shewing when *b* is aspirated, and when not.

Note, The Use of this Letter *b* is very evident, as it often serves for a Distinction, to give a greater Force to the other Letters, to avoid Equivocation in some Words, and give them a Sense which otherwise they would not have.

H Aspirated.

<i>bas</i>	<i>bire</i>	<i>bis</i>	<i>beight</i>
<i>bam</i>	<i>ball</i>	<i>bit</i>	<i>bone</i>
<i>bare</i>	<i>bale</i>	<i>beat</i>	<i>bold</i>
<i>bair</i>	<i>bail</i>	<i>bate</i>	<i>boar</i>
<i>band</i>	<i>bell</i>	<i>bitch</i>	<i>bowl</i>
<i>barm</i>	<i>bill</i>	<i>bash</i>	<i>balter</i>
<i>bart</i>	<i>beel</i>	<i>baft</i>	<i>harbour</i>
<i>bark</i>	<i>helm</i>	<i>haunt</i>	<i>harrow</i>
<i>bear</i>	<i>hedge</i>	<i>bat</i>	<i>haw</i>

H Not Aspirated.

heir	honesty
hour	dishonesty
honor	humble
dishonor	Humphrey

List of Words, shewing the Use of the Letter *i*.

Note, This Vowel naturally lengthens the Sound of *a, e, o, u*, answering the Purpose of silent *e* in all or most of the Words following.

<i>a</i>	vain	hair	grief
aim	plain	pair	fief
maim	blain	chair	belief
claim	ail	stair	stein
maid	bail	air	priest
laid	fail	fair	<i>o</i>
paid	flail	faith	boil
faid	hail	faith	oil
aid	jail	paint	soil
braid	mail	saint	poil
main	nail	taint	spoil
lain	quail	plaint	turmoil
drain	fail	wain	loin
fain	vail	fwain	groin
cain	wail	fkain	purloin
stain	frail	spain	point
pain	pail	twain	joint
gain	bait	<i>e</i>	hoist
brain	gait	field	doit
grain	strait	shield	<i>u</i>
flain	wait	yield	bruit
train	tail	weild	fruit
strain	rail	brief	sait
sprain	trail	chief	circuit
rain	snail	thief	recruit

All which are pronounced as tho' they were wrote

ame	sheeld	file	brute
mame	yeeld	spile	frute
clame	weeld	file	fute, &c.

*List of Words shewing wherein several Letters
of the Alphabet are intirely redundant in their
Pronunciation.*

A entirely redundant.

Note, This Vowel generally serves to make the Syllable long, except in some Words of two or more Syllables, and also except in one, where they are marked with a Star,

Long Monosyllables in ea, sounded like ee.

beak	heath	reach	shear	deal
bleak	eat	peach	spear	neal
creak	heat	preach	heave	meal
peak	meat	teach	leave	heal
speak	cheat	beach	cleave	peal
steak	feat	bleach	weave	veal
sneak	peat	breach	east	weal
squeak	feat	each	beast	teal
reak	teat	leach	feast	seal
freak	beat	heap	least	steal
screek	bleat	leap	yeast	squeal
streak	pleat	reap	beam	zeal
leak	treat	cheap	seam	beal
fleak	neat	ear	team	conceal
weak	wheat	tear	steam	reveal
beard	crease	lear	dream	appeal
heard	lease	rear	bream	congeal
feard	cease	hear	gleam	bequeath
lead	peace	fear	ream	bereave
read	grease	clear	scram	decease
mead	please	dear	stream	disease
flead	ease	near	lean	appear
knead	teaze	fear	bean	appease
plead	flea	stear	mean	weapon
bead	pea	year	wean	meazles
leaf	plea	blear	clean	beadle
sheaf	fea	chear	dean	creature
sheath	tea	smear	glean	feature

Mono-

Monosyllables in ea short.

* dead	* spread	* earth	* realm
* dread	* bread	* dearth	* dealt
* head	* deaf	* health	* sweat
* tread	* death	* wealth	* threat
* thread	* breath	* stealth	* meant
* stead	* lead	* read	* pearch

Words of two Syllables in ea short.

hereafter	weather	heaven	treasure
jealous	feather	leaven	pleasure
meadow	leather	measure	peasant
pleasant	threaten	dreadful	zealous

Long Monosyllables in oa, expressing the full Power of silent e.

boat	joan	reproach	boast
coat	moan	approach	coast
goat	groan	load	roast
moat	foam	goad	croak
float	roam	toad	cloak
float	loam	road	foak
oat	croak	coal	stoak
throat	oak	foal	board
oar	foak	foal	hoard
boar	coach	shoal	hoarse
hoar	broach	oath	coarse
roar	poach	loath	coax
soar	roach	cloath	soap
shoar	encroach	floath	bemoan

As though they were wrote, *bote, cote, gote, &c.*

Note, The Sound of *broad* and *groat* differs from the above Words in *oa*, being to be pronounced as if wrote *au* or *aw*, as *brawd, grawt.*

B en-

B entirely redundant.

debt	lamb	crumb	jamb
doubt	numb	plumb	limb
dumb	benumb	thumb	subtle

C entirely redundant.

<i>a</i>	fack	tick	shock
back	<i>e</i>	spick	smock
black	beck	wick	<i>u</i>
brack	deck	crick	buck
clack	check	<i>o</i>	chuck
crack	keck	block	duck
lack	neck	dock	luck
flack	speck	clock	muck
stack	peck	flock	pluck
smack	<i>i</i>	frock	cluck
snack	brick	crock	ruck
jack	dick	hock	fuck
hack	lick	mock	tuck
pack	sick	lock	truck
tack	nick	cock	struck
track	stick	pock	knuckle
rack	quick	rock	buckle
knack	kick	fock	truckle
thwack	pick	stock	fuckle

Also the following Words of two and three Syllables,
derived from the *Latin*.

critick	publick	majestick
cynick	traffick	arithmetick
logick	physick	splenetick
mufick	fabrick	politick, &c.

D entirely

D entirely redundant, allowing g its natural Sound of *dg.*

<i>a</i>		<i>i</i> and <i>o</i>	<i>u</i>
badge	fledge	bridge	budge
fadge	wedge	fidge	grudge
madge	edge	ridge	drudge
<i>e</i>	hedge	dodge	judge
dredge	fledge	hodge	fnudge
pledge	ledge	lodge	trudge

Also these following of two Syllables.

pidgeon	colledge	cartridge	handsome
gudgeon	knowledge	partridge	handmaid

E entirely redundant.

George	hearken	feud	hearse
great	Tuesday	lieu	search
heart	tear	hearth	pleurefy
swear	adieu	searge	pleuretick

Note, Most of these seem rather to have the silent *e* transposed.

Also all the following Words, derived from the *Greek*.

Europe	Eutychus
Eunuch	Eusebius
Eucharist	Eulogy
Euterpe	Euphony
Euphrates	Eustace
Eutyches	Deuteronomy

H entirely

H entirely redundant, at the Beginning, Middle, and End of Words.

<i>Beginning</i>	rhinoceros	Nebuchadnezzar
chaos	ghost	why
character	<i>Middle</i>	which
choler	anchor	whip
choir	archangel	whim
chorus	eccho	white
cholic	eucharist	Michaelmas
choleric	mechanic	Nicholas
chronicle	melancholy	<i>End</i>
chronical	school	Enoch
Christian	scholar	monarch
Christopher	scholastic	Messiah
Chrysoſtom	John	Jehovah
Rhine	Thomas	myrrh
Rhodes	Michael	catarrh
rhetoric	thyme	Baruch
rheniſh	technical	eunuch
rheumatic	asthma	stomach

GH entirely redundant.

high	though	doughty
nigh	through	daughter
figh	flough	slaughter
thigh	hugh	neighbour
neigh	bought	Edinburgh
weigh	brought	Hamburgh
eight	drought	Alborough
freight	fought	Gainsborough
ſtraight	fought	Giſborough
weight	thought	Marlborough
height	wrought	Peterborough
bough	nought	Queenborough
plough	haughty	Scarborough

also

also, * Frazersburgh | * Middleburgh | * Witemburgh
 * Gottenburgh | * Straßburgh | * Petersburg

Note, The Terminations *burgh* and *borough* at the End of proper Names of Places near Home, are always pronounced *burrow* in *English*; but those abroad, marked with a Star, are generally called *burgh*.

I entirely redundant.

friend	fierce	achieve	achievement
fiend	pierce	archieve	receive
praise	liege	deceive	Salisbury
baise	siege	conceive	mischievous
laise	frieze	perceive	bruise
chaise	sieze	believe	cruise
raise	tierce	reprieve	juice
niece	grieve	grievance	fluice
piece	thieve	grievous	nuisance

K entirely redundant.

knack	knell	knife	knock
knave	knew	knight	knowing
knee	knob	knit	knowledge
knead	know	knot	knuckle

N entirely redundant.

damn	hymn	kiln	solemn
condemn	contemn	column	autumn

O entirely

O entirely redundant.

amorous	grievous	posthumous	rumour
armour	heinous	serious	tumour
arbour	humourous	spurious	favour
barbarous	impious	sonorous	endeavour
copious	infamous	strenuous	superiour
curious	journey	timorous	courage
dolorous	journal	vigorous	scourge
dangerous	jealous	venturous	leonard
emulous	momentous	viperous	leopard
envious	mischievous	wondrous	jeopardy
enormous	monstrous	harbour	people
favour	marvelous	labour	feoffee
fabulous	numerous	neighbour	Leominster
frivulous	odorous	odour	couple
furious	oderiferous	rigour	trouble
glorious	pious	vigour	double
gorgeous	pompous	vapour	nourish
glutinous	perilous	valour	flourish

And all the following Words, derived from the *Greek*.

Oedipus | Oeconomy | Oeconomical | Oecumenical

P entirely redundant, *at the Beginning, Middle, and End of Words.*

<i>Beginning</i>	presumption	consumptive
psalm	peremptory	temptation
psalter	assumption	Deptford
psalmody	consumption	
Ptolomy	redemption	<i>End</i>
ptifick	Sumpter	tempt
ptifan	empty	attempt
	sumptuous	contempt
<i>Middle</i>	Simpson	exempt
presumptive	presumptive	accomp
promptitude	symptom	receipt

S entirely

S entirely redundant.

isle	Carlisle	chasm	viscount
island	Lisle	farcaſm	puisny

T entirely redundant.

<i>a</i>	ſcratch	etch	hitch	<i>o</i>
batch	thatch	vetch	pitch	botch
catch	diſpatch	ſketch	ſtitch	Scotch
hatch	ſatchel	retch	twitch	notch
match	watch	wretch	witch	"
patch	<i>e</i>	<i>i</i>	ſwitch	crutch
ſmatch			itch	Dutch
ſnatch	ſtretch	bitch	ſtitch	butcher
latch	fetch	ditch	Litchfield	

U and *UE* entirely redundant.

aunt	taunt	guide	gueſs
daunt	vaunt	guild	beguile
haunt	gauge	guile	diſguiſe
jaunt	build	guiſe	guarantee
ſaunt	built	guard	Guildford

apologue	catalogue	dialogue
epilogue	ſynagogue	prologue
eclogue	tongue	harangue

Note, Theſe following have the Syllable long.

vogue	Teague	Hague
brogue	colleague	Prague
rogue	intrigue	plague
league	collogue	fatigue

W entirely redundant, at the Beginning, Middle,
and End of Words,

<i>Beginning</i>	whole	Ipswich	furrow
wrath	wholesom	Warwick	winnow
wrack	whore	<i>End</i>	window
wrangle	wreath		
wrap	wrench	arrow	bow
wrag	wrung	barrow	low
wreck		marrow	row
wrest	<i>Middle</i>	harrow	fow
wrestle		narrow	tow
wren	answer	sparrow	mow
wretch	awry	wallow	blow
wrinkle	sword	swallow	flow
wright	bewray	fallow	grow
write	aukward	bellow	crow
wring	housewife	fellow	glow
wrist		mellow	know
wriggle	<i>Also Names</i>	follow	show
wry	<i>of Towns.</i>	morrow	stow
wrong		borrow	flow
wrote	Dulwich	forrow	trow
whom	Droitwich	pillow	prow
whose	Greenwich	willow	throw

Note, These, and all the foregoing redundant or superfluous Letters, that are never pronounced, are here distinctly exemplified, not to be left out, though most of them might well be spared, but only to shew the Manner of our *English* Orthography.



C H A P. III.

Of LIQUID SOUNDS.

LIQUIDITY in general is that Property of Bodies, which renders them fluid, moist, and free in Motion, and with respect to the Analogy this Definition bears to the Sound of Letters, they are called liquid, because of the Saliva or Water that is retain'd in the Mouth on pronouncing them, which is done by the Tip of the Tongue striking upwards towards the Palate. We have four Letters that are called Liquids, viz. *l, m, n, r*; but as few People know the Power of them, and they are in many Places too transiently or slightly expressed, especially the three first, I shall pass them over as simple Sounds, and consider the Dipthongs *ia, ie, and io*, when preceded by *l* or *n*, and also the Letters *u, y, and r*, as the chief, if not the only Characters necessary for forming these Sorts of Sounds, so frequently made use of in our Language.

Liquid Sounds in l and ll, followed by a Dipthong.

Note, In all the following Words the last *i* is pronounced like *y*, falling on the next Letter, thus, *famil-yar*, &c. exactly like the Italian *librajo*, a Bookseller, and as the Spanish *yermo*, a Desert or Wilderness, all which express the full Power of the Hebrew (י) Yode.

Example in lia.

Amelia	Pamphilia	auxiliar	filial
Pamelia	familiar	auxiliary	palliate
	E 2		retaliate

retaliate	Maximilian	* harrier	million
Italian	Westphalia	* terrier	trillion
Julian		* currier	punctilio
galliard	<i>Ex. in lie.</i>		rebellion
haliard	collier	<i>Ex. in lio.</i>	batallion
valiant	* clothier	folio	pavillion
William	* carrier	galliot	pillion
Theſalia	* farrier	billion	vermilion

Note, Those marked thus * are a little irregular from the above Rule of *l* and *ll*.

Liquid Sounds in n, followed by a Dipthong.

Note, In all the following Words the *i* is pronounced as above, like *y*, falling on the next Letter, thus, *com-pan-yon*, and exactly as the *Italian* *ogni*, *all*, the *Spanish* *año*, *a year*, and as the *Hebrew* Example before-mentioned.

<i>Ex. in nia.</i>	Apolonia	Sardinia	panniers
Justinian	Catalonia	Lithuania	<i>nio.</i>
Socinian	Cephalonia	Oxonian	junior
Athenian	Lycaonia	menial	minion
triennial	Macedonia	venial	pinion
testimonial	Sclavonia	lineal	opinion
Pensilvania	Theſſalonia	<i>nie.</i>	companion
Transilvania	Armenia	lanniers	communion

Liquid Sounds in u, followed by a Conſonant.

Note, In all the following Words *u* is pronounced exactly like *you*, and as the *Italian* *ajuto*, *help*, and the *Spanish* *yugo*, *a yoke*.

E X A M P L E.

uſe	uſed	uſurer	uſual	utility
uſing	uſer	uſury	uſually	unite
				uniting

uniting	abuse	puerile	accurate
united	accuse	puissant	fuge
unity	excuse	puke	fume
unison	infuse	imputation	funeral
uniform	refuse	reputation	fugitive
uniformity	cure	use	future
union	pure	muse	failure
unicorn	immure	mute	hugh
universe	confusion	confute	huge
universal	infusion	dispute	human
universally	diffusion	refute	humane
university	profusion	depute	humour
universality	curious	impute	humidity
unanimous	furious	music	humility
unanimity	spurious	museum	hugonot
ubiquity	injurious	mutineer	mule
usurp	community	security	ambulation
usurping	impunity	bubo	accumulation
usurped	immure	cube	mutation
usurper	impure	cubit	articulation
usurpation	security	cupid	emulation
utenfil	impurity	cupola	mutinous
urine	immunity	curate	mutiny
urinal	puling	cutaneous	ammunition
utopia	purify	cute	nuncupative
urinous	puberty	acute	pusillanimity

In like Manner are pronounced all Words beginning with *eu*, derived from the Greek. See Page 33.

Also these Words, *beauty*, *beauteous*, *beautify*, *beautiful*, and *beautifully*, which come from the French *beau* handsome, are all pronounced liquid, though there is no such Sound in the Original.

Liquid Sounds in u, followed by a Vowel.

Pronounced like the French *veue*, *sight*, viz.

fuel cue hue imbue

*Liquid Sounds in w.*Pronounced like the *French* vieux, *old*, viz.

few	kew	pew	view
hew	mew	pewter	ewe

*Liquid Sounds in qu, followed by a Vowel.*Pronounced like the *Italian* quale, *who*, questo, *this*,
quello, *that*.

<i>Ex. in a.</i>	quarantine	queen	quilt
quack	quadril	queer	quibble
quake	quadrant	query	quintal
quaff	quart	quench	quinsey
quaint	quarter	question	quit
quarry	quash	<i>i</i>	quite
quarrel	quaver		quiet
qualify	<i>e</i>	quirk	quire
quality		quid	quince
quantity	quell	quill	quiver

*Liquid Sounds in y, followed by a Vowel.*Pronounced like the *Dutch* ja, *yes*, and jaer, *a year*.

<i>Ex. in a</i>	<i>e</i>	yellow	yonder
yarn	ye	yell	yoke
yawn	yet	yelling	yolk
yawl	yes	yeoman	yore
yard	yea	<i>i</i>	York
yates	year	yield	your
yatch	yeast	<i>o</i>	yew
Yarmouth	yelp	you	youth

Note, The Letter *r*, which is another Kind of liquid Sound that is used throughout all the Combination of
the

the Vowels, as *ra, re, ri, ro, ru* ; being very common, as well as numerous, as appears in almost every Word we speak, it is needless to give Examples.

PRAXIS *on the aforementioned* Liquid Sounds.

Observe, These Sort of Sounds are interspersed throughout all the Parts of *English* Speech, but very seldom come close together, except in Verse, by a kind of *jeu de mots*, in the following Manner.

Those who offend Community,
Should ne'er pass with Impunity.

Of Women *few*
Can dig or *herw*.
And Cats will *merw*,
Shut in a *perw*.
Pray, Sir, do *you*
Have it in *view*
To go to *Kew*.
Not to *immure*,
In Walls *impure*,
Will make a *cure*.

Whilst thus I *muse*
You me *accuse*,
And then *abuse* ;
But I'll *refuse*,
Nor Answer *use*
To *p's* and *q's*.

The Tale was *spurious*,
The Men grew *furious*,
The Women *curious*.



C H A P. IV.

Of PECULIAR SOUNDS.

SO called for being distinct from most others, either of the ancient or modern Languages, and peculiar only with respect to the *English* Manner of Pronunciation, as may be seen in the following List of Words.

Peculiar

*Peculiar Sounds in th, at the Beginning, Middle,
and End of Words.*

Note, Th answers to the Greek θ, Theta, and has a double Sound; one soft, coming nigh the Letter d, the other strong, approaching near the Letter t. The first is with some Sort of vocal Sound, the other wholly mute, which makes it exceeding difficult for Foreigners to pronounce.—This may also be called dental, because it is expressed by placing the End of the Tongue between the Teeth, as if you were going to bite it, making at the same Time a Sort of Percolation, or straining of the Breath, and then drawing it suddenly back again, you strike the Tip of it to the upper Palate.

<i>Beginning</i>	thrum	them	swathing
that	threw	theme	feething
than	thrown	thatch	tything
thank	throat	thaw	fworthy
thales	thrust	thwack	worthy
thwart	throng	theatre	hither
the	thirst	theory	rather
thee	thrice	thesis	father
thy	throve	threat	mother
these	throne	thereat	brother
those	thrive	thresh	Matthias
there	thriven	thigh	Martha
then	thump	thimble	pothier
thin	thus	thiller	t'other
thine	thou	thing	another
thence	think	third	feather
this	their	thirty	weather
three	thorn	thousand	leather
threw	thong	throw	neither
thread	throng	thumb	either
thrift	though	thunder	other
thrill	thought	Thursday	smother
thrall	thither	<i>Middle</i>	breathing
throb	thick	bathing	wreathing
			healthy

healthy	Matthew	loth	froth
wealthy	<i>End</i>	floth	moth
worthy		oath	troth
frothy	health	loath	wrath
mothy	stealth	growth	pith
pithy	wealth	both	with
further	fourth	broth	sooth
clothier	worth	cloth	smooth

Peculiar Sounds in ch, at the Beginning, Middle, and End of Words.

Note, ch is pronounced like our tch, and as the Italian c before e or i, in Cesare, Cæsar, civile, civil.

<i>Beginning</i>	<i>Middle</i>	<i>End</i>
<i>a</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>a</i>
Charles	Rachael	arch
chapple	archbishop	parch
chance	machination	starch
<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>
cheese	befeeching	each
cheer	reaching	teach
cheat	bleaching	preach
<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i>
child	Richmond	rich
chick	Richard	which
chitterling	Prichard	nich
<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
chop	cocheneal	coach
choak	broaching	poach
chocolate	reproaching	roach
<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>u</i>
chum	churching	such
churn	churning	much
churl	chumping	lurch

And numerous other Words through all the Combinations of the Vowels.

Note,

Note, The English *ch* or *tch*, sounds *ty*; for *orchard*, *riches*, *bitches*, *ditches*, have the Sound of *crt-yard*, *rit-yes*, *bit-yes*, *dit-yes*, &c. except the following, which sound like our *sh*, and the French *ch*.

<i>a</i>	<i>e</i>		
blanch	bench	wench	inch
hanch	drench	wrench	pinch
branch	tench	belch	winch
panch	trench	Welch	"
stanch	stench	<i>i</i>	bunch
lanch	quench	finch	hunch
lanching	French	clinch	lunch
		flinch	punch

Also these following Words, which are both *French* and *English*.

chaife	machine	chandeliers	capuchin
chagrin	chamoy	chevalier	champaign

Note, *ch* before *e* or *i* is sometimes pronounced hard like our *k*, as the French *que* or *qui*, and the Italian *che* or *chi*.

E X A M P L E.

Archelaus	catechise	monarchy	scheme
Archippus	chymist	monarchical	Zacheus
chimera	Enchiridion	Melchisedec	chiromancy
catechism	Malachy	parochial	chirographer

Peculiar Sounds in ph, pronounced like f, at the Beginning, Middle, and End of Words.

<i>Beginning</i>			
phrase	Phebe	Philistine	philosopher
phantom	phrensy	Philadelphia	philosophy
pharmacy	phlegmatic	phlebotamy	philosophical
phanatic	phrenetic	phyfic	philology
phraseology	pheasant	physician	<i>Middle</i>
Pharoah	phenix	phylacteries	Ephraim
Pharisee	phial	Philemon	pamphlet
	Philip	phlegm	prophet

prophet	fulphur	emphatical	Bucephalus
ephod	blaspheme	Jehosophat	End
Ephefians	famphire	Metamorphosis	Asaph
elephant	nephew	hermaphrodite	nymph
hyphen	Pamphilia	hemisphere	epitaph
orphan	Westphalia	decipher	paragraph
dolphin	alphabetical	atmosphere	triumph

Note, ph in the Word Stephen sounds soft like v, as if wrote Steven.

Also observe, ph is seldom written but in Words derived from the Greek, wrote with this Character φ.

Peculiar Sounds in re.

Note, The following Words sound e before r, passing into a precedent u obscure, as if wrote acur, lucur, &c.

E X A M P L E.

acre	sepulchre	dire	expire
lucre	<i>also</i>	hire	inspire
lustre	lure	quire	respire
mitre	sure	fire	perspire
meagre	more	tire	transpire
maugre	lore	wire	acquire
centre	store	admire	inquire
vultre	pore	bemire	require
nitre	shore	desire	empire
sceptre	fire	entire	umpire
philtre	lire	retire	esquire
theatre	mire	attire	endure
petre	spire	aspire	obscure

Note, The following English Words are pronounced soft, with a kind of gentle breathing thro' the Teeth, exactly like the French g in manger, to eat, and j in jamais, never.

leisure	treasure	azure	glazier
measure	crozier	brazier	grazier
pleasure	hosier	frazier	ozier

Peculiar

Peculiar Sounds ending in dle.

Note, In the following Words this Syllable is pronounced by striking the End of the Tongue close to the Palate, near the Root of the upper Teeth, and there fixing or continuing it 'till the whole be expressed.

<i>Example</i>	cradle	spindle	rundle
addle	meddle	brindle	trundle
daddle	middle	kindle	huddle
faddle	fiddle	caudle	puddle
faddle	diddle	daudle	muddle
candle	piddle	girdle	fuddle
dandle	riddle	curdle	cuddle
handle	idle	hurdle	wheedle
ladle	bridle	bundle	needle

Note, There are Numbers of Words ending in *ble*, *cle*, *fle*, *gle*, *kle*, *ple*, and *tle*, that are all pronounced the same Way, agreeing exactly with the *French* Manner, as in the following Words that are both *French* and *English*.

amble	bible	double	oracle
article	noble	trouble	triangle
obstacle	temple	triple	honourable
table	couple	disciple	dishonourable

Peculiar Sounds in all the following Terminations.

Note, These Words ending in *cial* and *tial* sound *shall*.

<i>Example in ci</i>	<i>Ex. in ti</i>	impartial
artificial	credential	substantial
beneficial	essential	obediential
prejudicial	martial	potential
provincial	partial	equinoctial

Note,

Note, These following found *shan*.

Ex. in <i>ci</i>	mathematician	Placentian
Grecian	rhetorician	Venetian
logician	<i>ti</i>	<i>ce</i>
magician		ocean
physician	Dalmatian	<i>fi</i>
musician	Galatian	Asian
arithmetician	tertian	Collofian
geometrician	Egyptian	Persian

These following found *shent* and *shence*.

Ex. in <i>ci</i>	proficient	<i>ti</i>
ancient	deficient	antient
omniscient	sufficient	patient
efficient	omniscience	patience

These in *ciate* and *tiate*, are expressed by *she-ate*.

Ex. in <i>ciate</i>	officiate	<i>tiate</i>
graciate	<i>tiate</i>	† expatiate
emaciate	vitiate	negotiate
affociate	initiate	licentiate
depreciate	ingratiate	consubstantiate

Note, These ending in *titious* and *tition*, are spelt thus, the first *ti* hard, as in *pity*, the second soft like *fi*, and pronounced *tish-us* and *tish-un*.

Ex. in <i>titious</i>	suppositious	partition
fictitious	<i>tition</i>	competition
superstitious	petition	repetition

These following found *y*, or rather *ch*.

E X A M P L E.

fustian	Christian	mixture
question	suggestion	fixture
combustion	Sebastian	bestial
digestion	moisture	celestial

These in *cious* and *tious*, sound *shus*.

<i>Ex. in ci</i>	<i>Ex. in ci</i>	<i>Ex. in ti</i>
atrocious	pertinacious	captious
luscious	contumacious	factions
conscious	rapacious	contentious
capacious	precious	sententious
audacious	auspicious	efficacious
fallacious	delicious	ostentatious
spacious	suspicious	voracious
gracious	pernicious	flagitious
sagacious	avaricious	propitious
tenacious	malicious	facetious

Note, These following Words ending in *eous* and *ous*, can be reduced to no Rule, and therefore must be explained by other Sounds nearly corresponding.

English Words	Correspondent Sounds.
beauteous	bute-chus
bounteous	boun-chus
covetous	covet-chus
piteous	pit-chus
plenteous	plen-chus
virtuous	virt-chus
nauseous	naw-shus
sumptuous	sum-shus
odious	ode-jus
tedious	tea-jus
studious	stew-jus
stupendous	stupen-jus
tremendous	tremen-jus

The above correspondent Sounds may also be expressed by *y*, as *bute-yus*, *plent-yus*, *naush-yus*, *steward-yus*, &c.

Words

Words ending in sion.

Note, The following, from three to five Syllables, are all pronounced *shun*.

accession	digression	omission
admission	dimension	oppression
apprehension	detension	passion
asperision	disension	pension
aversion	diversion	propension
animadversion	discusion	permission
cession	emission	possession
concession	expression	procession
confession	expansion	profession
concussion	extension	progression
condescension	extorsion	remission
conversion	expulsion	fession
convulsion	immersion	succession
comprehension	inversion	suppression
compression	impression	suspension
compassion	intercession	submission
commission	intermission	subversion
depression	mission	transgression

Except these, which sound softer, like the French *j*, in *jaune*, yellow, or as our *zhun*.

allusion	diffusion	incision
conclusion	evasion	incurision
contusion	effusion	occasion
confusion	exclusion	persuasion
collision	excursion	provision
circumcision	fusion	profusion
decision	infusion	suffusion
derision	intrusion	transfusion
division	illusion	vision
delusion	invasion	—

Words ending in tion.

Note, These following, from three to seven Syllables, are all pronounced *shun*.

<i>a</i>		
abomination	alteration	capitulation
abrogation	amplification	canonization
abdication	altercation	commemoration
abbreviation	amputation	commiseration
acceleration	annotation	commination
acceptation	anticipation	commutation
acclamation	appellation	communication
accommodation	appropriation	complication
accumulation	articulation	compensation
admiration	assimilation	congregation
adoration	association	congratulation
administration	attenuation	consideration
attraction	accusation	citation
abstraction	approbation	circulation
abolition	aspiration	complication
acquisition	assignation	compotation
ambition	application	confederation
addition	animadversion	configuration
admonition	assentation	confirmation
apparition	<i>b</i>	confiscation
apposition	beatification	conflagration
attrition	benediction	conformation
adoption	<i>c</i>	confrontation
attention	contrition	congelation
affection	composition	conjugation
affliction	condition	consignation
abjuration	conception	consolation
adjuration	correction	conspiration
affirmation	collection	constellation
alienation	confection	compilation
adjudication	contribution	continuation
agitation	constitution	contamination
aggregation	construction	contemplation
allegation	cessation	consternation
	certification	contestation
		creation

creation
copulation
convention
contravention
conviction
contradiction
convocation
conversation
contention
corruption

d

definition
disposition
diminution
dissolution
distribution
deception
defection
dejection
detraction
decoction
detention
devotion
destruction
desertion
direction
distinction
discretion
deduction
diction
dilection
disproportion
damnation
debilitation
delineation
deliberation
denomination
determination
dissimulation
detestation
declaration

derogation
desolation
depredation
destination
devastation
divination
dissipation
dissertation
dilatation

e

edition
erudition
ebullition
expedition
exposition
election
erection
eviction
exemption
extraction
elocution
evolution
execution
extinction
equation
emulation
education
edification
emanation
emancipation
enumeration
ejaculation
evacuation
elevation
estimation
exaggeration
exclamation
excoriation
execration
exaction
exaltation

F 3

explication
expectation
exulceration
exultation
extenuation
extirpation
exhortation
evaporation

f

faction
fiction
friction
fabrication
fornication
felicitation
fascination
fermentation
fomentation
fulmination

g

gradation
gratification
glorification
gesticulation
generation
germination

h

humiliation
humectation
habitation

i

infection
injection
inspection
imposition
inquisition
interposition
inscription
intention

invention

invention	<i>m</i>	presentation
indiction	malediction	pollution
interdiction	machination	persecution
interjection	moderation	production
imperfection	modification	projection
institution	manifestation	prescription
interlocution	multiplication	prohibition
irruption	meditation	proportion
interruption	mutation	prostitution
introduction	<i>n</i>	precaution
interception	†nation	participation
imitation	notion	penetration
imputation	narration	predestination
illustration	negation	precipitation
imagination	navigation	preparation
immolation	numeration	privation
imprecation	nomination	procuration
incarnation	nutrition	pacification
incantation	<i>o</i>	perturbation
inflammation	objection	prevarication
information	obstruction	proclamation
innovation	opposition	profanation
intimation	oblation	procreation
intimidation	obligation	propagation
invitation	observation	prognostication
invocation	operation	protestation
instruction	occupation	purgation
interrogation	ordination	provocation
<i>j</i>	ostentation	purification
justification	<i>p</i>	
<i>l</i>	†potion	<i>q</i>
lotion	portion	qualification
legation	partition	<i>r</i>
libation	perdition	reception
laceration	petition	redemption
lapidation	position	reduction
legislation	preposition	resolution
limitation	proposition	resurrection
lamentation	perfection	retention
legitimation	perception	rescription
liquidation	prediction	restitution

revolution	solution	transaction
ration	salvation	transformation
relation	salutation	transmutation
recreation	separation	transfiguration
recrimination	signification	transmigration
reconciliation	sanctification	transpiration
reiteration	solicitation	transplantation
reclamation	speculation	trepidation
remuneration	sequestration	tribulation
repudiation	subornation	titillation
refutation	subordination	transubstantiation
reputation	suppuration	
rumination	station	v
reservation	situation	vacation
revelation	supplication	variation
	sustentation	vegetation
	sublimation	veneration
sedition	subrogation	verification
supposition	subvention	verification
superstition	stupefaction	vivification
susception	t	vibration
section	tradition	violation
suction	transposition	vocation

In like Manner are pronounced

complexion	fluxion	defluxion	inflexion
connexion	refluxion	flexion	reflexion

Note, All the foregoing Words ending in *sion* and *tion*, are entire *French*, as well as *English*, differing in nothing but their Pronunciation, and become *Latin* by striking off the last *n*.

By reason of the great Similitude there is in the Sound of those Syllables that terminate the foregoing Words, perhaps it may be asked, How shall one know when to write *ci*, *cial*, *cian*, and when *ti*, *tial*, *tian*? To which I answer, that sometimes it is according to the *English* primitive Words from whence they are derived, as from *artifice*, *benefice*, *prejudice*, come *artificial*, *bene-*

beneficial, prejudicial; or from *Latin* Words in which *c* or *t* is used, so it continues in *English*, as *judicial*, from *judicialis*; *initial*, from *initialis*; *essential*, from *essentialis*, &c.

The same may be said, if it were required to know when to write *sion* at the End of a Word, and when *tion*, for such as are written with *sion*, are generally derived from *Latin* Verbs, whose Supine ends in *sum*, as we write *mansion* with an *s* and not a *t*, because the *Latin* Verb *maneo*, *manes*, *mansi*, makes *mansum* in the first Supine; and those written with *t* is because they are derived of *Latin* Verbs, whose first Supine ends in *tum*, as the Word *solution* is wrote with a *t*, and not with an *s*, as coming from the *Latin* *solutum*, the first Supine of *solvo*, *solvis*, *solvi*; and so of its Compounds, *dissolution*, *resolution*, &c.

Of HISSING SOUNDS.

Which are those wrote with *ce, se, ss, ze*, or else with single *s*, at the Beginning, Middle, or End of Words.

Note, These Sort of Sounds are thought by some to be peculiar only to the *English* Tongue, whereas if we attend strictly to other Languages, we shall find the like Sounds frequently occur in them.

<i>a</i>	case	grafs	<i>e</i>
ace	chaste	lafs	east
dace	haste	mas	best
face	paste	pas	beast
lace	taste	clasp	ceas'd
mace	waste	gasp	least
pace	ask	hasp	feast
race	bask	rasp	blefs'd
brace	cask	wasp	crest
chace	mask	blast	chest
grace	flask	cast	dress

quest

quest	<i>i</i>	wist	toft
rest	hifs	twist	boast
vest	kifs	whist	toast
west	mifs	wrist	<i>u</i>
blefs	Swifs	<i>o</i>	ufe
guesfs	brisk	force	duce
lefs	fisk	hoarfe	truce
mefs	risk	coarfe	fluce
chefs	frisk	fource	fpruce
drefs	whisk	horfe	curfe
ftrefs	ice	bofs	nurfe
fleece	dice	crofs	purfe
Greece	lice	drofs	burft
geefe	mice	lofs	curft
fierce	nice	mos	firft
pierce	rice	tofs	thirft
tierce	tice	rofs	worft
fence	vice	grofs	cruft
hence	price	glofs	dust
thence	flice	croft	guft
whence	fplice		

And numerous other Words that may be found through all the Combinations of the Vowels, which are defignedly omitted, as too tedious to be inserted in this Place.

N. B. The following have a fofter Sound.

<i>a</i>	knees	<i>i</i>	lofe
bars	trees	prize	nofe
cars	cheefe	rise	close
ftars	eafe	wife	rofe
phrafe	peas	guife	chofe
blaze	feas	fize	profe
glaze	teaze	fives	thofe
graze	fleas	lives	<i>u</i>
maze	pleafe	knives	ufe
<i>e</i>	fneeze	wives	mufe
bees	fqueeze	<i>o</i>	chufe
lees	wheeze	dofe	

Of

Of ACUTE OR SHARP SOUNDS.

Note, These Sort are formed by a small Cavity of the Mouth, and a pouting out of the Lips.

Long Monosyllables in oo.

coo	cool	bloom	goose
too	fool	broom	loose
woo	pool	groom	noose
brood	tool	boon	boot
food	stool	moon	coot
mood	school	noon	hoot
hoof	boom	foon	moot
loof	coom	spoon	shoot
woof	doom	fwoon	tooth
proof	loom	boor	foothe
nook	room	poor	smooth

Short Monosyllables in oo.

good	book	rook	wool
hood	cook	took	rood
wood	hook	brook	sooth
flood	look	crook	foot

Except

flood	} pronounced {	flud
blood		blud
foot		fut
door		dore
floor		flore

To which may be added these and the like.

dew	duke	<i>also</i>	could	womb
drew	fluke	who	shoe	tomb
few	glue	whom	thro'	wolf
flew	hue	whose	two	you
stew	cue	should	lose	your
brew	crude	would	move	youth, &c.
				Likewise

Likewise these following may be said to have a kind of sharp Tone.

bow'	mow	brow	prowl	cowl	down	clown
cow	now	vow	growl	owl	drown	crown
how	plow	bowl	fcowl	lowr	gown	frown
low	fow'	howl	fowl	fcowr	brown	town

Also

bold	hold	told	pound
cold	old	bound	count
fold	fold	found	mount
gold	fcold	hound	fount, &c.

Of LONG and EFFEMINATE SOUNDS.

Monosyllables in ee.

bee	creed	steel	cheer
Dee	freed	weel	jeer
fee	speed	deem	leer
lee	fteed	feem	peer
flee	Twweed	teem	feer
glee	breef	been	veer
knee	reef	keen	queer
thee	leek	feen	fteer
three	meek	queen	feet
tree	peek	screen	leet
breech	seek	spleen	meet
fcreech	week	deep	fleet
deed	cheek	keep	gleet
feed	creek	peep	greet
heed	Greek	creep	sheet
need	fleek	sheep	fleet
reed	feel	sleep	street
feed	peel	steep	sweet
weed	keel	weep	teeth
bleed	kneel	beer	reeve
breed	reel	deer	sleeve

Of

Of BROAD and MASCULINE SOUNDS.

Note, Besides the foregoing slender Sounds, so peculiar to the *English* Tongue, there are some others that are to be pronounced broad like the *Scotch*, *French*, and other foreign Languages.

aw	Saul	hawk	wap
daw	all	mawk	alderman
haw	ball	balk	author
jaw	call	calk	authorise
kaw	fall	chalk	authentick
law	gall	talk	autumn
maw	hall	stalk	aurora
paw	pall	walk	auricular
raw	shall	halt	auspicious
saw	squall	malt	aukward
taw	tall	falt	awning
claw	stall	shalt	audit
draw	small	fault	audience
flaw	thrall	vault	augar
gnaw	wall	caught	augur
chaw	bald	fraught	augment
draw	scald	naught	auction
thaw	wall'd	taught	august
craw	awn	cause	Austin
spaw	dawn	clause	Aulick
shaw	drawn	flaws	austere
dawb	brawn	pause	auxiliar
bawl	fawn	gaufe	caution
brawl	lawn	was	cautarize
cawl	pawn	wasp	cautelous
crawl	prawn	war	caufative
drawl	fawn	ward	caufeway
scrawl	gnawn	warm	caustic
mawl	yawn	warn	Dauphin
spawl	bawd	swarm	fautor
sprawl	broad	wash	faucet
yawl	laud	watch	falcon
Paul	fraud	warp	fauchion
			gaudy

gaudy	nauseous	water	warfare
laudable	nauseate	walling	warrant
laudanum	quarrel	wallow	Warwick
maudlin	quarter	wanton	waddle
maugre	quarto	warder	wallet
maunder	tautology	warden	warren
mawkish	tawdry	wardrobe	waspish

There are other broad Sounds in the Letter *i*, as, *first*, *thirst*, *flirt*, *shirt*, &c. See p. 12.



CHAP. V.

Of NASSAL SOUNDS.

SO called for being formed through the Nose, that is, causing to pass that Way a Part of the Air driven by the Lungs, instead of causing the whole to pass through the Mouth.

There are but few of these Sort in *English*, except what follow, and the like ending in *ng*; and even these come so seldom together, as scarce to be discerned in our Language, but whenever they do, they are also rather a kind of *jeu de mots* than eligible Parts of Speech, as may be seen in the several Praxes on these Words.

Ex. in <i>ang</i>	spang	ring	long	dung
bang	twang	fing	fong	flung
clang	flang	fling	prong	hung
dang	tang	fting	strong	rung
fang	<i>ing</i>	spring	thong	fung
gang	bring	string	throng	flung
hang	cling	swing	wrong	stung
jang	ding	thing	tongs	strung
pang	fling	wing	<i>ung</i>	sprung
rang	king	wring	bung	fwung
fang	ling	<i>ong</i>	clung	wrung
flang		dong		lungs

G

Note,

Note, *among* and *tongue* differ in sound from the above in *ong*, being to be pronounced as if wrote with *ung*, as *amung*, *tungue*. The same may be said of *monk* and *monkey*.

Compound Naffals.

no-thing	arm-strong	head-strong
lute-string	head-long	cow-dung

Derivative Words.

length from *long* | *strength* from *strong*

Praxis on Naffals ending in ang.

He up'd with his cane and gave me a *bang*,
 By the Force of the *twang*, I felt such a *pang*,
 That from him I *flang*, and wish'd he might *hang*.
 He belong'd to the *gang*, of those men who *sang*
 To the small Bells they *rang*, with a *clang*, *dang*, *tang*.

On Naffals ending in ing.

Now opens the *spring*, and the Birds on the *wing*.
 May our Enemies *swing*, for good News we *bring*.
 Each Man pull his *string*, and let the Bells *ring*.
 We'll merrily *sing* to great George our *king*.
 For that is the *thing*, with a high *ding* a *ding*.

On Naffals ending in ong.

I pass'd thro' a *throng*, and struck up a *song*,
 To good Boys and *strong*, but those that did *wrong*,
 I lash'd with my *thong*, and push'd them *along*,
 With a *strong* *long* *prong*.

On Naffals ending in ung.

Whilst on her I *hung*, and close to her *clung*,
 With instrument *strung*, quite from me she *sprung*,
 And at me she *slung* the cork-screw and *bung*;
 Then I at her *flung*, the cloaths she had *wrung*,

For

For her faucy *tongue*; but fell in the *dung*,
And there was I *stung* with a *pring* * *prong prung*.

* The Dung Fork.

We may also include these following among Naffal Sounds.

dingle	jangle	mangle	wrangle	tingle
dangle	angle	spangle	mingle	bungle
jingle	fangle	tangle	fingle	dungle

And perhaps all Words ending in *ank, ink, onk, unk*, viz.

<i>a</i>		<i>i</i>		<i>u</i>
bank	shrank	ink	clink	hunk
blank	plank	pink	drink	punk
crank	drank	link	fink	drunk
drank	shank	tink	stink	funk
lank	flank	wink	think	stunk
flank	spank	blink	shrink	flunk
frank	stank	brink	twink	trunk
hank	thank	chink	<i>o</i> monk	shrunken

Of GUTTURAL SOUNDS.

☞ These Sort of Sounds come from the Latin *guttur*, pertaining to the throat, because they fill the Mouth and Throat as it were in the Manner of their Pronunciation.

I find that many fruitless attempts have heretofore been made (by certain authors, who have given us what they call a Synopsis on all the *English* Letters) to shew that not only *g* and *y*, but also, that even the Vowels themselves are guttural, or Throat-Letters: A Doctrine so extremely pregnant with self-evident Contradictions, as needs nothing but itself to confute it. For even the *Hebrew* Tongue, which is apparently full of guttural Sounds, has none at all in the Vowels, as we may see

in their $\aleph$ Aleph, *aw*, which signifies their A, or any other Vowel, according to what Point is understood, or is actually placed above or below to express it; although I will allow at the same Time that the natural Sound of such Point, serving to distinguish it, may itself be guttural.

But as to the *English* now spoken, it has manifestly no guttural Sounds at all, either of Vowels or Consonants, unless it be the strong Aspiration of the Letter *h*, which by a proper Union with two certain Letters I might name, exactly corresponds to the guttural Sounds of the *Hebrew* $\aleph$ Cheth and $\aleph$ Gimmel, and the Welch *ghwa* and *ghwaftold*. But I must here beg Leave to postpone any further Explanation of this Sort, 'till I come to treat of guttural Sounds in another Language, that will more immediately engross my Attention.



C H A P. VI.

Of EQUIVOCAL EXPRESSIONS.

THE Pronunciation whereof cannot be distinguished by the nicest Ear, formed after the Manner of the *French*, where the last Consonant falls upon the next Vowel, and so *vice versa*.

E X A M P L E I.

an {	it	a {	nit
	itch		nich
	ear		near
	eye		nigh
	odd		nodd
	ode		node
	ailing		nailing
	utter		nutter
	ice-house		nice house
	aked heart		naked heart
in {	ever failing remedy	in {	never failing remedy
	either manner		neither manner

EXAMPLE

EXAMPLE II.

more {	ate	more {	rate
	ailing		railing
	air		rare
	ashes		rafhes
	eels		reels
	ice		rice
	odds		rods
	odes		roads
	out		rout
	ope		rope
	itches		riches

EXAMPLE III.

some {	are	some {	mare
	ask		mask
	add		mad
	aid		maid
	eat		meat
	ear		meer
	eel		meal
	eager		meagre
	ice		mice
	is't		mist
	ode		mode
	owe		mów
	ore		more
	oats		moats
	ashes		mafhes
	others		mothers
	utter		mutter

EXAMPLE IV.

The little {	adz	The little {	lads
The little }	ox	The little }	locks

a little {	af	a little {	laf
	ax		lax
	ark		lark
	afh		lash
	aid		laid
	ate		late
	adder		ladder
	ear		leer
	eye		lye
	each		leach
	ink		link
	is't		list
	oar		ore
	ore		lower
	oaf		loaf
	oft		loft
	impish		limpish

In like Manner (by a kind of *jeu de mots*) we may go almost thro' the whole Alphabet, viz.

E X A M P L E V.

a little	a	a little	lay
a	b	a	bee
a	c	a	sea
a	d	aid	e
an	e	a	knee
an	f	an	eff
a	g	age	e
a little	h	a little	each
an	i	an	eye
a	j	a	jay
a	k	ake	a
an	l	an	ell
an	m	a	name
a little	n	a little	lane
a little	o	a little	low
a	p	a	pea
a	q	a	cue
a little	r	a little	air
			a little

a little	s	a little	less
a little	t	a little	tea
a little	u	a little	yew
little	v	little	we
a	w	a double	yew
little	x	little	lakes
	y		why
a little	z	a little	lizzard
an	&	an	m, p, c, and

To which may be added the Pronunciation of the following, and numerous other equivocal Words, that cannot be distinguished by the nicest ear.

<i>a</i>	bald	borough	cession
ail	bawld	burrow	fession
ale	ball	by	cieling
air	bawl	buy	fealing
are	bare	but	cion
an	bear	butt	fion
Ann	bays		clause
ant	baize	<i>c</i>	claws
aunt	beer	Cain	coarse
all	bier	cane	course
awl	been	call	
assent	bean	cawl	cousin
ascent	bile	can	couzen
augur	boil	cann	council
auger	blue	canon	counsel
ate	blew	cannon	
eight	bore	canvas	cruise
ax	boar	canvass	crews
acts	bow	cashier	cruel
<i>b</i>	beau	cashire	crewel
bail	bred	cell	could
bale	bread	fell	cool'd

clime

climb	flour	higher	l
clime	flower	hire	laid
	forth	hoar	lade
d	fourth	whore	lain
Dane	foul	hole	lane
deign	fowl	whole	leak
dam		hoop	leek
damn	g	whoop	lessen
dear	gall	hough	lesson
deer	Gaul	huff	liar
due	gilt		lyre
dew	guilt	i	limb
die	glair	eye	limn
dye	glare	i	line
dire	grate	I'll	loin
dyer	great	isle	led
disease	grays	in	lead
disseize	graze	inn	lie
done	grease	indict	lye
dun	Greece	indite	lo
	groan	k	low
f	grown	kill	m
fain		kiln	
fane	b	knave	maid
faint	hail	nave	made
feint	hale	knight	main
fair	hart	night	mane
fare	heart	know	mail
fir	hare	no	male
fur	hair	knew	manner
flea	hew	new	manor
flee	hue	knows	mean
flue	him	nose	mien
flew	hymn		

meet

meet	peer	write	flów
mete	pier	wright	floe
mews	Peter	rode	fo
muse	petre	road	fów
mite	place	roe	sole
might	plaice	row	soal
moat	please	rood	sum
mote	pleas	rude	some
mortar	plow	room	son
morter	plough	rheum	fun
<i>n</i>	pray	rote	fore
noose	prey	wrote	soar
news	profit	rough	stair
<i>o</i>	prophet	ruff	stare
oar	<i>r</i>	<i>s</i>	stains
ore	rain		Stanes
of	reign	fail	steal
off	raise	fale	steel
one	rays	filly	strait
won	reed	Scilly	straight
our	read	seen	succour
hour	rest	scene	sucker
<i>p</i>	wrest		futtle
pallet	retch	fees	subtle
palate	wretch	seize	
Paul	rime	sea	<i>t</i>
pall	rhyme	see	tax
pain	rie	sent	tacks
pane	wry	scent	tail
peal	ring	shore	tale
peel	wring	shoar	team
pair	right	fight	teem
pear	rite	cite	their
			there

throne

throne	told		weal
thrown	toll'd	w	weel
the	u	wade	weak
thee		weigh'd	week
	undue		
time	undo	way	wood
thyme		weigh	wou'd
	v		
too	veil	wait	'
two	vale	weight	
			yew
toe	vain	waist	you
tow	vein	waste	

The following Words are spelt and pronounced exactly alike, but differ widely in Signification.

A

air, which we breathe.

air, mode or manner of behaviour; also a flourish or symphony in musick.

arms, the limbs of the body.

arms, offensive weapons.

abide, to dwell or tarry.

abide, to bear, endure, or suffer.

B

bat, made use of to play at cricket

bat, a bird so called.

base, the foundation.

base, vile, mean.

bore, a hole with some instrument.

bore, the Perfect tense of the verb *to bear*.

bit, for horses

bit, a little morsel; also the Perfect tense of the verb *to bite*.

dam,

D

- dam,* the mother of any creature.
dam, used to make dykes, as in Holland.
dear, of great value or price.
dear, or beloved; a kind and tender sort of expression.

F

- fair,* a public market for trade, sports and games.
fair, neat, nice.
fare, a customary duty or hire of any person or thing
fare, good or bad cheer provided for entertainment.
find, or meet with that which was lost,
fin'd, amerced, or made to pay or forfeit for any offence.
flea, a troublesome insect.
flea, or tear off the flesh from the bones.
flourish, to write or strike great letters, knots and figures
flourish, to live in plenty; also an air in musick.
fall out, to tumble out of a chair, window, &c.
fall out, to quarrel.

H

- humour,* the peculiar turn of a person's mind.
humour, any one of the juices that affect the body.
hail, a congeal'd substance in the air; also to call or salute.
hail, hearty, strong, and healthy.
hawk, a buzzard, or bird of prey so called.
hawk, to spit, hem, &c. also to sell any wares, &c.

I

- infant,* any child under seven years old; and in law till 21.
infant, the king of Spain and Portugal's eldest sons so called.

- issue*, a small incision in the flesh to draw off humours.
issue, lawful children ; also the effect resulting from any preceding cause.

L

- let*, a house or horse to hire.
let, admit, permit, or suffer.
let, oppose or hinder.
leave, license or permission
leave, forsake, quit, cease, or abandon.
lean, meat that is not fat.
lean, an inclination of the body to one side.
loom, such as weavers use to make stuffs, silks, &c.
loom, the perspective view of a ship under sail.
lime, made of chalk, to be tempered into mortar.
lime, a high tree so called.

M

- mail*, armour, a warrior's coat so called.
mail, the post-boy, or rather the trunk or portmantau of the letters he carries.
main, the firm land ; also the middle of the ocean, or wide sea.
main, a term used in the game of Hazard ; also the chief person or thing to be depended on.
mead, a field or meadow.
mead, a sort of liquor made of honey.
mite, a little reptile or insect, usually found in rotten cheese
mite, a small piece of money used in former days.
May, the month so called.
May, a sort of white flowers growing in hedges about that season.
meal, of barley or oats.
meal, a dinner or supper so called.

mole,

- mole,* a creature with a black fur skin, that lives under ground.
- mole,* an exuberant piece of hard flesh, rising in any part of the body.
- mole,* a small harbour, such as they have at Leghorn, &c.
- morals,* the applications of fables.
- morals,* the good conduct or behaviour of a person.
- mortar,* a preparation of lime and sand, used by bricklayers
- mortar,* a short gun, with a large bore; also what is used by apothecaries for pounding, &c.

N

- near,* close or adjoining to any person or thing.
- near,* stingy, sparing, covetous, niggardly, &c.

O

- own,* to claim or challenge a thing as one's own.
- own,* to acknowledge or confess any thing.

P

- pale,* wan of countenance.
- pale,* the bound or limits of any thing.
- pall,* a covering thrown over a coffin.
- pall,* to grow flat, dull, or insipid; also to cloy or disgust.
- piles,* buildings or edifices
- piles,* or hæmorrhoids, a disease of the body.
- piddle,* a small piece of ground, about an acre.
- piddle,* picking or eating a bit here and there; a trifling or doing matters of small consequence as old folks do.
- pound,* in weight, from 12 to 16 ounces.
- pound,* in value twenty shillings with us.

Q

- quarrel,* a strife, difference, or dispute.
- quarrel,* a square pain of glass, set upon angles.

R

rest,

R

<i>rest,</i>	stop, pause, or quiet.
<i>rest,</i>	residue or remainder.
<i>rear,</i>	behind, not in the front
<i>rear,</i>	to nourish or bring up; also to set up an end, as a horse on his hind legs
<i>row,</i>	with an oar.
<i>row,</i>	of trees or houses.
<i>roe,</i>	of a fish.
<i>roe,</i>	a deer.

S

<i>stile,</i>	a post to get over.
<i>stile,</i>	or manner of writing or speaking.
<i>strait,</i>	a narrow place or passage.
<i>strait,</i>	a hard shift to live, or do any thing.
<i>sum,</i>	a quantity of money.
<i>sum,</i>	or amount of the whole matter.

T

<i>tow,</i>	or flax on a distaff.
<i>tow,</i>	or hale a boat or vessel along the water.

W

<i>waste,</i>	to squander or mis-spend.
<i>waste,</i>	a common or desert
<i>way,</i>	a road or path.
<i>way,</i>	a method or manner of acting.

Words spelt alike, but different in Sense and Pronunciation by a right placing of the Accent.

<i>absent,</i>	as, he was absent, or gone away.
<i>absént,</i>	to absent one's self or stay away.
<i>abstract,</i>	to abridge.
<i>ábstract,</i>	the abridgment itself.
<i>áugust,</i>	the month so called.
<i>augúst,</i>	that is great and noble.

collect,

C

<i>cólleſt</i> ,	a ſhort prayer.
<i>colléſt</i> ,	to gather together.
<i>cómpact</i> ,	an agreement.
<i>comſáct</i> ,	well put together.
<i>cómpound</i> ,	a mixture.
<i>comſóund</i> ,	to mix together.
<i>cónduct</i> ,	under ſafe guard ; alſo manners and behaviour
<i>condúſt</i> ,	to guard one home.
<i>cónſiſt</i> ,	great trouble and ſtruggling.
<i>conſliſt</i> ,	to ſtrive with difficulties.
<i>cónſines</i> ,	borders or diſtricts.
<i>conſínes</i> ,	he confines him, within bounds or in priſon.
<i>cónjure</i> ,	to raiſe an evil ſpirit.
<i>conjúre</i> ,	to ſwear any one to the truth.
<i>contéſt</i> ,	to diſpute.
<i>cóiteſt</i> ,	the diſpute itſelf.
<i>contráſt</i> ,	to bargain.
<i>cóntract</i> ,	the bargain itſelf.
<i>convért</i> ,	to turn or convert.
<i>cénvert</i> ,	the perſon converted.

E

<i>extráſt</i> ,	or draw out from any thing.
<i>éxtract</i> ,	the draſt itſelf.

F

<i>fermént</i> ,	to work like yeſt.
<i>férment</i> ,	a great heat or ſtir about ſomething.
<i>fréquent</i> ,	common or uſual.
<i>frequént</i> ,	to come often

G

<i>gallánt</i> ,	a lover, a gay pretender.
<i>gállant</i> ,	brave, bold, heroíck.

I

<i>íncenſe</i> ,	a perfume uſed at the altar.
<i>incénſe</i> ,	to put in a rage
<i>inválid</i> ,	of no worth
<i>invalid</i> ,	a diſabled ſoldier.

H 2

minute,

M

minute, a small proportion of time.
minúte, a small or trifling matter.

O

object, of charity.
objéct, to gainsay any thing.

P

prémises, a fair conclusion from what has been said.
premises, he premises several things, i. e. he first mentions.
présent, to give.
présent, the gift itself.
projéct, to scheme or contrive.
próject, the scheme itself.

R

rebél, to be disloyal.
rébel, the rebel himself.
recórd, to write and keep an account or memorandum
récord, the account or memorandum itself.
refúse, to deny.
réfuse, the dross or offscouring left behind.

T

tormént, to put in pain.
tórmént, the pain itself.
transfér, to assign or set over from one to another.
tránsfer, the assignment itself
tránsport, a fit of joy; also a felon.
transpórt, to go or send into a foreign country.

U

únite, any single figure.
unite, to make or join together in one.

|||||

CHAP. VII.

A short and general Praxis on English Diction, shewing what is commonly and vulgarly wrote and spoken in Parentheses, with its Correction immediately following, in alphabetical Order.

A

I LIVE at St. (Awbuns) i. e. Albans. He was born at (Aini-e-shum) Agmondesham. He is gone to (Ailzfurd) Ailresford.

In my way to (Aber-ghe-nee) Abergavenny, I saw images of fine (alablastur) alabaster. He is (a most) almost ruined. Are they come (a redly) already. You talk like (a pottecary) an apothecary. Chicken and (sparagrafs) asparagus. That's (a recklas) an auricula, or (emmony) anemoné.

B

A (bailey) bailiff and his follower. He fell against the (banisturs) ballisters. He is gone to (St. Bartelmees) St. Bartholomew's hospital. He went through (Barnabee) Bermondsey-street to (Brum-midgum) Birmingham, to (Branfurd) Brentford, to (Burntwood) Brentwood, and (Bristow) Bristol. The ship's (bos'n) boatswain; her (buz-zum) bosom. Had you any (biz-nefs) business.

C

He is gone to (Chefs'n) Cheshunt, to see some (chaine) china. My Lord (Chumlee) Cholmondeley went to (Cifetur) Cirencester. He sung like a (que-ristur) choirister. Here's some (scutchaneel) cochineal. He's the (cox'n) cockswain. He is (curnel) colonel of the red (ridgement) regiment. Can you (constur) construe this? Has the (crown) coroner sat on the body? It lay near the (cowcumber) cucumber bed.

She made him a (curchee) courtesy. He had a (glister) clyster.

D

He removed from (Darnton) Darlington to (Deadfurd) to Deptford, where he found a fine (dymont) diamond ring. Lend me your (dicksnary) dictionary. Hoop (Dawrawtee) Dorothy. She was clapt in a (dungen) dungeon at (Durtitch) Droitwich, and thence convey'd to (Dullidge) Dulwich.

E

Mrs. (Elliner) Eleanor was born in (Ingländ) England, or (Edinburrow) Edinburgh. Pray was (Enock) Enoch a (unuck) eunuch.

F

(Febberavery) February last I spent (fippunse) five-pence. They take in the (forin) foreign news. You may have some (furmetee) frumity. Take two (spoonfulls) spoonsful, three (handfulls) handsful, (lapfulls) lapsful, (hatfulls) hatsful, (pailfulls) pailsful, &c.

G

He lives at (Gloftur) Gloucester, or at (Godlyman) Godalmin. Is it a boy or (gal) girl who stumbled at the (grunfil) groundfil. It is not all gold that (glisters) glitters.

H

A (hankeacher) handkerchief for a (hape-nee) half-penny. He played on a (hoboy) hautbois. He lives at (Harford) Hertford, or (Hobun) Holbourn. She is a good (huzif) housewife. They all shouted and cry'd (hoora) huzza.

I

The yellow (jaunders) jaundice. Is that a (jessamee) jessamin, or (junkwill) jonquil.

L

He is but a (lackee) lacquay; both (landerd and landaydee) landlord and landlady. What (langidge) language is it. A (leftennant) lieutenant went into
(Lin-

(Linkinshire) Lincolnshire, from thence to (Lestur) Leicester, and so to (Lunun) London. All (love-yers) lovers be warned by me.

M

He is the very (moral) model of his father.

N

The (nor-east) north-east and (nor-west) north-west passages. I went in the water as high as the (nabel) navel.

O

He went to (Oakingham) Wokingham, thence to (Okinton) Oakhampton, to dine upon mutton and (ingons) onions; there was a good (ornary) ordinary.

P

Is it fatin or (padisway) paduasoy? Is it a (poleantis) polyanthus? A (pursevant) poursuivant at arms.

R

It is (Hue) Hugh, or (Rafe) Ralph. Come to the place of (randevooz) rendezvous. My (rockalo) roque-leau is left at (Redrif) Rotherhithe.

S

At (Saulsberry) Salisbury we had a (Sammon) Salmon, and at (Sennuck) Sevenoak a lobster. He went to (Sud-rick) Southwark, (Shawditch) Shoreditch, and thence to (Shrozeberry) Shrewsbury. Many a bitter (fyth) sigh gave he. The (shreeves) sheriff's officers.

T

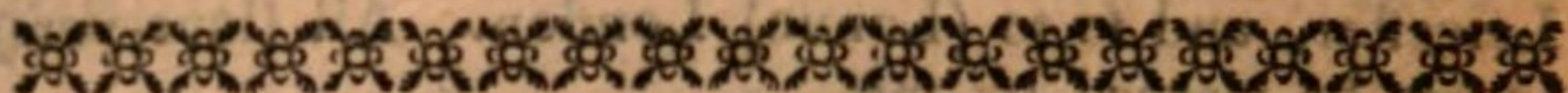
Mr. (Tibbald) Theobald went to (Tofetur) Toucester. A (continental) continental war. An (Egyptan) Egyptian mummy.

V

A pretty (figary) vagary; at (Foxhall) Vauxhall they had (venzin) venison pasty. The Jury gave in their (vardy) verdict. He uses (vargice) verjuice with his (vittles) victuals.

W

Fine (winscutting) wainscotting may be seen at (Westmister) Westminster, (Waltam) Waltham, (Wooster or Woostersheer) Worcesterhire.



C H A P. VIII.

Of Accent, Apóstrophé, and Emphasis.

ACCENT is the due modulation or tone of the voice, denoting its rising or falling, by a particular stress or force of Sound that it lays upon any syllable, according to the measure or quantity thereof, whether long or short.

The most common use of it is to shew upon what syllable the force of the pronunciation lies, for some words quite alter their signification according to the placing of the accent, as *inválid*, *invalid*, *aúgust*, *augúst*, &c. as may be seen in page 74; whilst others would be a mere jumble of letters, and become quite unintelligible without it, or by being wrong placed, as *philosóphy*, *philósophical*, *theológy*, *theológicoal*, &c. so that it is much to be wished that the English, seeing the absolute necessity there is for it, would (like the Spaniards) always accent their doubtful words, and not leave them to be determined by connection of speech: with regard to the mode or form, it matters not whether it be either a grave or acute accent, so as some be placed to shew where lies the distinction of sound; but I have remarked that the best writers have generally made choice of the acute accent, which is from the right hand to the left, thus (') and then the foregoing words would be marked in this manner, viz. *philosóphical*, *theológicoal*, which would be as easily pronounced as their primitive words *philósophy*, *theólogy*, &c. It may here also be observed, that the accent has of late years been carried backward, as, *advértisement*, *geógraphy*, &c.

APO'STROPHE', is a mark in form of a comma, thus (') and is placed as an elision, to shew there is a vowel struck out. It is never used but in order to make the pronunciation more delicate.

It

It is common in our language, both in prose and verse, as *John's book*, i. e. *the book of John*; but chiefly in verbs, as *I'll* for *I will*; *he pleas'd me* for *he pleased me*; *shou'd* for *should*; *cou'd* for *could*; *can't* for *cannot*; *don't* for *do not*; *won't* for *will not*; *hasn't* for *has not*; *havn't* for *have not*, &c. and in the following verse.

*Under two heads the letters all are plac't ;
The first holds Vowels, Consonants the last.*

Where it is to be observed that *d* is changed into *t*, and means *placed*, but that would not rhyme with *last*, nor does this with *plac't*, on a critical examination of cadence.

The Apóstrophé is never made use of in English, as it is in French, Italian, and other languages, i. e. to serve instead of a final vowel when the general article comes before *h*, or to avoid the uncouth or disagreeable founding of two vowels together; for in that case we join the letter *n* to the article, as instead of, *a old man came a hour ago*, we say, *an old man came an hour ago*, &c. and these are all the uses that I know an apostrophe is of in our language.

EMPHASIS is in the nature of an accent, shewing the stress or force of sound that is upon one or more particular words in a sentence, and the word on which such stress is laid is called the emphatical word, because it gives a certain force, spirit, or beauty to the whole sentence, as, *should such a man as I flee?* where you may perceive the personal pronoun *I* is the most emphatical, and as such requires the greatest stress or accent. To place a due emphasis on a word is only to pronounce it with a peculiar strength of voice above the rest, and where it happens that there is a plain opposition between two words in a sentence, whereof the one differs from another but in part, as we often see in these words, *proper* and *improper*, *just* and *unjust*, then the accent or stress is often removed from its common place, and fixed on the first syllable, in which the words differ, as the *just* must die as well as the *unjust*, otherwise in common speaking we say, *such a one is very unjust*.

And

And as there may be two accents upon one word, so there may be two or three emphases in one sentence, as, *James is neither a (fool) nor a (wit), a (blockhead) nor a (poet)*; now in this sentence, *fool, wit, blockhead* and *poet*, are all emphatical words.

The great and general rule to find out which is the emphatical word in a sentence, is to consider the chief design of the writer or speaker, and that word which shews the chief design is the emphatical word, because it was for the sake of that very word the whole sentence was made. When two or more are set in opposition to each other, and one of them is pronounced with an emphasis, then the other should likewise have one; as, *if (they) run, (we'll) run, for (our) feet are as good as (theirs)*; where you may perceive that *they, we'll, our*, and *theirs*, are all emphatical Words.

In reading a discourse we knew not before, sometimes we may happen to place the emphasis very improperly, which causes great confusion; therefore in that case it behoves us to read the sentence over again more carefully, or get a native to do it, in order to procure a proper sound: but I observe when a person speaks his mind on an interesting subject, or reads a discourse of his own penning, or with which he is perfectly well acquainted, he scarce ever lays the emphasis on the wrong word.

But in order to make it appear of how great importance it is for us to place the emphasis aright, let us consider that the very sense and meaning of a sentence is sometimes vastly different, according as the accent or emphasis is laid upon different words; and the particular design of the speaker is only to be distinguished hereby, as may be seen by this short question, *Can a man walk in at the door now?* If the emphasis be laid on the word *man*, the proper negative answer to it is, No, but a *boy* may. If the emphasis be laid upon the word *walk*, the answer is, No, but he may *creep* in. If the emphasis be put on the word *door*, the answer will be, No, but he may at the *gate*; and if the emphasis be placed on the word *now*, the negative answer is plainly this, No, but he might *yesterday*.

yesterday. And let us consider how impertinent and foolish any of these answers would be, if the enquirer did not lay the emphasis on the proper word that should give the meaning of the question; from all which we may perceive, that the utmost care is necessary to distinguish well the emphatical word, for as the beauty and just propriety of reading and speaking depend very much upon it, so without it the most eloquent expressions would soon become flat, dull, and insipid, and consequently tiresome, as having no power or spirit at all in them, either to charm or persuade.

*Remarks on Letters and their Pronunciation;
Shewing their Use and proper Application.*

A HAS not only a masculine and feminine sound, as mentioned in page 4, but also a third sort that may be called open, which is a sound between both, as, *Catholic Father*, &c. but it is never sounded as some * maintain, “after the French manner of pronouncing *e*, when followed by *n*, as *entendement*,” which is more like *o*; nor as the Italians do their *a*, except in combination with other letters as in the above instances.

It shews the singular number, as, *a man, a woman*; but when it precedes a noun beginning with a Vowel, it takes *n*, in order to avoid what the Greeks call a *Cacaphonia*, which is the disagreeable sound of two vowels meeting together, as, *an ass, an ear, an owl, an image, an understanding*, instead of *a ass, &c.* and so likewise when it precedes a noun beginning with *b* not aspirated, as, *an hour, an honest man*, &c. but where *b* is aspirated, *a* is used the same as it is before any other consonant, as, *a hand, a horse, a hut*, &c.

It is put before the adjective, when that goes before the substantive, as it generally does, as, *a wise king, a pretty bird.*

It

* See *Greenwood's Essay*, p. 240; and *Brightland*, p. 10.

It is used for *on* or *in*, as, *a-foot, a-shore, a-bed, a-days, a-nights*, for *on foot, on shore, in bed, in the days, in the nights*.

When joined to *b*, it marks an interjection of sorrow, as *ah me!*—joined to *m*, it is the first person of the present tense of the passive auxiliary verb *to be*, as *I am*; when by itself or joined to *n*, it is the general article to all nouns, as *a hammer, an owl, &c.* joined to *s*, it is a comparative conjunction, *ex. as like as this to that*: joined to *t*, it is a separable preposition, as *at home*; and to any of the consonants through the whole alphabet, it operates as an inseparable preposition, as *ab, ac, ad, &c. ex. absolve, accord, address, &c.*

B, Joined to *e*, forms the infinitive Mood of the auxiliary verb passive, *to be*, and to any of the five vowels it is an inseparable preposition, as *ba, be, bi, bo, bu*; *ex. baker, betide, bible, body, bury, &c.*

c, Joined to any of the five vowels, is also an inseparable preposition, as *ca, ce, ci, co, cu*; *ex. cadence, cement, city, covet, curious, &c.*

This letter, according to English orthography, as a learned writer well observes, never ends a word, as *back, deck, lick, lock, luck, &c.* which is a manifest proof of its inutility in the termination of words, so that those who are so nice as to write these words, *logic, music, public, &c.* in a servile conformity to the Latin, from whence they are derived, do not sufficiently perceive how extremely void they depart from the true English analogy, for if we consider that *c* has the natural sound of *s* and not of *k*, we shall find the foregoing words sound soft instead of hard, which (whatever it may be in any other) is contrary to the genius of the English tongue.

D, Joined to *o*, forms the active auxiliary verb *to do*, and to other vowels, becomes an inseparable preposition, as *da, de, di, do, du*; *ex. dated, denote, divide, docile, dubious, &c.*

E, Is a letter which occurs most frequently in our language, but it does not always lengthen the foregoing vowel, as *give, live, dove, love, glove, above*; when

when joined to *d*, it forms the perfect tense of all regular verbs, as *loved*, &c. and to any of the consonants, becomes an inseparable preposition, as *eb*, *ec*, *ed*, &c. *ex. ebony, eclipse, editor, &c.*

The natural Sound of this letter *by itself* is very sharp, like the French *i* in *machine*, but never like their *e* masculine as some * maintain, except in combination with other letters.

Whenever *a* is joined to this letter, it is no English dipthong, and yet in the best English authors *æ* is retained, especially in Latin proper names, where *æ* both sound like *e*, as *Æneas, Ætna, Mæcenas, &c.* But *æ* dipthong is generally neglected in common words, and wrote only with *e*, as, *equity, female, tragedy, comedy*, though they come from the Latin *æquitas, fæmina, trægædia, comædia, &c.*

It is usually left out before *ing*, in all the active participles, as instead of *loveing, giveing, haveing*, we now write, *living, giving, having*, for the euphonia of sound, in order to avoid the disagreeable clashing of two vowels; but it must be used in these nouns, *moveable, changeable, peaceable, serviceable.*

F, Joined to any of the five vowels, is an inseparable preposition, as *fa, fe, fi, fo, fu*, Ex. *famous, female, figure, folio, furious, &c.*

G, Joined to *o*, forms the verb neuter *to go*, and to that or any other vowel, it becomes an inseparable preposition, as *ga, ge, gi, go, gu*, Ex. *gaming, gelding, given, govern, guttur, &c.*

It is hard at the end of words, as *fig, fog, big, bog, bug, &c.* but in *ring, sing, song, &c.* and the like nasal sounds, it is soft.

Before *e* and *i*, its sound is very vague, and uncertain. See pages 10 and 11.

H, Joined to *e*, is a personal pronoun attending all verbs in the third person singular, as *he is, &c.* and to any other vowel, is an inseparable preposition, as *ha, he, hi, ho, hu*, Ex. *having, hero, hiring, homage, humour.*

I

This

* See Greenwood and Brightland.

This character has hitherto been considered by most authors not as a Letter, but only as a note of aspiration, though they are not all agreed about the certainty of this; indeed some modern ones have been so complaisant as to meet it half way, allowing it to be half a letter; these seem to split the difference, or rather the *h* itself, because according to them one half goes for a letter, and the other half for an aspiration; but what may be thought most extraordinary is, that whilst none of these authors allow it to be a letter, yet have they all thought fit to range it in the order and number of letters in the alphabet, which seems a flat contradiction of their own tenets, to introduce or suffer the continuance of a character among the letters, that is generally disavowed to be such, or at least not acknowledged to belong to them; but if I were of their opinion that it was only an aspiration, I should, as the Greeks do, either have placed a note or mark to shew when and where *h* was to be aspirated, or else have left it quite out of the alphabet.

That *h* is no letter, I think is an assertion wanting proof; common experience being entirely against such an opinion, for if it be allowed, (as who will deny?) that some words cannot be expressed without *h*, then it follows, that in those words where it is used it must necessarily operate as a letter, as *much*, *chuse*, *chair*, where we may perceive it is more than a bare aspiration, its sound being partly dental and partly hissing, answering all the purposes of a letter, and is every whit as essential to the forming of words, as the other letters are, and this appears plain, (because in the instance before us) if we take away *h* it destroys the very being and essence of the same words, and they would stand thus, *muc*, *cuse*, *cair*, all which is the most egregious nonsense.

But here I am aware of what some may alledge in objection to these examples, namely, that they mean no more than the pronunciation of *c* before *h*, but this I deny to be always the case, because although it may possibly be so with respect to words beginning with *ch*, yet it is very different where *ch* comes in the middle
or

or end of words, as *churching*, *lurching*, *much*, *touch*, *such*, and so of numbers of words in our language, which can better bear the loss of *c* than *b* for without the *c* we may perceive some kind of analogy to the real sound of the above words on the first spelling them, as *churb-ing*, *lurb-ing*, *muh*, *touh*, *sub*, which are often thus wrote by illiterate persons, or those who fail in their orthography; whereas the same cannot be so said if we leave out the *b*; and even in words beginning with *ch*, as *child*, *cheap*, *cheat*, &c. we may plainly perceive that *b* is pronounced as strong as the *c*. Therefore seeing there is no essential difference in the stress or force of either letter in sound and pronunciation, but that one is actually as useful and as much employed in forming a word as the other, I cannot so far oppose my judgment, as to admit the common unmeaning distinction usually made, in compliance to a blind majority governed by custom, which often gives the stamp of authority to the most irregular expressions, therefore I must and do insist upon it, that *b* is not only an aspiration but a letter of distinction, serving to give words a sense which otherwise they would not have, as in these following, *ill*, *ell*, *are*, &c. which by placing *b* before them quite alter their meaning, and become *bill*, *bell*, *bare*, and so of many others of the like sort, as may be seen in my list of words, at page 28, shewing when *b* is aspirated and when not. To illustrate this more fully by a familiar example, I will just beg leave to introduce a short story concerning this letter *b*; which, while it diverts, may serve to instruct: An English gentleman once ordered his servant to *beat* some broth, but in his manner of pronouncing it, he left out the *b*; whereupon the servant naturally concluding he was bid to *eat* it, he did so; when his master had waited a considerable time expecting his broth, he called his servant and enquired where it was? to which he answered, Sir, if you remember, you ordered me to *eat* the broth, which I accordingly have done; to whom the master replied, why how's that! perhaps you did not hear me pronounce the *b*, I bid you *beat* the broth, and I could have *ate* it myself, but Sir, says
the

the fervant, I have often heard you insist upon it, that *Non est Litera*; and thus he would give his master to understand he had his own authority for what he did: By this little tale we find the gentleman very justly lost his broth for not considering *b* as a letter.

But because I would not be singular in my opinion about this letter, I will here give the judgment of sundry other authors, that tend very much to support what I have advanced concerning it, and first; *Torriano*, an old Italian author, in his dictionary at letter *b*, has this observation, “Some there be, (says he) that have lately
“severely banished the *b* from other writings, and
“will hardly allow the use thereof, but I find that the
“best authors, and such as are accounted the fathers
“of the Italian tongue, both antient and modern,
“have ever used and still use the same as a letter, and
“an aspiration of necessary use, to give vigour and
“pulse to the next ensuing letter, for as much as it
“doth clear doubts and remove equivocations.” And for my part, (adds the same author) “I cannot be in-
“duced to allow the loss of it.”

Captain *Stevens*, also, in his rudiments of the Spanish grammar, at page 12, reciting *Jordan Martinianus*; *Tominque* in his Elem. page 2, art. 3; and *Littleton*, in his Latin dictionary letter *b*, says, “That they and
“other authors are of opinion, that *b*, called by St.
“*Jerome* an extensive vowel, is a letter for the follow-
“ing reasons: First, a letter is nothing else than a
“note of peculiar sound, and a single part of a syl-
“lable, *b* is the same, therefore *b* is a letter; secondly,
“by reason the Spanish authors place the *b* among
“the semivowels, because before and after, it has a
“vowel in its pronunciation.”

These seemed to be weighty reasons with Captain *Stevens* for considering *b* as a letter, yet because the public had received it with *Priscianus* only as a note of aspiration, he says, he thought himself obliged to consent to it, whether with reason or without. So prevalent is the arbitrary power of custom.

Also Mr. *Greenwood*, author of the essay on the English grammar, seems strongly of opinion that *b* is a letter,

letter, confirming what has been here said concerning it, for at page 308, treating (after his manner) of the formation or genuine sound of the letters, amongst which is the *h*, he speaks of it to this purpose:

“ The Greeks, because its sound is but small, called
 “ it an aspiration, as it were no letter, though for-
 “ merly they placed it before the vowels in a direct
 “ line, &c. but I can, (says he) see no manner of rea-
 “ son why *h* should not be a consonant in all other
 “ languages, for it is by no means to be rejected from
 “ the number of letters, because the sound of it is not
 “ always pronounced by the French and some others,
 “ for that is common to many other letters, especially
 “ of the Hebrew and other Oriental or Eastern tongues,
 “ where they are quiescent or silent, neither is it less
 “ a letter because it does not prevent the elision or
 “ cutting off the foregoing vowel when another comes
 “ after it in the following word; for formerly neither
 “ *m* nor *s* did hinder this elision, but, says he, I own
 “ it may be doubted whether the Latins, who were
 “ such mighty imitators of the Greeks, allowed it to
 “ be a letter or not, especially since I see the Gram-
 “ marians so earnestly speaking against it.”

Again, the anonymous author of a book, by some vulgarly called *Bickerstaff's*, and by others *Brightland's* Grammar, at page 47, speaking of letter *h*, has this remark, “ *H*, though excluded the number of letters by
 “ *Priscian*, and some of our moderns on his authority,
 “ yet in the Hebrew alphabet, has three characters,
 “ and besides some obscure sound of its own, mightily
 “ enforces that of the vowels, and is manifestly a con-
 “ sonant, &c. it is indeed sometimes silent, as in *hon-*
 “ *nour*, *hour*, &c. but so are many other consonants in
 “ particular positions.”

From all which authors here recited, who are allowed to be the best Grammarians of their time, it appears that *h* is something more than a bare aspiration, therefore, upon the whole, I apprehend that as *h* is included among the number of letters in the alphabets of all the modern languages, and as some consonants are
 called

called mute and others liquid, it may properly enough be admitted under the title of an *aspirative consonant*, and so I shall take the liberty to consider it for the future, for whenever this letter is not sounded and consequently then not aspirated, such word might as well be wrote without it, as in *hour, honour, honesty, &c.* in the same manner as the modern Italians now do in *in uomo, a man, abbiamo, we have, Cristo, Christ, veemente, vehement, &c.* but only for the sake of distinction and etymology, which are sometimes necessary to be preserved.

Having thus, as I hope, fully established *b* as a letter, not only from my own judgment, but by the joint opinion and authority of divers learned men, and carefully illustrated its use in pages 44, 45, and 46, of this grammar, it is high time he now took his seat in the order of the alphabet, not as a stranger or supernumerary, but as one having equal right and authority there, with the rest of his brethren, wherefore I conclude the whole with this English distich, viz.

*H, though deny'd a letter heretofore,
We justly to the Alphabet restore.*

i, Joined to *f*, forms the conditional conjunction, as *IF he be there, &c.* to *n* it is both a separable and inseparable preposition, as *in, into, intimate, &c.* to *s* it is a verb impersonal, as *it is*; and joined to *t*, operates as a noun neuter attending the impersonal verbs, as *IT is a fine Child, IT is a tree, &c.*

Standing alone it is a personal pronoun, by which a man affirms something of himself, as *who did this or that? I; Who will buy this or that? I.*

In combination it lengthens the sound of *a*, in all these sort of diphthongs, *nail, rail, pail, &c.*

j, Joined to any of the five vowels, is an inseparable preposition, as *ja, je, ji, jo, ju*, Ex. *Jacob, Jesus, jilting, Joseph, July.*

k, Joined to any of the five vowels, serves to form nouns either proper or appellative, as *Kate, ken, kid, king, kore, kul, &c.*

l, Joined

L, Joined to *y*, serves to form the adverbs, as *fairly*, *freely*, *wisely*, *wholly*, *hugely*, &c. to *o*, it is an interjection, as *Lo I come*, &c. and when joined to any of the five vowels, it becomes an inseparable preposition, as *la*, *le*, *li*, *lo*, *lu*; Ex. *labour*, *lemon*, *licence*, *locust*, *lupin*, &c.

M, Joined to *e*, is the personal pronoun *me*, and to *y*, the pronoun possessive *my*, as *give me my book*, and to any other vowels, a preposition, as *ma*, *me*, *mi*, *mo*, *mu*, Ex. *mature*, *method*, *minute*, *motion*, *musick*.

N, Joined to *o*, is a negative adverb, as *no man*, and to other vowels an inseparable preposition, as *na*, *ne*, *ni*, *no*, *nu*, Ex. *native*, *never*, *nisy*, *notion*, *numerous*.

It is founded like two *nn*'s in *linen*, *finew*.

O, Joined to *f*, is a separable preposition, as *this is what he spoke of*, and a sign of the genitive case, as *the palm of the hand*; to *n*, it is a separable preposition, as *let him come on*; and to *r*, it is a conjunction disjunctive, as *this or that*; and when joined to these or any other consonants, it is an inseparable preposition, as *of*, *on*, *or*, Ex. *offend*, *only*, *order*; *ob*, *oc*, *od*; *obstruct*, *occur*, *oddity*, &c.

It is used as an interjection of calling, desiring, or admiration, as *o rare*, *o fine*, &c.

It is also the vocative case of nouns, if any be necessary, as *o man*, *o woman*, *o ye*, &c.

P, Joined to any of the five vowels, is an inseparable preposition, as *pa*, *pe*, *pi*, *po*, *pu*, Ex. *paper*, *Peter*, *piper*, *potion*, *pupil*, &c.

Q Has always *u* after it, which joined to any of the four vowels, becomes an inseparable preposition, as *qua*, *que*, *qui*, *quo*, Ex. *quality*, *query*, *quiet*, *quoted*, &c.

R, Joined to *e*, is a replete particle, as *re-assume*, *re-edify*, &c. and to that or any other of the five vowels, is an inseparable preposition, as *ra*, *re*, *ri*, *ro*, *ru*, Ex. *rather*, *real*, *rider*, *romance*, *rumour*, &c.

It has the same smooth trilling sound in English as in other tongues, through all the combination of the vowels, as *ra*, *re*, *ri*, *ro*, *ru*.

S, Joined

s, Joined to o, forms the comparative conjunction, as *it is so much*, or *so big*, &c. and joined to that or any other vowel, is an inseparable preposition, as *sa*, *se*, *si*, *so*, *su*, Ex. *sacred*, *sedate*, *Simon*, *social*, *Susan*, &c.

It may be sounded before most of the consonants in English except before *b*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *j*, *r*, *v*, *x*, *z*, nor is it ever pronounced before these letters in any other of the modern languages but the Italian.

It has both a hard and soft sound according to its position, and is never double but in the middle and at the end of words. A certain author* says, that “when *s* has “a soft sound, it would be convenient to write it with “the shorter character of that letter, as *his*, *ad-vise*; “and in all other places with the longer, as *hissè*, *ad- “vise*, &c.” But it does not appear very distinct to me, how the form of this letter, whether long or short, could possibly convey any analogy of sound; besides, this last word as a noun is sounded hard with *c*, as *ad-vice*; and should be so wrote.

All that can, with truth and reason be said, is that when *ss* end a word, propriety and distinction require that the first be wrote long, and the other short, as *hiss*, *miss*, *kiss*, not *hissè*, &c.

t, Joined to o, is a separable preposition, as *this is what he must come to*; and is the sign of the dative case, as *it belongs to me*, *to him*, *to this*, *to that*, &c. and joined to any other vowel it becomes an inseparable preposition, as *ta*, *te*, *ti*, *to*, *tu*, Ex. *table*, *tenure*, *tile*, *tory*, *tumour*, &c.

“When *t* comes before *i*, another vowel following “it, (says a certain English author* in his essay, page “253) it has the sound of hissing *s*, otherwise it keeps “its own sound, as *potion*, *motion*, *meditation*, *expatiate*, “&c. are sounded *posion*, *mosion*, *meditasion*, *expasiate*, “&c. but when *t* comes after *s* or *x*, it keeps its own “sound, as in *question*, *fustian*, *bestial*, *mixture*, &c.”

How severely an author of less note would have been handled for such an assertion, I am at no great loss to guess; if he means the spelling these words he is right, but

* Mr. Greenwood.

but if (as it should seem) he means their pronunciation, he is entirely wrong, for every good Englishman knows that the first examples have exactly the sound of *sh*, and the second very near that of *ch*, as I have fully shewn in treating of this letter *t*, and also in my list of words ending in *tion*, *tian*, *tial*, &c.

u, Joined to *s*, forms the personal pronoun of the plural number, as *give it us*, and to several consonants, but not to all, it is an inseparable preposition, as *ud*, *un*, *up*, *ut*, Ex. *udder*, *under*, *upper*, *utter*, &c.

It is pronounced alone, making an entire syllable by itself, in these words, *u-nite*, *u-nity*, *u-nion*, &c. having a liquid sound, as if they were wrote *younite*, &c. all which are declined with the general article *a*, as *a unicorn*, *a unison*, &c. as will be afterwards shewn.

It is not a syllable of itself, in the following words, but is joined to the next letter, as *unto*, *untie*, *utter*, *upper*, *upon*, *upside*, *under*, *understand*, and then the general article takes *n*, as *an understanding*, *an upper garment*, *an utter stranger*, &c.

It has the sound of *oo* in the following words, *bush*, *push*, *duce*, *duke*, *dupe*, as though wrote *boosh*, *poosh*, &c.

v, Joined to any of the five vowels, is an inseparable preposition, as *va*, *ve*, *vi*, *vo*, *vu*, Ex. *vanity*, *venial*, *visit*, *vomit*, *vulgar*, &c.

w, Joined to any of the first four vowels, is also an inseparable preposition, as *wa*, *we*, *wi*, *wo*, Ex. *water*, *weeder*, *widow*, *woman*, &c.

wh, Is sounded like a simple *h* in *whole*, *whore*, *wholsome*, also in *whom*, and *whose*, for the *o* in these two last words are intended to be pronounced long like *oo*, which may be done without *w*, if it were at all necessary.

x, The shape of this letter has furnished the Spaniards with a conceit as peculiar as witty, for they jocosely apply it as a reproof to drunkards, as it represents the figure and position of their legs, which, like this letter, are generally crossed in their walking, or rather staggering to and fro; but we give it a more instructive turn, and (by considering it as a number) say,
it

has two V's reversed, each of which formerly among the Latin Romans, and with us now, signify the number *five*, and being thus joined together, make up *ten*.

It is generally preceded by *e*, or *o*, as *examine*, *exert*, *ox*, *Oxford*, *Oxonian*, &c. except the names *Xerxes*, *Xenophon*, *Xanthus*, which are Greek. In the following words it is pronounced like *k* in the first Syllable, and *si* or *sh* in the second, as *anxiety*, *anxious*, read *anksiety*, *ankshus*.

y, Joined to *e*, forms the personal pronoun *ye*, attending verbs of the second person plural, as *ye are*, but this is often changed to *you* in English. When this letter is joined to any of the first four vowels, it forms several monosyllables, as *yates*, *yet*, *yield*, *your*, &c.

z, Is never joined but to three of the vowels, *a*, *e*, *o*, at the beginning of words, as *zany*, *zeal*, *zone*, *zodiac*, &c.

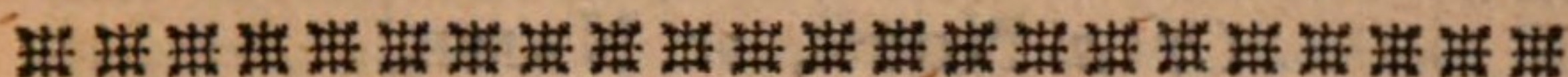
End of the First Part.



PART II,



PART II.



CHAP. I.

Of the several PARTS of ENGLISH SPEECH.

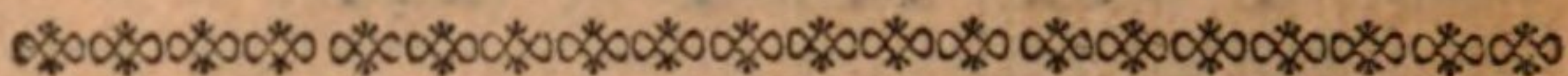
HAVING already spoken concerning Letters and Syllables, and of their various Manner of Pronunciation, I come now to treat of *Words*, that are the essential Parts of Speech, of which there are Eight in the *English* Tongue.

Noun	} <i>declinable</i>	Adverb	} <i>undeclinable.</i>
Pronoun		Conjunction	
Verb		Preposition	
Participle		Interjection	

By these eight Parts of Speech are to be understood eight Sorts of Words, which Men use in speaking, for altho' there be Thousands of Words, yet there are but eight *Sorts*, because every Word in Use is either one or other of the above Parts of Speech, and different Names are given in order to distinguish one Part of Speech from another, as a Carpenter distinguishes his Tools; one he calls a Hammer, another a Chissel, another a Saw, &c.

These

These Parts of Speech are the same in *English* as in *Latin*, for that which is a *Noun* in *English*, is generally a *Noun* in *Latin*, and so of the rest.



Of a NOUN, or NAME.

A NOUN, from the Latin *nomen*, is the name of a thing that may be felt, heard, seen, or understood ; it is divided into Substantive and Adjective.

A *Substantive* signifies some substance, as, *a man, a horse, a tree, &c.*

An *Adjective*, (or *adnoun*, because being joined to a noun) is a word that shews the manner or quality of a substance or thing, as, *good, bad, wise, foolish, great, small, &c.*

Nouns Substantive are divided into names either proper or common, thus the word *Marianne* is the proper name of a woman, because it belongs to some particular one of that kind, and is not the name of every woman.

The word *woman* is common, because it belongs to all of that kind, for every woman is called a woman, but every woman is not called *Marianne*. So the words *ship, river, and horse*, are common names ; for every ship is called a ship, every river a river, and every horse a horse ; but these words, *Centurion, Thames, and Dobbin*, are proper names, because they belong to some particular ones of that kind, for every ship is not called the *Centurion*, neither is every river called the *Thames*, nor every horse *Dobbin*.

Nouns are also divided into Simple, Compound, Primitive, Derivative, Abstract, Collective, Equivocal, and Synonymous.

SIMPLE *Nouns* are those only of one word, as *rate, value, &c.*

COMPOUND, are those which are joined with a preposition, or other word before it, making together but one word, and having sometimes a contrary or different

rent signification from the simple, as *over-rate*, *under-value*; the former whereof we see is compounded of *over* and *rate*, and the latter of *under* and *value*.

PRIMATIVE Nouns are those which are absolute and independent, as *moral*, *mortal*, *city*, *man*, *human*.

DERIVATIVE Nouns are those which are not absolute, but dependent, having their derivation from the primitive, as, *morality*, *mortality*, *citizen*, *mankind*, *humanity*.

ABSTRACT Nouns, are those derived from Adjectives, expressing their quality in general, without regard to the things in which it consists, as *goodness* from *good*, and *sweetness* from *sweet*.

COLLECTIVE, are those which in the singular number signify a great many, as, *people*, *cattle*, *company*.

EQUIVOCAL, are such as are pronounced alike, but have a double meaning, as, *ale*, malt-liquor, *ail*, trouble, *air*, we breath, *air*, mode or manner of behaviour, and numbers of this sort, as may be seen in pages 67 and 70.

SYNONYMOUS, are those of the same import or meaning, or which express the same thing several ways, as *road*, *way*, *path*, and *mode*, *manner*, *method*, *form*.

Nouns are likewise subdivided into *Numerals*, *Distributives*, *Comparisons*, *Diminutives*, *Augmentatives*, &c. as may be seen hereafter.

Of NUMBER.

NUMBER is the distinction of one from many. There are two Numbers, the *Singular*, which speaks but of one, and the *Plural*, which speaks of more than one.

The *Plural Number* in English is generally made by adding *s* to the Singular, whether it ends with a consonant or a vowel, as, *book*, *books*, *glove*, *gloves*, &c. but not always, for to words ending with *ch*, *tch*, *ss*, or *x*, the syllable *es* is added, as *church*, *churches*, &c.

Also observe that words ending in *ce*, *ge*, *se*, or *ze*, gain a syllable more in the Plural than they had in the Singular, (as will be shewn hereafter) the reason of which is because the *s*, added to make the Plural, would not be heard in the Sound, unless it made another entire syllable.

Words ending in *f* or *fe*, make their Plural by changing *f* or *fe* into *ves*, as may be seen hereafter: but all words do not make the Plural by adding *s* or *es* to the Singular, for *mouse* makes *mice*, &c. not *mouses*, and so of others, which are therefore properly called *Irregular Numbers*, as being contrary to, or that do not directly follow the general rule.

Some Nouns have no Plural, whilst others have no Singular, and some few, on the other hand, are used in both numbers, as may be seen in the following Tables of Regular and Irregular Numbers.

Table of Regular Numbers.

The following, and numerous other Nouns ending with a consonant, form their Plural by adding *s*.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>P.</i>
art	<i>s</i>	eel	<i>s</i>	king	<i>s</i>	rat	<i>s</i>
bat	<i>s</i>	fan	<i>s</i>	lord	<i>s</i>	fin	<i>s</i>
cat	<i>s</i>	gun	<i>s</i>	mat	<i>s</i>	tart	<i>s</i>
pan	<i>s</i>	hat	<i>s</i>	nail	<i>s</i>	vault	<i>s</i>
dart	<i>s</i>	inn	<i>s</i>	pit	<i>s</i>	whip	<i>s</i>
part	<i>s</i>	jolt	<i>s</i>	quill	<i>s</i>	yawl	<i>s</i>

As do also these ending with a vowel.

<i>S.</i>	<i>P.</i>	<i>S.</i>	<i>P.</i>	<i>S.</i>	<i>P.</i>	<i>S.</i>	<i>P.</i>
babe	<i>s</i>	hare	<i>s</i>	pope	<i>s</i>	tune	<i>s</i>
chime	<i>s</i>	joke	<i>s</i>	quire	<i>s</i>	tube	<i>s</i>
dove	<i>s</i>	mode	<i>s</i>	rope	<i>s</i>	vine	<i>s</i>
eye	<i>s</i>	note	<i>s</i>	fore	<i>s</i>	wire	<i>s</i>
game	<i>s</i>	ode	<i>s</i>	stone	<i>s</i>	mute	<i>s</i>

But

But these following, and all words whose Singular ends with *ce*, *ge*, *se*, or *ze*, make two syllables in the Plural Number.

S.	P.	S.	P.	S.	P.	S.	P.
ace	s	prince	s	sage	s	nurse	s
face	s	quince	s	stage	s	purse	s
grace	s	fence	s	rage	s	maze	s
lace	s	voice	s	horse	s	blaze	s
place	s	age	s	nose	s	prize	s
lance	s	page	s	rose	s	fize	s

Note, These and all words ending with *ch*, *tch*, *sh*, *ss*, or *x*, are made Plural by adding *es* to the Singular.

S.	P.	S.	P.	S.	P.
arch	} es	notch	} es	glass	} es
march		crutch		mess	
leach		ash		miss	
rich		lash		loss	
coach		dish		ax	
church		fish		tax	
catch		with		sex	
hatch		rush		box	
vetch		lass		fox	

Also these Greek appellations, whose Singular ends in *is*, change *is* into *es* in the Plural.

S.	P.	S.	P.	S.	P.
axis	} es	basis	} es	emphasis	} es
praxis		crisis		hypothesis	
syntaxis		dierisis		metamorphosis	
antithesis		ellipsis		parenthesis	

These following make their Plural by changing *f* and *fe* into *ves*.

S.	P.	S.	P.	S.	P.
calf	} ves	leaf	} ves	thief	} ves
wife		felf		life	
shelf		knife		loaf	
half		sheaf		wolf	

K 2

Except

Except these ending in *f* and *ff*, which again are regular.

S.	P.	S.	P.	S.	P.
chief	<i>s</i>	wharf	<i>s</i>	muff	<i>s</i>
grief	<i>s</i>	strife	<i>s</i>	puff	<i>s</i>
hoof	<i>s</i>	mischief	<i>s</i>	huff	<i>s</i>
roof	<i>s</i>	handkerchief	<i>s</i>	snuff	<i>s</i>
proof	<i>s</i>	staff	<i>s</i>	stuff	<i>s</i>
reproof	<i>s</i>	cliff	<i>s</i>	ruff	<i>s</i>
scarf	<i>s</i>	skiff	<i>s</i>	cuff	<i>s</i>
dwarf	<i>s</i>	scoff	<i>s</i>	rebuff	<i>s</i>

Table of Irregular Numbers.

S.	P.	S.	P.
die	dice	ox	oxen
goose	geese	child	children
penny	pence	louse	lice
woman	women	tooth	teeth
mouse	mice	man	men
foot	feet	footman	footmen, &c.

Also,

S.	P.	S.	P.	S.	P.
brother	{ brothers or brethren }	fow	{ fows or swine }	cow	{ cows or kine }

Note, *Swine* is a contraction of *sowin*, and *kine* of *cowin*, but this last Plural is now grown obsolete.

The following Nouns have no Singular Number.

alps	breeches	ides	molosses
ashes	entrails	jumps	manes
alms	glands	kalends	news
annals	glanders	lungs	nones
bowels	gallows	lees	scissars
bellows	goods	mews	sheers
			snuffers

snuffers	stays	tongs	wages
shambles	fuds	tares	vails

The following have no Plural.

furniture	*barley	glue	birdlime
earth	darnel	coomb	parsley
ivory	chaff	pitch	fennel
mire	bran	rosin	marjoram
mud	meal	wax	rosemary
mos	flour	lard	rue
hunger	*brandy	brimstone	sotthernwood
peace	*wine	bitumen	mos
plenty	*rum	fat	clover
truce	beer	sulphur	endiff
wealth	*ale	honey	madder
gold	choler	dirt	cochineal
silver	blood	*sugar	mace
*copper	*snuff	*oil	cinnamon
*brass	saliva	milk	pepper
tin	urine	butter	ginger
pewter	vinegar	bread	spikenard
lead	*amber	clay	favory
steel	greese	grass	hellebore
iron	marrow	fern	hemlock
*wheat	tar	sage	wolfwort
rye	dung	mint	thyme

Those marked thus * sometimes take the Plural by the prevalence of custom among trades folks.

Also virtues, vices, and such qualities, have no Plural.

justice	prudence	pride	malice
hope	wisdom	modesty	envy
fortitude	temperance	sloth	contempt
charity	probity	courage	faith, &c.

The following are of both numbers.

sheep	horse
swine	deer

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1 One	18 Eighteen
2 Two	19 Nineteen
3 Three	20 Twenty
4 Four	21 Twenty-one, &c.
5 Five	30 Thirty
6 Six	40 Forty
7 Seven	50 Fifty
8 Eight	60 Sixty
9 Nine	70 Seventy
10 Ten	80 Eighty
11 Eleven	90 Ninety
12 Twelve	100 A hundred
13 Thirteen	1000 A thousand
14 Fourteen	1000000 A million, <i>i. e.</i>
15 Fifteen	ten hundred
16 Sixteen	thousand, or
17 Seventeen	a myriad.

Note, The compound numbers after twenty have sometimes the small number before the larger in pronunciation, as, *one and twenty, two and twenty, for twenty-one, twenty-two, &c.* but not in figuring, for that must always be 21, 22, 31, 32, otherwise it would breed great confusion.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1 st First	12 th Twelfth
2 ^d Second	13 th Thirteenth
3 ^d Third	14 th Fourteenth
4 th Fourth	15 th Fifteenth
5 th Fifth	16 th Sixteenth
6 th Sixth	17 th Seventeenth
7 th Seventh	18 th Eighteenth
8 th Eighth	19 th Nineteenth
9 th Ninth	20 th Twentieth
10 th Tenth	21 st Twenty-first
11 th Eleventh	22 ^d Twenty-second, &c.
	30 th

30th Thirtieth
40th Fortieth
50th Fiftieth
60th Sixtieth
70th Seventieth

80th Eightieth
90th Ninetieth
100th Hundredth
101st Hundred and first
1000th A thousandth

Note, The compound Numbers after twentieth have always the large number before the smaller, as, the *twenty first*, the *twenty-second*, not the *first and twentieth*, which would be nonsense: but they may be expressed thus, *the one and twentieth*, *the two and twentieth*, where the last only ends as an Ordinal

COLLECTIVE NUMBERS.

army
association
assembly
cattle
company
convocation
corporation
community
committee

host
fraternity
mob
mankind
multitude
nation
people
society
synod

DISTRIBUTIVE NUMBERS.

2 { both twins
a pair a brace
10 Half a score
12 A dozen
20 A score
30 A score and a half
40 Two score
50 Two score and ten
60 Three score
70 Three score and ten

80 Four score
90 Four score and ten
100 Five score
110 Five score and a half
120 Six score
140 Seven score
160 Eight score
180 Nine score
200 Ten score

Of C A S E.

CASE is the termination or ending of nouns in their declensions; the Latins have fix Cases, viz. the *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*; the declining a noun amongst them was the changing its ending, which they did in order to shew the relation or respect that things have one to another, as *Equus Petri*, the horse of Peter, *dedit Petro*, he gave to Peter, where *i* in *Petri* answers to our *of*, and *o* in *Petro* answers to our *to*.

But the English nouns ending all one way, they properly speaking have but one Case, called the Genitive, which is made by putting *s* or *es*, if the noun requires it, to the singular or plural number, and which is always set before the substantive it is joined to, as *the Master's book*, or *the book of the Master*, *the Church's peace*, i. e. *the peace of the Church*; to supply which deficiency of Cases, we are obliged to express the respect or relation of things to one another, by the help of certain words called *prepositions*, viz. *of, to, from, with, &c.* when two *ss*'s meet together in the Genitive Case plural, we usually cut off the first *s*, thus, *the Warrior's arms*, instead of *the Warriors's arms*, but when the singular number ends in *s*, both *ss*'s are to be written in the Genitive Case, as *St. James's Park*, however, it is not always necessary to do so, for when it sounds better without *s*, the first *s* may be left out, as, *for Righteousness's sake*.

If three substantives come together, the Genitive Case is then made by adding *s* to the second substantive, as *the King of England's Crown*, and the reason is, because *the King of England's* is reckoned but as one substantive; but great care should be taken not to make two Genitive Cases, as in *the parish of St. James*, not *of St. James's*.

Note, Although the English nouns have properly no different Terminations, and consequently no Cases, yet for distinction's sake, I shall here make use of them, in
order

order to shew their variations by the prepositions, as the French and other Languages do by articles.

The six Cases

The Signs and Nature of the Cases.

Nominative { Names the thing, and comes before the verb, as *the man*.

Genitive { Of or 's, shews to whom a thing belongs, and from whom it proceeds, as *the man's*, or *of the man*.

Dative { To, is the giving Case, shewing the Place or Person, and answers to *whom* or to *which*, as, *to the man*, *to the house*.

Accusative { Follows the verb, and answers to *whom* or *what*, as, *the man*.

Vocative { O, betokens calling, admiring, or saluting, as, *o man*.

Ablative { From or *with*, denotes the Place or Person from or with whom the thing is, as, *from the man*.

Note, The above Cases are not capable of any vocative, unless we say *o* is common to them all, as, *o man*, *o father*, *o mother*; and therefore I have put in the word *Caret*, in conformity to the Latin, which signifies that this Case is wanting.

Of G E N D E R.

GENDER is the distinction of Sex, either natural or given, and is divided into *Masculine* and *Feminine*, i. e. *Male* and *Female*.

The English distinguish the Sex these four ways, viz.

First, By two different words, as, *boy* for the *male*, and *girl* for the *female*.

Second, By putting an adjective to the word, when there are not two different words to express both Sexes, as, *a male child*, *a female child*, *a he-goat*, *a she-goat*, &c.

Third,

Third, By adding another substantive to the word, as, *a man servant, a cock sparrow*, to express the *male*; *a maid servant, a hen sparrow*, for the *female*.

Fourth, In some words, the *female* is distinguished from the *male* by ending in *ess*, as *Countess* is the female of *Count*, and *Shepherdess* of *Shepherd*, &c. as may be seen in the following tables.

But the words generally made use of to express a thing that is *male* or *female* are these, speaking of *male* we say *he*, and of *female*, *she*; but when we speak of that which is of neither sex, or of which we are yet ignorant, we say *it*.

TABLE I. Of REGULAR GENDERS, *that form the Feminine by adding ess.*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
author	} <i>ess</i>	Jew	} <i>ess</i>	poet	} <i>ess</i>
baron		lion		prophet	
count		patron		shepherd	
deacon		peer		sultan	
god		prince		viscount	
heir		priest		tutor	
elector		prior		traitor	

Also these following, which vary a little:

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
abbot	abbess	inchanter	inchantress
adulterer	adulteress	marquis	marchioness
actor	actress	protector	protectress
ambassador	ambassadress	master	mistress
benefactor	benefactress	forcerer	forcerefs
duke	dutcheffs	tyger	tygreffs
doctor	doctress	songster	songstrefs
emperor	emprefs	<i>Also these in ix.</i>	
fautor	fautrefs		
governor	governefs		
hunter	huntrefs		
seamster	seamstrefs	administrator	administratrix
		autocrator	autocratrix
		executor	executrix
		procurator	procuratrix

TABLE II.

TABLE II. *Of* IRREGULAR GENDERS.

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>
boy	girl	husband	wife
buck	doe	king	queen
bull	cow	lord	lady
boar	fow	lad	lafs
bullock	heifer	man	woman
brother	fifter	master	dame
bachelor	virgin	master	miss
bridegroom	bride-maid	milter	spawner
bully	scold	nephew	niece
cock	hen	ram	ewe
champion	amazon	fon	daughter
dog	bitch	floven	flut
drake	duck	ftag	hind
drone	bee	fteward	matron
fellow	wench	uncle	aunt
father	mother	widower	widow
friar	nun	wizard	witch
gander	goofe	whoremonger	whore
horfe	mare	whoremaster	ftumpet

Alfo thefe Compounds following.

<i>Mafc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
he-afs	fhe-afs
he-goat	fhe-goat
man child	woman child
man-fervant	maid-fervant
man cook	woman cook
work-man	work-woman
horfe-man	horfe-woman
cock-fparrow	hen-fparrow
pea-cock	pea-hen

Note, The Sexes affigned by custom to things inanimate are thefe and a few others:

Sun for the mafculine, and thefe following for the feminine, viz. *boat, city, church, earth, fiddle, gun, moon, nature, foul, fhip, virtue, &c.*

TABLE III.

TABLE III. *The following Nouns are of the Common Gender, or of both Sexes.*

<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>
ally	dealer	orphan	spouse
bastard	examiner	observator	sinner
blackmoor	enemy	prisoner	tenant
cousin	friend	parent	thief
convict	fool	player	teacher
companion	flatterer	patient	twin
confident	foundling	penitent	trustee
complainant	guardian	plaintiff	witness
comedian	gamester	pupil	writer
dwarf	liar	regent	<i>Also names of</i>
debtor	learner	reader	<i>trades.</i>
defendant	majesty	rival	haberdasher
delinquent	minor	rider	poulterer
director	murderer	scholar	fruiterer, &c.

Of ARTICLES.

ARTICLE is a word set before a substantive for the more clear and particular expressing the same, serving to fix the sense or signification of nouns, and apply them to some particular thing.

It comes from the Latin word *articulus*, a little joint, it having, in some degree, the same use in a sentence, as a joint has in the body.

The Latins, for want of it, are obliged to confound, and imply in the same terms, very different ideas, and to leave the reader or hearer the care of distinguishing, at the risk of often mistaking them.

There are two articles, *a* the *indefinite* or *general*, and *the* the *definite* or *limited* article; but I have chosen the last mentioned terms, as being nearer to the English.

The *general article* is used in a more large and extensive sense, as if we say, *it is* a happiness to be *a* king, this expression is not here determined, for it may be king of England, Spain, or any other place.

The

The *limited Article* is used in a more restrained sense, as if in the above example you join *the* to the word *king*, it then fixes and determines of what place you mean it is a happiness to be a king, and cannot be understood but of the king of a particular place or people mentioned just before.

These Articles answer to *un* and *le* of the *French*, and to *ein* and *der* of the *Germans*.

The *English* Articles are but few, but they are of very frequent use, and such as will presently discover any stranger in the world from a natural *Englishman*.

Of Declension of Nouns.

DECLENSION, in the modern Languages, is the variation of a Noun by Cases, and in *English*, by adding these Prepositions, *of*, *to*, *from*, *in*, *with*, *by*, *through*, &c.

The General Article A is thus declined.

Singular.	Nominative		<i>a</i>	Plural.	Nom.		<i>some</i>
	Genitive	<i>of</i>	<i>a</i>		Gen.	<i>of</i>	<i>some</i>
	Dative	<i>to</i>	<i>a</i>		Dat.	<i>to</i>	<i>some</i>
	Accusative		<i>a</i>		Acc.		<i>some</i>
	Vocative	<i>caret</i>			Voc.	<i>caret</i>	
	Ablative	<i>from</i> , &c.	<i>a</i>		Abl.	<i>from</i> , &c.	<i>some</i>

Note, This Article *a* has no Plural number, unless we borrow another word to express it.

Also observe, that as in *Latin* the Declension of a Noun is known by the variation of its ending, so in *English* it may be distinguished (not by its termination, but) by the variation of sound occasioned by a proper application of the general article *a* or *an*. Thus we may reckon five Declensions of Nouns in *English*, as in *Latin*, viz.

L

When

When the Article comes

1st	Before a Consonant	-	<i>a book</i>
2d	Before a Vowel	- -	<i>an ear</i>
3d	Before <i>h</i> aspirated	- -	<i>a hat</i>
4th	Before <i>h</i> mute	- -	<i>an hour</i>
5th	Before <i>u</i> liquid	- -	<i>a unite</i>

FIRST DECLENSION,

By the GENERAL ARTICLE *a*,

Of regular Nouns, beginning with a Consonant.

		<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	<i>a</i>	Book	{	Nom.	Books
Gen.	<i>of a</i>			Gen.	<i>of</i> Books
Dat.	<i>to a</i>			Dat.	<i>to</i> Books
Acc.	<i>a</i>			Acc.	Books
Voc.	caret			Voc.	caret
Abl	<i>from a</i>			Abl.	<i>from</i> Books

In like manner are declined these following, and numerous others.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>a</i>	bat	bats	{	beggar	beggars
	bed	beds		border	borders
	rib	ribs		bottle	bottles
	fob	fobs		bolster	bolsters
	tub	tubs		faggot	faggots

These following and many others change *ys* of the Plural into *ies*, though they will do both ways; but this last is the best, as being more lineal.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>a</i>	belfry	belfries
	magpy	magpies
	mulberry	mulberries

SECOND

SECOND DECLENSION,

By *n* joined to the General Article *a*,
Of Regular Nouns of one and two Syllables, be-
ginning with a Consonant.

<i>Sing.</i>					<i>Plur.</i>				
Nom.		<i>an</i>	}	Ear	Nom.			}	Ears
Gen.	<i>of</i>	<i>an</i>			Gen.	<i>of</i>			Ears
Dat.	<i>to</i>	<i>an</i>			Dat.	<i>to</i>			Ears
Acc.		<i>an</i>			Acc.				Ears
Voc.	<i>caret</i>				Voc.	<i>caret</i>			
Abl.	<i>from</i>	<i>an</i>			Abl.	<i>from</i>			Ears

In like manner are declined these following, and
numerous others.

<i>S.</i>		<i>P.</i>		<i>S.</i>		<i>P.</i>	
an	arm	arms	}	an	ape	apes	}
	art	arts			eye	eyes	
	earl	earls			ode	odes	
	eel	eels			apron	aprons	
	oar	oars			oister	oisters	

The following, and many others also, change *ys* of
the Plural into *ies*.

an	army	armies
	artery	arteries
	enemy	enemies

THIRD DECLENSION,

By the GENERAL ARTICLE *a*,
Of Regular Nouns of one and two Syllables, be-
ginning with *h* aspirated.

<i>Sing.</i>					<i>Plur.</i>				
Nom.		<i>a</i>	}	Hat	Nom.			}	Hats
Gen.	<i>of</i>	<i>a</i>			Gen.	<i>of</i>			Hats
Dat.	<i>to</i>	<i>a</i>			Dat.	<i>to</i>			Hats
Acc.		<i>a</i>			Acc.				Hats
Voc.	<i>caret</i>				Voc.	<i>caret</i>			
Abl.	<i>from</i>	<i>a</i>			Abl.	<i>from</i>			Hats

In like manner are declin'd these following ;

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
a {	hand	hands	a {	harlot	harlots
	hen	hens		hamper	hampers
	hill	hills		hanger	hangers
	hound	hounds		hermit	hermits

FOURTH DECLENSION,

By *n* joined to the General Article *a*,
Of Regular Nouns of one and two Syllables, beginning with *b* mute.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	<i>an</i>	Hours
Gen.	<i>of an</i>	<i>of</i> Hours
Dat.	<i>to an</i>	<i>to</i> Hours
Acc.	<i>an</i>	Hours
Voc.	caret	caret
Abl.	<i>from an</i>	<i>from</i> Hours

In like manner are declined these following :

<i>S.</i>	<i>P.</i>	<i>S.</i>	<i>P.</i>
<i>an</i> heir	heirs.	<i>an</i> honour	honours.

FIFTH DECLENSION,

Of Regular Nouns of two or more Syllables, beginning with *u* liquid.

Note, The following, tho' beginning with a vowel, having a Sound like a consonant, is declined with the General Article *a*.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	<i>a</i>	Unites
Gen.	<i>a</i>	<i>of</i> Unites
Dat.	<i>to a</i>	<i>to</i> Unites
Acc.	<i>a</i>	Unites
Voc.	caret	caret
Abl.	<i>from a</i>	<i>from</i> Unites

In

In like manner are declined these Nouns following,

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
a {	Unison	Unisons
	Unicorn	Unicorns
	Uniform	Uniforms
	Ufurer	Ufurers
	Univerfity	Univerfitys or ies

Note, The aforegoing, and all Nouns, both regular and irregular, become limited by the Article *the*, which may be feen as follows.

Declenfion of Regular Nouns of one Syllable in the Plural, beginning either with a Vowel or Confonant, which alfo diftinctly fhews the Declenfion of the limited Article the.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	<i>the</i>	Grove	Nom. <i>the</i>
Gen.	<i>of the</i>		Gen. <i>of the</i>
Dat.	<i>to the</i>		Dat. <i>to the</i>
Acc.	<i>the</i>		Acc. <i>the</i>
Voc.	caret		Voc. caret
Abl.	<i>from the</i>		Abl. <i>from the</i>
			Groves

In like manner are declined the following regular Nouns :

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
a or the {	file	files
	fhade	fhades
	tile	tiles
	gate	gates
	tree	trees
	note	notes

Note, The limited article never changes its ending, but is the fame both in the Singular and Plural Number.

Declension of Regular Nouns, with the limited Article the, making two Syllables in the Plural.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
Nom.	<i>the</i>	Prince	Nom.	<i>the</i>	Princes
Gen.	<i>of the</i>		Gen.	<i>of the</i>	
Dat.	<i>to the</i>		Dat.	<i>to the</i>	
Acc.	<i>the</i>		Acc.	<i>the</i>	
Voc.	<i>caret</i>		Voc.	<i>caret</i>	
Abl.	<i>from the</i>		Abl.	<i>from the</i>	

In like manner are declined the following regular Nouns.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
march	marches
horse	horses
box	boxes
house	houses
church	churches
rush	rushes

a or the

Declension of Irregular Nouns of one Syllable, (beginning with a Consonant, by the General Article a.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
Nom.	<i>a</i>	Die	Nom.		Dice
Gen.	<i>of a</i>		Gen.	<i>of</i>	Dice
Dat.	<i>to a</i>		Dat.	<i>to</i>	Dice
Acc.	<i>a</i>		Acc.		Dice
Voc.	<i>caret</i>		Voc.	<i>caret</i>	
Abl.	<i>from a</i>		Abl.	<i>from</i>	Dice

Declension of Irregular Nouns (beginning with a Vowel) by the Letter n joined to the general Article a.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
Nom.	<i>an</i>	Ox	Nom.		Oxen
Gen.	<i>of an</i>		Gen.	<i>of</i>	Oxen
Dat.	<i>to an</i>		Dat.	<i>to</i>	Oxen
Acc.	<i>an</i>		Acc.		Oxen
Voc.	<i>caret</i>		Voc.	<i>caret</i>	
Abl.	<i>from an</i>		Abl.	<i>from</i>	Oxen

Note,

Note, The Plural of *house*, which is now *houses*, was formerly *housen*, and is still so called by many people in several counties through England, but is not generally received

Declension of Irregular Nouns (beginning with a Consonant) by the limited Article the.

Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	<i>the</i>	Mouſe	Nom.	<i>the</i>	Mice
Gen.	<i>of the</i>		Gen.	<i>of the</i>	
Dat.	<i>to the</i>		Dat.	<i>to the</i>	
Acc.	<i>the</i>		Acc.	<i>the</i>	
Voc.	caret		Voc.	caret	
Abl.	<i>from the</i>		Abl.	<i>from the</i>	

In like manner are declined theſe irregular Nouns following;

Sing.		Plur.		Sing.		Plur.	
<i>a</i>	} Louſe	<i>the</i>	Lice	<i>a</i>	} Foot	<i>the</i>	Feet
or				or			
<i>the</i>				<i>the</i>			

Declension of Irregular Nouns of one or two Syllables, with the limited Article the.

Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	<i>the</i>	Child	Nom.	<i>the</i>	Children.
Gen.	<i>of the</i>		Gen.	<i>of the</i>	
Dat.	<i>to the</i>		Dat.	<i>to the</i>	
Acc.	<i>the</i>		Acc.	<i>the</i>	
Voc.	caret		Voc.	caret	
Abl.	<i>from the</i>		Abl.	<i>from the</i>	

In like Manner are declined theſe Irregular Nouns following;

Sing.		Plur.	
<i>a</i>	} Brother,	<i>the</i>	Brothers, <i>in a natural ſenſe.</i>
or			or
<i>the</i>			Brethren, <i>in a civil ſenſe.</i>
<i>a</i> or	} Footman	<i>the</i>	Footmen
<i>the</i>			
	Horſeman		Horſemen
} & all ſuch compounds			
Declenſion			

Declension of PROPER NAMES.

Proper Names take no article, because they individually and of themselves distinguish the Persons and Things spoken of.

		Sing.	
Nom.	<i>of</i> <i>to</i> <i>o</i> <i>from</i>	Peter	<i>Note, There is no Plural Number.</i>
Gen.			
Dat.			
Acc.			
Voc.			
Abl.			

In like manner are declined the Proper Names of Women, Cities, Countries, Rivers, &c.

Note, There is no difference of articles, in the Declension of Nouns as to Gender, whether Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter; for we say alike:

<i>a</i>	}	Father	}	<i>a</i>	}	Horse	}	&c.
<i>or</i>		<i>or</i>		<i>or</i>		<i>or</i>		
<i>the</i>		Mother		<i>the</i>		Table		

Of the COMPARISON *of* ADJECTIVES.

COMPARISON is the setting of two or more things together in the mind, in order to consider their likeness or unlikeness, their agreement or disagreement, as also their extent, time and other circumstances, whereby we perceive that one thing is *such*, another thing *more such*, and another *most such*; where may be observed, that in order to make this Comparison between things, we make three gradual steps, which are called three Degrees, viz. *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*, though, by the way, the *Positive*, which is a mere adjective, cannot properly be called a degree, because there is no Comparison made, it being used to denote or signify a thing to be simply *such*, without relation or respect to any other thing. The

Compa-

Comparative is used to denote a thing to be more such than another, as, *softer*, or *more soft wool*, a *fairer*, or *more fair woman*, and in this degree, the Comparison begins to be made, it having relation to other wool that is not *so soft*, or to some other woman that is not *so fair*; its natural formation is by putting *er* to the Positive, as, *soft*, *softer*, *fair*, *fairer*; but if the Positive ends in *e*, then you need add only *r* to make the Comparative, as, *wise*, *wiser*, &c.

The Comparative Degree is also formed by adding these words, *more* or *less* to the Positive, as, *more soft*, or *less soft*, *more learned*, or *less learned*.

The Superlative Degree is formed by putting *est* to the Positive, as, *soft*, *softest*, *fair*, *fairest*; but if the Positive ends in *e*, you need only add *st* to make the Superlative, as, *wise*, *wisest*.

The Superlative Degree is also made by adding the word *most* or *least* to the Positive, as, *most fair*, or *least fair*, *most learned*, or *least learned*.

There are some adjectives which are irregular, that is, are not compared according to the foregoing rules, as, *good*, *better*, *best*, &c. which, if regular, would be *good*, *gooder*, *goodest*. And others there are which do not form any Comparison, as, *one*, *each*, *every*, *all*, &c.

By these last we may know what adjectives may be compared and what not, for those adjectives, of which we cannot say, one is *such*, another is *more such*, and another *most such*, cannot form Comparison, for we cannot say, a thing is *more all*, *most all*, nor *more each*, *most each*, or *more one*, *most one*, &c.

Here follow two tables of Nouns Adjective, shewing their three regular degrees of Comparison at one view.

TABLE I. Of REGULAR COMPARISONS.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparat.</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bright	brighter	brightest
broad	broad	broadest
dear	dearer	dearest
fair	fairer	fairest
		fine

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparat.</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
fine	finer	finest
hard	harder	hardest
high	higher	highest
keen	keener	keenest
light	lighter	lightest
long	longer	longest
loud	louder	loudest
meek	meeker	meekest
neat	neater	neatest
proud	prouder	proudest
ripe	riper	ripest
strong	stronger	strongest
sweet	sweeter	sweetest
tight	tighter	tightest
weak	weaker	weakest
wise	wiser	wisest

TABLE II. *Of* REGULAR COMPARISONS.

<i>Positive</i>		<i>Comparative</i>		<i>Superlative</i>
humble	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	humble	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	humble
obedient	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	obedient	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	obedient
dutiful	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	dutiful	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	dutiful
beloved	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	beloved	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	beloved
loving	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	loving	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	loving
reasonable	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	reasonable	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	reasonable
				childish

Positive

Comparat.

Superlat.

childish	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	childish	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	childish
musical	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	musical	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	musical
positive	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	positive	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	positive
complaisant	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	complaisant	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	complaisant
resolute	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	resolute	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	resolute
courageous	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	courageous	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	courageous
temperate	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	temperate	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	temperate
burthen ^s ome	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	burthen ^s ome	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	burthen ^s ome
rigid	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	rigid	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	rigid
regular	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	regular	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	regular
visible	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	visible	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	visible
orderly	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	orderly	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	orderly
harmless	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{more} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{less} \end{array} \right\}$	harmless	$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{most} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{least} \end{array} \right\}$	harmless

Note,

Note, These last degrees of Comparison will not bear to be made any other way, by reason of the quantity of syllables the Positive is composed of, for it would be very stiff and ungraceful to say *obedienter* and *obedientest*, as in these words, *John is obedient*, but *James is obedienter*, and *Peter the obedientest*.

But wherever the Positive is a monosyllable, as in the first Table, the degrees of Comparison will bear both ways, as *bright*, *more bright*, *most bright*.

Observe that the words *more* and *most* exalts the quality of the Positive to the highest degree, whilst *less* and *least* reduces it to the lowest; but great care should be taken not to put the words *more* and *most* after the first sort of Comparisons, as, *more harder*, *more hardest*, or *most harder*, *most hardest*; which is an impropriety, many, who call themselves Englishmen, are too apt to fall into, although nothing can betray a greater degree of ignorance

From the above common and general rules of Comparison are excepted these irregulars that follow, viz.

TABLE of IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comparat.</i>	<i>Superlat.</i>
good	better	best
bad	worse	worst
much	more	most
little	less	least

The following Superlatives are sometimes formed by the addition of the adverb *very* to the Positive, and many others of the like sort.

Superlat.

hardest	} or {	very hard	} <i>Note</i> , however, that this is not so much a degree of Comparison as of Excess,
sweetest		very sweet	
most		very much	
least		very little	

Note, As to the word *lesser*, though it be not a regular Comparison, yet it may be used in the following and like instances, as in astronomy, we say, the *Lesser Circle*.

Declen-

Declension of Nouns Adjective joined to Substantives, which shew the Adjective to be of both Genders, and of the Singular Number, though joined to Substantives of the Plural.

S.			P.		
Nom.	<i>a good</i>	Boy or Girl	Nom.	<i>good</i>	Boys or Girls
Gen.	<i>of a good</i>		Gen.	<i>of good</i>	
Dat.	<i>to a good</i>		Dat.	<i>to good</i>	
Acc.	<i>a good</i>		Acc.	<i>good</i>	
Voc.	<i>caret</i>		Voc.	<i>caret</i>	
Abl.	<i>from a good</i>		Abl.	<i>from good</i>	

The same of the Neuter, as, *good* or *bad Table* or *Tables*.

In like manner are declined these following;

<i>an innocent</i>	{	Sing. Boy	}	{	<i>a or the fruitful</i>	{	Sing. Field
		or Girl					or Lady
<i>a or the happy</i>	{	Man	}	{	<i>a or the ravenous</i>	{	Wolf
		or Woman					or Vulture

Of different Modes of Comparison.

Note, We make frequent use of these words, *than*, *like*, *more*, and sometimes of the particle *to*, in these sort of Comparisons;

To express things *impossible*.

whiter	{	than	{	snaw
blacker				pitch
sweeter				honey
sourer				vinegar
bitterer				gall
fiercer				tygers
tamer				sheep
harder				stone
softer				down
bolder				lions
fearfuller				hares
M				stronger

stronger	}	than	}	Hercules
weaker				water
naftier				fwine
clearer				chryftal
brighter				the fun
darker				night
dearer				gold
cheaper				dirt
fwifter				time
flower				a fnail
colder				ice
hotter				fire
rougher				a file
fmoother				glafs
higher				the clouds
deeper				the fea
lighter				a feather
heavier				lead
louder				thunder

Like { Sticking a dart in the Sky.
Drawing Water in a Sieve.
Flying without Wings.
Stopping a Cascade with one's Thumb.

Similar Comparisons.

Like { The Dog in the Manger.
The Dog and the Shadow.
Bees in a Hive.
Ants on a Mole-hill.

On the Interrogative Comparison MORE.

What could an Idiot or Fool do *more* simple?
What could one do *more* deprived of his Senses?
What could one do *more*, who is in want both of Coun-
cil and Experience?
What could one do *more* that had been among Savages?
What could a Cicero, a Virgil, or a Socrates, do *more*?
What could the greatest Student in the world do *more*?
What could an Achilles, or even an Alexander do *more*?
Is

Is there a man *more* happy? *more* miserable? from whence can there come *more* advantages? *more* favours? *more* riches? *more* fortune? *more* good? *more* health? *more* honour? &c.

Labour is inferior *to* Learning, and Wealth *to* Knowledge.

Wisdom is superior *to* Strength, and God is superior *to* all.

Of DIMINUTIVE NOUNS.

The English, as well as the Italians and Spaniards, have this peculiarity in their Language, that sometimes by adding a syllable to their Nouns it diminishes the signification.

<i>Subst.</i>		<i>Dimin.</i>	<i>Explanation.</i>
lamb	<i>forms</i>	lambkin	a little lamb
hill		hillock	a little rising hill
cock		cockeril	a little or young cock
hen		pullet	a little or young hen
eagle		eaglet	a young eagle
goose		gosling	a little goose
poke		pocket	a little bag or poke
part		particle	a small part or portion
lance		lancet	a small lance

So likewise these words may be said to be Diminutives.

<i>Subst.</i>	<i>Dimin.</i>	<i>Subst.</i>	<i>Dimin.</i>
play	dally	sleep	slumber
taste	smack	stumble	trip
bite	nibble	doubt	scruple
horse	nag	house	cottage
bed	pallet	gate	door
door	wicket	branch	sprig
image	puppet	sword	dagger
gun	{ pistol, or	dog	puppy
	{ piece	crown	coronet
hare	leveret	man	child
cat	kitten	baron	baronet
river	rivulet	meeting	conventicle

And most words ending in *ish*.

poorish	peevish	bookish	brackish
waspish	rakish	softish	coldish
knavish	brutish	finish	sweetish
foolish	fottish	thievish	waterish
childish	whorish	hardish	deafish

And all Sorts of Colours.

whitish	brownish	greyish	darkish
blackish	redish	yellowish	paleish
blueish	greenish	lightish	brightish

Diminutives of Kindness, ending in y or ey.

<i>Mens Names.</i>	<i>Dimin.</i>	<i>Wom. Names.</i>	<i>Dimin.</i>
Thomas	Tommy	Anne	Nanney
John	{ Johnny or Jacky		{ or Nancy
Charles	Charley	Mary	Molly
William	Billy		{ or Polly
Edward	Neddy	Margaret	Peggy
Robert	Bobby	Frances	Fanny
Francis	Franky	Sarah	Sally
Richard	Dicky	Edith	Eddy
Benjamin	Benny	Katherine	Katy
James	Jemmy	Jane	Jenny
Henry	Harry	Susan	Sukey
Jeremiah	Jerry	Elizabeth	Betty
George	Georgy	Julia	Juley
Moses	Mosey	Abigail	Abby
Lewis	Lewy	Barbara	Babbey
Lawrence	Larry	Deborah	Debby
Nicholas	Nicky	Winifred	Winny
Samuel	Sammy	Judith	Judy
Joseph	Joey	Martha	Matty
Josiah	Jossey	Lydia	Liddy
Joshua	Joshy	Phillis	Philly
David	Davy	Patience	Patty
Leonard	Lenny	Eleanor	Nelly
Matthew	Matty	Dorothy	Dolly
Solomon	Solly	Lucinda	Lucy
Timothy	Timmy		

Dimi-

Diminution of mocking or insulting.

dowdy	oaf	noodle	nifey
clumsey	booby	zaney	natural
wifeacre	teddy	looby	fapscul
loggerhead	fribble	lubber	numpskul

There are no *Augmentatives* in *English*, unless we add the word *great*, as, *great booby*, *great noodle*, *great lubber*, &c. which (as they are mere aggravating words of reproach) are happily so few and inconsiderable in our language, as not to deserve further notice.

Derivation and Formation of Substantives.

The following Trades are derived from their primitive Substantive, by the Addition of some Letter, Syllable, or Word.

Example in r, er, and ster.

angler	glover	pewterer
archer	hosier	potter
armourer	hostler	player
brewer	hunter	piper
barber	hatter	recorder
baker	hawker	retailer
carver	harper	reaper
caterer	joiner	falter
carter	jailer	stationer
clicker	jeweller	saddler
caulker	lawyer	tumbler
confectioner	limner	turner
dyer	mercier	trumpeter
drover	maltster	throwster
distiller	mariner	tanner
farmer	nailer	thatcher
fowler	pewterer	vintner
forrester	printer	victualler
fiddler	presser	weaver
gardener	plasterer	warder
gambler	painter	writer

The following Trades are compounded of two Substantives :

cork	}	cutter	leather	}	dresser
corn			hemp		
hair			flax		
stone			vine		
diamond					
fine	}	drawer	linnen	}	draper
pattern			woollen		
wire					
barge	}	master	cow	}	keeper
bridge			door		
dancing			game		
fencing			house		
music			inn		
post			book	}	seller
posture			leather		
pay			music		
quarter			print		
school					
writing			cheese	}	monger
			felt		
			fish		
			iron		
colour	}	man	wood	}	builder
dust			whore		
excise					
foot			boat	}	wright
journey			castle		
meal			house		
horse			lighter		
tides			organ		
land			ship		
plow					
sea			mill	}	wright
spear			cart		
swords			ship		
tin			wheel		
water					
					anchor

anchor	} smith	file	} maker
black		fan	
copper		fiddle	
gold		frame	
gun		flute	
silver		harness	
white		hay	
brick	} maker	lute	
brush		lace	
basket		match	
breeches		mantua	
bellows		mast	
bit		net	
card		needle	
coach		oar	
collar		pin	
comb		paper	
coffin		pipe	
chair		patten	
cage		reel	
clock		rope	
clog		shovel	
cabinet		shoe	
chocolate		fail	
carpet		stay	
drum		trunk	
		whip	

These Substances following are formed by the Addition of dom, which denotes their Place, Condition, and Quality, viz.

kingdom	wisdom	thraldom
popedom	freedom	whoredom
dukedom		

These are formed by the Addition of ship, which denotes both their Character and Quality.

kingship	lordship	fellowship
mastership	apostleship	admiralship
		steward-

stewardship
worship

scholarship
partnership

chancellorship
friendship

These are formed by adding hood, denoting their State or Condition.

fatherhood

childhood

manhood

brotherhood

sisterhood

widowhood

knighthood

priesthood

falsehood

likelihood

liveliness

The Derivation and Formation of Adjectives.

Many Adjectives are formed of the Substantive by the addition of the Syllable *full* or *ish*, to which join the Particle *ly*, and they become Adverbs, all which shew their Quantity or Quality.

Subst.

Adject.

Adverb

art

*artful

artfully

beauty

beautiful

beautifully

bounty

bountiful

bountifully

care

*careful

carefully

cheer

*cheerful

cheerfully

deceit

deceitful

deceitfully

disdain

disdainful

disdainfully

dread

dreadful

dreadfully

delight

delightful

delightfully

distrust

distrustful

distrustfully

faith

*faithful

faithfully

fear

*fearful

fearfully

fruit

*fruitful

fruitfully

forget

forgetful

forgetfully

grace

*graceful

gracefully

hurt

hurtful

hurtfully

heed

heedful

heedfully

joy

*joyful

joyfully

mourn

mournful

mournfully

man

manful

manfully

need

*needful

needfully

pain

painful

painfully

power

<i>Subst.</i>	<i>Adject.</i>	<i>Adverb</i>
power	powerful	powerfully
plenty	plentiful	plentifully
skill	skilful	skilfully
sorrow	sorrowful	sorrowfully
use	*useful	usefully
watch	watchful	watchfully
will	wilful	wilfully
youth	youthful	youthfully
brute	brutish	brutishly
child	childish	childishly
devil	devilish	devilishly
fool	foolish	foolishly
knave	knavish	knavishly
rake	rakish	rakishly
wasp	waspish	waspishly
fot	fottish	fottishly

Note, Those of the above Adjectives marked with a Star, are changed by adding *less*, instead of *ful*, to the Substantive, and then they shew a privation of what the other imports, as, *artless*, *careless*, &c. Though it must be observed, at the same time, that there are great numbers of words which come from Substantives that cannot take *ful*, as,

beardless	fatherless	motherless
blameless	friendless	childless
nameless	numberless	questionless
senseless	endless	godless

Note, Sometimes the termination *some* is added to the Substantives, having much the same sense, as, *ful*, i. e. to increase the signification.

lightsome	lonesome	handsome
delightsome	gamesome	toilsome
burthensome	wholesome	fulsome

Sometimes, only by adding the termination *y*, are formed Adjectives of Plenty or Abundance; as,

dirty	hearty	sandy	windy
earthy	lousy	stony	woody

airy

airy	healthy	muddy	wealthy
bloody	handy	needy	witty
guilty	mighty	watery	worthy

These Nouns following become Adverbs by adding *ly*.

godly	lovely	secretly	partly
orderly	heavenly	badly	totally
goodly	brotherly	scoffingly	homely

To some of which may be added *ness*, as, *lousiness*, *mightiness*, *worthiness*, *dirtiness*, *heartiness*, *handiness*, *godliness*, *loveliness*, &c.

The following Adjectives are formed by adding *able* to the Substantive; and signify Capacity.

answerable	creditable	profitable
blameable	curable	reasonable
changeable	favourable	remarkable
chargeable	marriageable	seasonable
comfortable	pardonable	serviceable

The following are formed by adding *al*, or *cal*.

personal	logical	musical
accidental	comical	allegorical
sacramental	physical	historical

Note, All the above become Adverbs by the addition of *ly*.

There are also Substantives derived from Adjectives and Verbs, which are made by adding *th*, with some small Change.

<i>Adject.</i>	<i>Subst.</i>		<i>Adject.</i>	<i>Subst.</i>
wide	width		deep	depth
broad	breadth		long	length
strong	strength		high	height
true	truth		warm	warmth
dear	dearth		flow	flood
merry	mirth		hail	health
weal	wealth		young	youth

Of

Of this kind are several Words derived from Verbs.

	<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Sub.</i>		<i>Verbs</i>	<i>Sub.</i>
to	die	death	to	grow	growth
	steal	stealth		see	fight
	fly	flight		weigh	weight
	or			think	thought
	flee			join	joint

Note, Words ending in *ment*, *age*, *able*, *sion*, and *tion*, are purely French terminations, and have exactly the same meaning with us as with them.

Of COMPOUND WORDS.

These are nothing else but the name put after the manner or quality, and joined to the following word by a Hyphen, in order to incorporate it, as it were, into one word, and is sometimes done without the hyphen.

<i>with Hyphen.</i>		<i>without</i>
river-fish	self-do	brick wall
sea-fish	self-have	summer apple
land-carriage	home-made	eye witness
water-carriage	home-spun	manslaughter
self-love	wall-flower	freeman
self-murder	horn-book	foreman
self-will	big-belly	exciseman
	wood-house	

Remarks on Nouns or Names of Things we call, Substantives, Adjectives, and also Numeral.

THE word *Substantive* comes from the Latin *Substantia*, *Substance*, because it is the thing itself; and *Adjective* comes from *adjicere*, *to add*, because it is adjoined to a Substantive.

The general article *a* is joined to Substantives of the singular number only.

The

The limited article *the*, to Substantives either singular or plural; but neither of them are ever placed before proper names, except by way of eminence, as, *he is a Cæsar, an Alexander, they are the Cæsars, the Alexanders, of the Age*, i. e. of or belonging to their name, house, or family, or as assimilating their heroic actions.

A Substantive with its Adjective is reckoned as one compound word, (and so are any governing words that depend on it) whence the Substantive and the Adjective, so joined, do often take another Adjective, and sometimes a third, and so on, as, *an old man, a good old man, a very good old man, a very learned judicious sober old man.*

When there are more Adjectives than one joined together, or one Adjective, with other words depending on it, the Adjective is generally set after the Substantive, as, *a General both wise and valiant, a General very wise, a General skilful in political and military affairs.*

When the Genitive Case and another Substantive come together, the Genitive is always put first, as, *John's horse, not horse John's.*

The Adjective is joined to the Substantive without any difference of Number, Case, or Gender, except the pronoun *this*, which makes *these*, and *that* which makes *those* in the plural; and also *whose* and *whom* from the word *who*; and *his* from *he*, *hers* from *her*, *its* from *it*.

The situation or place of the Adjective is immediately before the Substantive, as,

Sing. *a good boy, a good girl, a good thing;*

Plur. *good boys, good girls, good things;*

and this rule is generally certain, unless a Verb comes between the Adjective and its Substantive, as, *happy is the man*, i. e. *the man is happy*, or when some other word depends on the Adjective, as, *a Subject loyal to his Prince.*

Also frequently in Poetry for the more harmonious sounding of the verse, as, *human face divine*, MILTON.

The Substantive is generally the Nominative Case to the Verb, this Substantive or Nominative word, which
the

the Verb relates to, signifying *being, doing, or suffering*, comes before the Verb, as, *I am, Peter loves, the men read, the book is bound, &c.* but this is not always a rule, for in an Interrogation, a Sentence, or where a question is asked, the Substantive is put after the Verb, as, *is John at home?*

If there be any helping Verb, then the Substantive comes after it, as, *does Peter love? will you read?*

If there be two helping Verbs, the Substantive is set after the first of them, as, *could he have done it? might Charles have brought it?* except in an Imperative or commanding sentence, where the Substantive is likewise set after the Verb, as, *turn thou, or turn ye.* Also when the Verb is used by way of yielding or concession, as, *had I (i. e. if I had) known, he should not have done it, were I a bad man, &c.*

When the Adverb *there* is set before the Verb, the Substantive or Nominative word is put after it, as, *there came a man to me, there was the boy in the dirt, there is heat in the sun;* but in these examples, the Adverb *there* does not point out place, but is only an Expletive, which means no more than, that *a man came to me, the boy was in the dirt, and heat is in the sun.*

When the Substantive or Nominative word is more particularly denoted or pointed at, we often set the particle *it* before the Verb, and put the Substantive after it, as, *it was John who spoke last, it was the glass that fell.*

Sometimes the Substantive is also set after the Verb, when none of the foregoing exceptions happen, as, *then followed the General, &c. says I, for I say, says he, for he says, Peter writes, and so do I, i. e. I do write, &c.* Although it be admitted, that in English the Adjective is generally placed before the Substantive, as, *a white horse, a just man, a handsome woman, &c.* yet it may be put after it in the following instances, as, *a place sacred to the Gods, a man strong as Hercules, a woman beautiful as Venus;* and also where another word intervenes, as, *a man grown childish, a woman grown credulous.*

Also observe, when we put the Substantive before the Adjective, as, *there are two hundred soldiers wounded, and fifteen pictures finished*, these expressions shew the recent or present time of the soldiers being wounded and the pictures finished, but if we put the Adjective before the Substantive, making compound words of them, saying, *there are two hundred wounded soldiers, and fifteen finished pictures*, these expressions seem quite vague and undetermined.

An Adjective added for an epithet to a proper name is always put in the Nominative Case, as, *I speak of Alexander the Great, You of William the Conqueror, and He of George the Third*; the same may be observed of names of trade, profession, or quality, which in English is often joined to proper names, as, *I speak of Dr. A, Captain B, Colonel C, Lieutenant D, Prince E, and of F, the nephew of G, the Shoemaker to the Duke of York*.

Our Genitive Case, as has been observed, is known by 's with an Apóstrophé, as, *Newton's Philosophy*, where the particle *of* is understood, and this contraction will be found very useful in translating from other languages with ease and elegance, as for example, in French they say, *voici la maison de l'associé du frère de ma femme!* which literally is, *see here is the house of the partner of the brother of my wife!* all which is extremely uncouth, because the particle *of* is repeated no less than three times in this one sentence, whereas the true manner of rendering it into English should be by a mark of Elision in the Genitive Case, whenever it occurs, as, *here is my wife's brother's partner's house, or here's the house of my wife's brother's partner*. Also observe that, when the Genitive is thus wrote with an Elision, it is a contraction of that Case, not only in the Masculine, but in the Feminine and Neuter Genders, as, *the scholar's book, the woman's beauty, the diamond's lustre, the multitude's folly*, in which is to be understood these Pronouns, viz. *his, her, it, and their*, as, *his book, her beauty, its lustre, their folly*; or in other words, the book of or belonging to *him*, i. e. *the scholar*, the beauty of *her*, i. e. *the woman*, the lustre of *it*, i. e. *the diamond*, and the folly of *them*, i. e. *the multitude*.

Sometimes

Sometimes two Substantives come together, without the particle *of*, in the nature of a Compound, as, *the chamber door, the garret window*, here the Genitive Case is as effectually understood as if there had been an elision, the same meaning *the door of the chamber*, and *the window of or belonging to the garret*.

Note, Most Nouns of one syllable, ending with one consonant, have generally two of the same in the middle, as, *big biggin, flag flaggin, knob knobby, mat matting, star starry*, &c. and also that Adjectives, ending in *d*, *g*, or *t*, double their final consonants in the Comparative and Superlative degrees, as, *red redder reddest, big bigger biggest, fit fitter fittest*; and those ending in *y* in the Positive, change *y* into *ie* in the Comparative and Superlative, as, *pretty prettier prettiest*.

Many Adjectives are not capable of Comparison, as, *middle*, which has only the Superlative *middlemost*; in some words there is no Positive, as, *upper, under, outer, utter, nether*, which make *uppermost, undermost, outermost, uttermost, nethermost*, and in these words, *former* and *latter*, there is neither Positive nor Superlative.

There is often a Comparison made between two Comparatives, by placing the limited article *the* before it, as, *the higher a man is, the humbler he ought to be*.

Sometimes the repetition of the word, with the particle *of* coming between, serves for the Superlative, as, *holy of holies*, i. e. *the holiest*, *God of Gods*, and *King of Kings*, i. e. *the greatest God or King*, &c.

Observe in general, that most Adjectives ending in the following syllables, viz. *ble, ent, ful, ed, id, ing, able, ish, al, ive, ant, ute, ous, rate, some, ar, ly, less*, and *ible*, form the Comparative by adding *more* or *less* to the Positive, and *most* or *least* to make the Superlative, as may be seen in the second table of regular Comparisons, at page 118, to which last is often joined the limited article *the*, as, *the most reasonable, the least visible*, &c.

Note, Many Adjectives may be used substantively, as well in English as in French or any other foreign languages, as, *not many rich, not many mighty, shall be saved; the brave, the bold, and persevering, are favoured*

by fortune; the good, the wise, and virtuous, are all objects of God's clemency, as the mad, the foolish, and incurable, are of his compassion, he makes the sun to shine on the just, and on the unjust. Matt^w. v. 45.

This is so far from being contrary to the genius of the English nation, as a certain French author* has taken the liberty to insinuate, that any one may see it is entirely connatural or consistent with it, the above examples being so many beautiful figures of English speech; and many more that I could produce, as manifest proofs of its propriety and elegance.

NOUNS of NUMBER may be divided into *Cardinal* and *Ordinal*; they are called *Cardinal* because they are the principal or chief of the Numerals, answering to the question *how many*, as, *one, two, three, &c.* from whence are derived the *Ordinals*, as expressing rank and order, and answering to the question *what time or place*, as, *first, second, third, &c.*

The *Cardinal Numbers* are generally in the nature of *Adjectives*, requiring another word to shew their signification, as, *one boy, two boys, three boys, &c.*

These also become *Substantives*, as, *Captains of thousands, of hundreds, of fifties, of tens*, Exod. xviii. 25. particularly the *Cardinal Number one*, which sometimes loses the nature of a Numeral, and supplies the room of a Substantive, as in 2 Cor. xii. 2, 5. *I knew a man, of such a one will I glory*, i. e. *of such a man*; and so of *ones* in the plural, as, Matt. xviii. 6. *whosoever shall offend one of these little ones, &c.*

It often serves as a general article, as, Matt. xii. 27. *then one* (i. e. a certain man) *said unto him*. Also as a partitive answering to the word *other*, as, Phil. i. 16, 17. *the one preach Christ of Contention, the other of Love*, where it is observable, first, that the words *one* and the *other* are plural, and next, that they have the same na-

* Monf. Ch---b---d, in his Grammar of the French Tongue, p. 179.

ture as the word *some*, to which the 16th and 17th verses have relation, as, *some preach Christ even of envy, and some of good will.*

BOTH, Is a Distributive Number, which refers to the plural only, as, *both are well, I can both hear and see whatever passes, both my father and mother told me so.*

Sometimes this word has the Adverb *together* joined with it, as, *if ye will both come, I will give ye both my daughters, but if ye do not come both together, ye shall not have them, and therefore I advise ye to come both together, and it will be the better for ye both.* Also observe, that the Verb may come between these two words, as, *both come together*, which is equally as well understood as if it were, *come both together.*

FEW, Is applied only to Substantives in the plural number, as, *few cherries, few women, &c.* except to Collective Nouns, as, *few people, few cattle, &c.*

The Cardinals also form other Numerals of increase terminating in *ble* or *ple*, as, *double, treble, or triple, quadruple*, and others in *fold*, as, *two-fold, three-fold, four-fold, &c.* to a *hundred-fold.*

The *Ordinals* are also Adjectives or else Adverbs of Order, according as they are joined to other words, or stand alone, as, *first boy, second boy, third boy, &c.* or *firstly, secondly, thirdly, &c.* where we may observe that, in the first example, the numbers *second* and *third* have plural significations, and the noun *boy*, to which it is annexed, is singular.

These *Ordinals* likewise make Numerals from the Latin order of time, as, *triennial*, every three years, *septennial*, every seven years, the *tertian ague* is every third day, the *quartern ague* is every fourth day; a *century* every hundred hundred years.

Sometimes instead of the Ordinal *first*, the word *prime*, from the Latin Ordinal *primus*, is used, as, *the prime cost, i. e. the first charge.*

The Ordinal Numbers, as has been said, are as Adjectives before Substantives, as, *he is the first monarch of the world, he is the second person in the kingdom, she is the third person of the blood royal.* But sometimes they are put after the Substantives, when joined to names, as, *George the Third, Lewis the Fifteenth;* and when we quote a Book or Paragraph, as, in Book the *first*, Chapter the *second*, and Verse the *third*, where we may observe the limited article *the* comes between the Substantive and the Adjective; but in general speaking of these, without quoting them, the Adjective goes before the Substantive according to rule, as, *I have read the first book of your history, &c.*





CHAP. II.

Of PRONOUNS.

PRONOUNS are certain Words used for or in the Place and Stead of Nouns, as the Latin Word *Pronomen* itself imports, and serve to shew or express the Person or Thing before-named, without repeating it over again, as, instead of *my Name*, say *I*, instead of *his Name*, *He*, &c. They are divided thus :

Names *and Nature of the Pronouns.*

Personal { Marks the first, second, and third Persons in both Number, serving to the Use of the Verbs, *I, you, he, she, it, we, ye, they.*

Possessive { Marks Property, and shews Possession, as, *my book, &c.*

Demonstrative { Denotes the Certainty of any Person or Thing, as, *this man or woman, that boy or girl, these men, those men.*

Relative { Shews the Relation a Noun has to what follows, indicating the Subject without repeating it, as, *I saw Mr. A B, who answered me, i. e. A B answered me, this is the Book, which (book) I lent you.*

Interrogative { Asks Questions, as, *who? whose? whom? what? which?*

Indeterminate { Are those which denote and express their Object in a general manner, and are as follow, *same, self, own, some, certain, other, another, any.*

Declension

*Declension of PERSONAL PRONOUNS, called
SUBSTANTIVES.*

Singular.	Nom.	I	Plural.	Nom.	We
	Gen.	<i>of</i> Me		Gen.	<i>of</i> Us
	Dat.	<i>to</i> Me		Dat.	<i>to</i> Us
	Acc.	Me		Acc.	Us
	Voc.	caret		Voc.	caret
	Abl.	<i>from</i> Me		Abl.	<i>from</i> Us

Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	Thou	or You	Nom.	Ye	or You
Gen.	<i>of</i> Thee		Gen.	<i>of</i> Ye	
Dat.	<i>to</i> Thee		Dat.	<i>to</i> Ye	
Acc.	Thee		Acc.	Ye	
Voc.	caret		Voc.	caret	
Abl.	<i>from</i> Thee		Abl.	<i>from</i> Ye	

Masc.			Masc.		
Singular.	Nom.	He	Plural.	Nom.	They
	Gen.	<i>of</i> Him		Gen.	<i>of</i> Them
	Dat.	<i>to</i> Him		Dat.	<i>to</i> Them
	Acc.	Him		Acc.	Them
	Voc.	caret		Voc.	caret
	Abl.	<i>from</i> Him		Abl.	<i>from</i> Them

Fem.			Fem.		
Singular.	Nom.	She	Plural.	Nom.	They
	Gen.	<i>of</i> Her		Gen.	<i>of</i> Them
	Dat.	<i>to</i> Her		Dat.	<i>to</i> Them
	Acc.	Her		Acc.	Them
	Voc.	caret		Voc.	caret
	Abl.	<i>from</i> Her		Abl.	<i>from</i> Them

Note, The Singular Number, from the Genitive Case, has the word *self* joined to it, and the plural *selves*, as, Sing. *himself, herself, itself, myself, thyself*; Plur. *themselves, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*; and sometimes *own* is added, as, *my ownself, &c.* but this seems quite superfluous.

Neuter

Neuter			Neuter		
Singular.	Nom.	It	Plural.	Nom.	They
	Gen.	of It		Gen.	of Them
	Dat.	to It		Dat.	to Them
	Acc.	It		Acc.	Them
	Voc.	caret		Voc.	caret
	Abl.	from It		Abl.	from Them

Note, The contraction of the Genitive Case of this Pronoun is *its*, as, what is *its* name? i. e. what is the name *of it*; has it all *its* properties, i. e. all the properties *of* or belonging to *it*.

Also observe, that though this is an Impersonal Pronoun, and applicable only to things and to persons, whose sex is not determined, yet its office is to attend the verbs, in company with other Pronouns Personal, through every Mood and Tense.

Declension of PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

Sing.			Plur.		
Nom.	My	or Mine	Nom.	Our	or Ours
Gen.	of My		Gen.	of Our	
Dat.	to My		Dat.	to Our	
Acc.	My		Acc.	Our	
Voc.	caret		Voc.	caret	
Abl.	from My		Abl.	from Our	
Nom.	Thy	or Thine	Nom.	Your	or Yours
Gen.	of Thy		Gen.	of Your	
Dat.	to Thy		Dat.	to Your	
Acc.	Thy		Acc.	Your	
Voc.	caret		Voc.	caret	
Abl.	from Thy		Abl.	from Your	
Nom.	His	or Hers	Nom.	Their	or Theirs
Gen.	of His		Gen.	of Their	
Dat.	to His		Dat.	to Their	
Acc.	His		Acc.	Their	
Voc.	caret		Voc.	caret	
Abl.	from His		Abl.	from Their	

Declension

Declension of PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

Singular.	Nom.	This	Plural.	Nom.	These
	Gen.	<i>of</i> This		Gen.	<i>of</i> These
	Dat.	<i>to</i> This		Dat.	<i>to</i> These
	Acc.	This		Acc.	These
	Voc.	caret		Voc.	caret
	Abl.	<i>from</i> This		Abl.	<i>from</i> These

Singular.	Nom.	That	Plural.	Nom.	Those
	Gen.	<i>of</i> That		Gen.	<i>of</i> Those
	Dat.	<i>to</i> That		Dat.	<i>to</i> Those
	Acc.	That		Acc.	Those
	Voc.	caret		Voc.	caret
	Abl.	<i>from</i> That		Abl.	<i>from</i> Those

Note, These sort of words are not only Pronouns, but Adjectives, being constantly joined to Substantives, and where they stand alone, the Substantive is understood.

They are indifferently applied to Persons or things.

Declension of PRONOUNS, both RELATIVE and INTERROGATIVE.

N.	<i>who?</i>	<i>whose</i>	<i>what</i>	<i>which</i>
G.	<i>of whom?</i>	<i>of whose</i>	<i>of what</i>	<i>of which</i>
D.	<i>to whom?</i>	<i>to whose</i>	<i>to what</i>	<i>to which</i>
Ac.	<i>whom?</i>	<i>whose</i>	<i>what</i>	<i>which</i>
V.	caret	caret	caret	caret
Ab.	<i>from whom?</i>	<i>from whose</i>	<i>from what</i>	<i>from which</i>

Note, These Relative Pronouns have no plural number, as may be seen in the following praxes on the Pronouns Relative. They also have often the words *ever* and *soever* added to them, as, *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whatever*, *whatsoever*, *whichsoever*, &c. all which are transposed occasionally.

Sundry

Sundry Praxes, or practical Lessons, on some of the foregoing Pronouns.

Praxis on the Personals *He* and *She*.

He came one way, and *she* another, and both met together. *He* took *her* by the lilly-white hand, and they went out in company; by the way *he* declared to her *his* misfortunes, and what *he* had suffered for love of *her*; but *she* shewed plainly by *her* deportment, and it appeared also by *her* countenance, that *she* was no ways affected with *his* sufferings.

Praxes on the relatives *who*, *whom*, and *which*.

There was a man *who* (the man) told us many things, amongst *which* (things) he recited to us a history, *that* (history) I had formerly read. He likewise shewed us many wonderful things in his mansion-house, *which* (things) caused in us great astonishment; but all this was done by magical enchantment, *which* (enchantment) we plainly discovered e'er we came from thence, for all vanished in a moment's time.

This is the boy *who* (the boy) came to our house.

This is the man *whom* (man) I saw yonder.

This is the man *who* (same man) stole the horse.

Blessed is the man *who* (the man) hath not walked in the council of the ungodly.

The ungodly are like the chaff *which* (chaff) the wind scatters away.

He is the person *whom* I must apply to, *or*

He is the person to *whom* I must apply.

This is the main thing *which* (thing) I must take care of.

This is the business *which* (business) I fix my mind upon, *or*

This is the business upon *which* (business) I fix my mind.

Praxis on *whose* as a Relative.

Behold a virgin shall bring forth a son, *whose* name (*i. e.* his name) shall be called Jesus. Isaiah, chap. vii. verse 14.

Let us read Cicero, *whose* books (*i. e.* Cicero's) are full of morality.

Let us look into the antient philosophers, *whose* sayings are so remarkable, or the sayings of *whom* are so remarkable.

Let us follow our Saviour, *whose* death, or the death of *whom*, was our life.

Let us admire those illustrious persons *whose* lives Plutarch writes, or the lives of *whom* Plutarch writes.

Praxis on *what* as a Relative.

What (that which) you say is true.

What _____ he doth is worth nothing.

What _____ one wins the other spends.

Give *what* _____ you can.

Say *what* _____ you know.

Praxis on the Demonstratives *this* and *that*.

This knife doth not cut so well as *that* (knife) I lost.

This cloth is not so fine as *that* (cloth) you bought yesterday.

Your horse runs better than *this* (horse) you shew me.

My books are better than *these* (books) you bring.

Our bells ring better than *those* (bells) you spoke of.

Sing.

this { man
woman
thing

Sing.

that { man
woman
thing

Plur.

these { men
women
things

Plur.

those { men
women
things

Remarks

*Remarks on Pronouns, Nature, Names, and Use,
Exhibiting their Fitness, or Abuse.*

THE Pronoun has two states; the foregoing state, which goes before the Verb, as *I love, we love*, and the following state, which comes after either a Verb or preposition, as *love me, love us, to me, to us*; but the Pronoun *whom* is generally placed before the Verb, as he is the man *whom* I saw, not *who* I saw.

The foregoing state is sometimes placed after the Verb, as when a question is asked in a commanding sentence, as, *am I? is he? are they? &c.* Also after the Auxiliary Verbs, as, *do I, shall I, may I*, and the Verb Passive, as, *it is I*, or by question, *is it I?*

The word that answers to the question, *who is, who does, who suffers?* or, *what is, what does, what suffers?* is the Substantive to which the Verb relates, and is called the Nominative word, be it Noun or Pronoun, as *I love*, who loves? *I*, that is the Nominative word; *we read*, who reads? *we*, where *we* is the Nominative word: *the book is read*, what is read? *the book*; here *book* is the Nominative word, which is the same as what the Latins call the Nominative Case.

There is a difference in construction between *my* and *mine*, *thy* and *thine*, &c. which is as follows, *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, are always joined to Substantives; but *mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, are used when the Substantive is left out, as, *whose book is this? mine; whose is that; thine or yours, &c.* but these Pronouns, *hish, hern, ourn, yourn, theirn*, are very bad English, though they are contractions of very good, as *hish* for *his own*, *hern* for *her own*, &c. the proper words being, *his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*. As to the trivial nicety of some authors, that these words *mine* and *thine*, are or ought to be used only when a Noun follows beginning with a Vowel, as *mine arm, thine aunt*, instead of *my arm, thy aunt*, I can't help thinking it is absolutely unnecessary, the other expressions being a great deal better English, and much more harmoni-

ous in sound, as may be seen in the following words wrote both ways :

<i>Ancient.</i>	<i>Modern.</i>
mine ear-ring	my ear-ring
mine inkstand	my inkstand
mine oat-cake	my oat-cake
mine uncle	my uncle
mine hamper	my hamper, &c.

Note, *Thine* is changed into *yours*.

This and *that*, the Demonstrative Pronouns, are distinguished before a Substantive in manner following; *this*, applied to any person or thing, signifies whatever is near to the person who is spoken to, whereas *that* denotes that which is neither near him which is spoken to, nor him who speaketh; so in the Plural of the above Pronouns, *these* is applied to Persons or Things present, *those* denotes them absent or spoken of before.

Sometimes we add the Adverb *here* to the Pronoun *this*, and *there* to *that*, in order to denote something more particularly, as the French do by *ci* and *là*; as, *this here* is said of the nearest, and *that there* of the remotest of two things in view.

These is the Plural of *this*, and not of the Article *the*, as some Foreigners may be apt to imagine.

Who, as an Interrogative Pronoun, is used when we speak of *persons*, as, *who is that man?* but we do not say, *who is that book?* for when we speak of *things* we use *what*, as, *what book is that?* and though *what* be sometimes used when we speak of *persons*, yet then it seems to have another sense than *what* the Pronoun has, and is rather a Noun Adjective, as, *what man is he?* i. e. *what sort of a man?*

Which is a Relative Pronoun, as well as an Interrogation, because it has relation or reference to some other word, as, *that is the book which (book) I lent you*, where you see *which* relates to *book* understood.

That and *which* are invariably the same, and declin'd with Nouns in both Numbers; they are used when
we

we speak of things, as *who* and *whom* are when we speak of persons, as, *these are the apples which or that I saw.*

*More particular Remarks on the foregoing Pronouns,
whether Relative or Personal.*

In English the Relative and antecedent generally agree together both in Number and Gender, whether it be Masculine or Feminine, Singular or Plural; as,

The beautiful princess *whom* George the king of England married.

Those fine men *whom* the colonel ordered to the battle.

They spoke of the brave action, or actions, *which* the English performed.

Young Pausanius, *who* slew the king of Macedonia, was but fifteen years of age.

Those men *who* besieged the city of Troy were Grecians.

Those women, *who* defended their country with so much courage, were Amazons.

Those men, or women, *who* love life will use temperance.

Whom may also be used in the Genitive Case, as,

The man *of whom* Pausanius complained was the king of Macedonia's General.

Also in the Dative Case,

To whom are we to give an account.

To whom do you return thanks.

Also in the Accusative,

Whom do you see? *Whom* do you think?

Also in the Ablative,

From whom did you hear this news?

God, *in, by, through,* or *from whom* we live, move, and have our being.

The Relative and Interrogatives, *who* and *which*, are generally placed before the Verb, as, *who* is he? *who* are they? things *which* are to be admired, *which* demand our attention.

When the Relative serves to express choice, we say, *give me which you will*, not *what you will*. Speaking of persons we say, *the gentleman of whom we spoke is come*; *the lady for whom we were uneasy is better*; but speaking of things we say, *the misfortunes of which you told me, or, with which we were threatened are over*; *the business with which I was entrusted is finished*.

The Personal Pronouns are not to be used indifferently, for when the Verb is in the Imperative Mood, the *Derivative* Pronoun is always employed, and not the *Primitive*, as *give me some drink*, not *give I some drink*; *give him or her that nosegay*, not *give he or she that nosegay*; *let us walk*, (not *let we walk*) *in the garden*, &c.

We make use of both the Feminine and Neuter Pronouns indifferently in the following expressions, as *virtue has in itself (herself) all that can make it (her) lovely*. *The soul goes to God who gave it, or, the soul takes her (its) flight to the upper regions*, &c.

Pronouns Possessive are used in a relative manner in these examples:

If Alexander the Great loved his reputation, Cæsar loved his (reputation) no less.

If Cyrus preserved his conquests, the Assyrians did no less defend theirs, i. e. their conquests.

If that kingdom be your country, this (kingdom) is ours, i. e. our country.

Sometimes a sentence may be very vague and uncertain, and have an equivocal sense, if we do not regard the connection, as, *I met them riding post*; for the word *riding* may as well refer to the subject *I* as to the object *them*, as, *I riding post met them*; but the general rule in such case to explain it is, to take the last Pronoun coming next before the Participle, which is *them* whom *I met riding post*.

Of

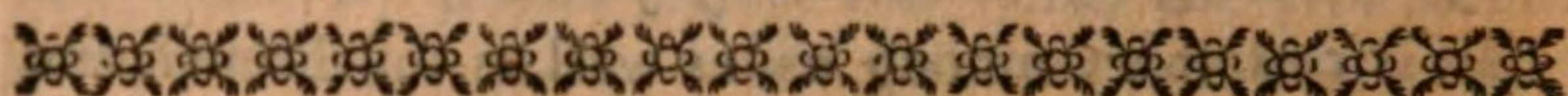
Of the English Manner of saluting one another.

It is customary among us, as well as the French and other polite nations, tho' we speak but to one particular person, to use the Plural Number of the Pronoun, but then we say *you*, not *ye*; and though we use it thus in the Singular, the Verb following it should be Plural, as, *you are prudent*, not *you art* or *is prudent*: and as we commonly use *you* for *thou* and *thee*, so by the same complaisance we are obliged to say *your* for *thy*, and *yours* for *thine*; otherwise if any one speaks to another in the Singular Number, as *thou Thomas*, or, *I shall see thee at thy house*, &c. it is reckoned a Sign of too much familiarity amounting to a contempt, if not an affront, except by the people called Quakers, who plead this privilege from principle, or under sanction of their religious tenets.

But when we speak in an emphatical manner, or make any distinct or particular application to a person we use *thou*, as, *Remember, O king, thou art a man*; so in scripture it is very frequent, as the prophet Nathan's charge to David was, *Behold, thou art the man*; or in our prayers and address to the supreme Being, to whom it would be the highest indignity imaginable to offer any complaisance of this sort, where only our sincerity is due.

Wherefore in general we must observe, it is usual here in England to call any gentleman, whether married or a bachelor, *Sir*, and if he be under age, *Master*, and any married woman, *Madam*, and any unmarried lady or gentlewoman (tho' she be ever so old) *Miss*. We say in the Plural, *Sirs* or *Gentlemen*, and *Ladies* or *Gentlewomen*, and to those under age, *Masters* or *Young Gentlemen*, and *Misses* or *Young Ladies*, and when both sexes are present, we say *Gentlefolks*, or *Gentlemen and Ladies*.

When we speak to an inferior, as a gentleman to a common tradesman, we add *Mr.* to his name, as, *Mr. A. B.* I like your work very well, if it were not too dear. To a soldier, sailor, countryman, and others of the lower class of people we say, *My friend*, *good man*, *good woman*, &c.



C H A P. III.

Of Verbs or Affirmations.

TO give a true Definition of a *Verb*, we should consider what is essential, and what accidental to it.

The Verb considered in its essential Nature is a Part of Speech, serving to describe the Power, State, or Situation of Things or Persons, the Actions which they do, and the Impressions which they receive.

If we consider what is accidental to it, it is a Part of Speech that receives divers Inflections or Variations by Moods, Tenses, Persons, Numbers, and Conjugations, attended with Participles, Gerunds, &c.

But the best Definition of a Verb in English is an Affirmation, since all Words of this Kind do affirm something of something, with the Designation of Time, Number, and Person, expressing *being, doing, or suffering*, as, *I am, I love, I am loved, &c.*

Of CONJUGATION.

The conjugating a Verb is the due distribution of its parts by a just proportion, and well regulating of *Person, Mood, and Tense*.

It comes from the Latin words *jugo*, to yoke, *con*, with; and *conjugatio* is to yoke, join, or couple together, because the Verb is always joined to the Pronoun, by means of which is ranged Time and Person, as they ought

ought to be properly applied, whether Singular or Plural.

There is no ascertaining how many Conjugations the English Verbs properly consist of, and those who have limited them to four, do at the same Time admit, that “there are many Verbs which may be conjugated so as to belong either to the third or to the fourth Conjugation,” which I apprehend is seldom, if ever, the case with other languages, and therefore if it be so in ours, it were better in my opinion not to give any account at all than to be at such an uncertainty about them, and only to distinguish our Verbs in general, as they really are, into *regular* and *irregular*.

Of M O O D S.

Mood is the Modus or Manner by which a Verb shews its signification, having six different ways of modifying or representing an action, which in English is not by its ending, but according to the occasion expressed by the Verb, which are as follow :

The Six Moods. *Signs and Nature of the Moods.*

Indicative, { Comes from the Latin *indicare*, because it indicates, expresses, and affirms the action simply, as, *I love*.

Imperative, { From *imperare*, to command, intreat, or permit, as, *let him do it, let it be done*.

Optative, { Wishes or desires, with the Pronoun and Verb annexed, as, *would I had, God grant I had loved, &c.*

Potential, { From *potens*, of *posse*, to be able, shews power of doing a thing, and that something is expected, as, *that I may (can, might, could, should) love, &c.*

Subjunctive, { Supposes something with the condition annexed, as, *if, when, that, although I love, &c.*

Infinitives

Infinitive, { From *infinitus*, because it leaves all undetermined, having neither Number, Person, nor Nominative word, as, *to love, to be, to fear.*

Of TENSE or TIME.

Tense is that accident of Verbs, which shews when an action is done or suffered, and is the distinction of Time in the following manner :

Names.

Signs of the Tenses.

Present, { Shews the immediate action of the Verb,
as, *I dine, We write.*

Past, { Either perfectly, as, *I dined, or did dine.*
We wrote, &c.
Or imperfectly, as, *I was dining. We were writing, &c.*

Future, { Shews the time { *I shall*
to come, as, { or
{ *will* } *dine or write.*

Besides these three simple Tenses there are four others that are used by way of circumlocution, called Compound Tenses or Times, viz. the *Imperfect*, *Second Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Second Future*.

The first is that which marks the past, in relation to the present, and is called the *Imperfect Tense* or *Time*, because it denotes not the thing simply and properly as done, but as imperfect and present only with respect to a thing which is already past. Thus when I say, *I was writing when he entered*, the action of writing is past in respect of the *time* of which I speak, but present in respect of the *thing* of which I speak, which is *his entrance*.

The *Second Perfect Tense* is used to express an action perfectly past, without determining any precise time when, as, *I have spoken to him above a hundred times;*

Or

or else it serves to express an action done the same day one speaks in, as, *I have seen him this morning, &c.*

The third Compound Time or Tense is that which doubly marks the past, and on that account is called the *Pluperfect* Tense, or the time more than perfectly past, if it be possible, as, *I had supped*, by which I denote my action of supping, not only as past in itself, but also past in respect to another thing, which is also past, as, *I had supped when he entered*, which shews my supping was past before his entrance, which is also past.

This Tense also (whose sign is *had*) when it refers to an event, represents that event as prior, or as intended to be prior in time to some other, as in this example, “here’s money for my meat, I would have left it on the board so soon as I *had* made my meal;” here *had*, the sign of the *Pluperfect* tense, refers to a future event, and plainly intimates, that the making of the meal was to have taken place before the money was to have been deposited on the board.

The fourth Compound Time or Tense is that which denotes the future with respect to the past, called the *Second Future*, or *Future Perfect*, as *I shall have supped*, by which I mark my action of supping, as future in itself, and passed in regard to another thing to come, as, *when I shall have supped, he will enter*, which is as much as to say, that my supper (which is not yet come) will be past when his entrance (which is also not yet come) will be present.

Of PERSONS.

The Name of Person is, by Philosophers, properly restrained to *rational*, but by Grammarians, extended to all other *beings*, and the ancient Mythologists, or writers of Fables, represent to us all things under that notion, therefore since all beings are expressed by words or parts of speech, and in every speech, three personal relations must be supposed, some to *speak*, some to be spoken *to*, and others to be spoken *of*, thence ariseth
the

the division of all words into three ranks of persons, and these are used in both numbers, constantly attending the Verb.

SIGNS of the PERSONS.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
<i>First,</i>	I	We	<i>shew the Person speaking.</i>
<i>Second,</i>	{ Thou or You }	{ Ye or You }	<i>shew to whom spoken.</i>
<i>Third,</i>	{ He She or It }	{ They }	<i>shew of whom or what spoken.</i>

Note, As we have established *you* for the Singular Number instead of *thou*, it seems (under this circumstance) to be quite contrary and out of character, to put *you* to express the plural, instead of *ye*, which sounds equally as well, and therefore I have reserved this Pronoun for the plural number in every tense through all the Conjugations of the Verbs, both regular and irregular.

Division of the VERBS.

Verbs are divided in the following Manner, viz.

NAMES and NATURE of the VERBS.

Active, { Which comes from the Latin *agere, actum*, to act or do, because it affirms some action, as, *I love*, it has always the subject (i. e. the noun or pronoun) put after it, and is what the adjective is to the substantive, making no sense at all of itself, but requires another word to shew its signification, as, *I love John, you love me, he loves her, &c.*

Passive,

Passive, { From *pati, passus, to suffer*, because it expresses the suffering or reception of an action, as, *I am loved, he was punished, &c.*

Neuter, { Comes from the Latin *neuter, neither*, because it is neither Active nor Passive, it denotes the existence of a person or thing, making a complete sense of itself, and requires no noun or other word to be joined with it, as, *I sleep, we run, she cries, &c.*

Reflective, { Such whose action returns upon the agent that produces it, as, *I flatter myself, &c.*

Impersonal { Having only the third person singular and plural applied to things both animate and inanimate, as, *it freezes, it is said or they say, they grow, &c.*

These are again subdivided into Regular and Irregular.

Regular { Confined to certain rules, as, *love, loved, apply, applied, beautify, beautified, &c.*

Irregular { That have no general or fixt rule, but differ widely in order of Conjugation, as, *see saw seen, blow blew blown, feel felt, &c.*

Of Auxiliary or Helping VERBS.

Note, The foregoing Verbs cannot be conjugated through all their Moods and Tenses, without one of the following principal Verbs *have* and *be*.

The first serves to conjugate the rest, by supplying the compound tenses of all Verbs both Regular and Irregular, whether Active, Passive, Neuter, or Impersonal, as may be seen in its own variation, &c.

The second assists in the formation of the Passive Verbs, therefore they are both called *Auxiliary* or *Helping* Verbs, as they help not only to form themselves, but also to conjugate others, for which reason, in point of order, I begin with

The

The Conjugation of the Active Auxiliary Verb
to HAVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I have	}	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have

Imperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I was	} having	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were

First Perfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I had	}	We had
You had		Ye had
He had		They had

Second Perfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I have	} had	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have

Pluperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I had	} had	We had
You had		Ye had
He had		They had

First Future Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I shall or will	} have	We shall or will
You shall or will		Ye shall or will
He shall or will		They shall or will

Second

Second Future Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	{ I shall <i>or</i> will have	}	had
	{ You shall <i>or</i> will have		
	{ He shall <i>or</i> will have		
<i>Plur.</i>	{ We shall <i>or</i> will have	}	had
	{ Ye shall <i>or</i> will have		
	{ They shall <i>or</i> will have		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	Let me	}	have
		Have you <i>or</i> do you		
		Have he <i>or</i> let him		
<i>Plur.</i>	{	Let us	}	have
		Have ye <i>or</i> do ye		
		Have they <i>or</i> let them		

OPTATIVE.

Present Tense.

SIGNS.	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Wish, would to God, <i>or</i> God grant	{ I have	{ We
	{ You have	{ Ye
	{ He has	{ They
		have

Imperfect.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Wish, would to God, <i>or</i> God grant	{ I were	{ We were
	{ You were	{ Ye were
	{ He were	{ They were
	having	having

First Perfect.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Wish, would to God, <i>or</i> God grant	{ I had	{ We had
	{ You had	{ Ye had
	{ He had	{ They had

Second Perfect.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wish, would to God, <i>or</i> God grant	{ I have	{ We have
	{ You have	{ Ye have
	{ He has	{ They have
	had	had
	P	Pluper-

Pluperfect.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
Wish, would, &c.	I had	had	We had
	You had		Ye had
	He had		They had

First Future.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
Wish, would, &c.	I shall	have	We shall
	You shall		Ye shall
	He shall		They shall

Second Future.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
Wish, would, &c.	I shall have	had	We shall have
	You shall have		Ye shall have
	He shall have		They shall have

P O T E N T I A L.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	SIGNS		<i>Plur.</i>	SIGNS
I	{ may }	have	We	{ may }
You	{ or }		Ye	{ or }
He	{ can }		They	{ can }

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>
I	{ might, could }	have	We { might, }
You	{ or }		Ye { could, }
He	{ would, should }		They { should }

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>
I	{ might, could, }	have	We { might, }
You	{ or }		Ye { could, }
He	{ would, should }		They { should }

Future.

Future.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
I	{ may }	have here-	{ We }	{ may }	have here-
You	{ or }	after	{ Ye }	{ or }	after
He	{ can }		{ They }	{ can }	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

SIGNS.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
If, when,	{ I have }	We have
that, tho'	{ You have }	Ye have
	{ He has }	We have

Imperfect.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
If, tho',	{ I were }	{ We were }
when,	{ You were }	{ Ye were }
that	{ He were }	{ They were }

First Perfect.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
If, when,	{ I had }	We had
that, tho'	{ You had }	Ye had
	{ He had }	They had

Second Perfect.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
If, when,	{ I have }	{ We have }
that, tho'	{ You have }	{ Ye have }
	{ He has }	{ They have }

Pluperfect.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
If, when,	{ I had }	{ We had }
that, tho'	{ You had }	{ Ye had }
	{ He had }	{ They had }

Note, The signs of these Moods are to be applied also to the Plural Number.

First Future.

Singular.

If, when, that, tho' { I shall or will
You shall or will } have
He shall or will }

Plural.

If, when, that, tho' { We shall or will
Ye shall or will } have
They shall or will }

Second Future.

Singular.

If, when, that, tho' { I shall or will have
You shall or will have } had
He shall or will have }

Plural.

If, when, that, tho' { We shall or will have
Ye shall or will have } had
They shall or will have }

I N F I N I T I V E.

Present.

to have

Future.

to have hereafter

Perfect.

to have had

Active Participle.

having

Passive Participle.

had.

Conjugation of the Passive Auxiliary Verb TO BE.

I N D I C A T I V E M O O D.

Present Tense.

Sing.

I am

You are

He is

Plur.

We are

Ye are

They are

Note, The Passive Verbs have no Imperfect Tense, they not being capable of it.

First

First Perfect Tense.

Sing.

I was

You was

He was

Plur.

We were

Ye were

They were

Second Perfect Tense.

Sing.

I have

You have

He has

} been

Plur.

We have

Ye have

They have

} been

Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.

I had

You had

He had

} been

Plur.

We had

Ye had

They had

} been

First Future Tense.

Sing.

I shall or will

You shall or will

He shall or will

} be

Plur.

We shall or will

Ye shall or will

They shall or will

} be

Second Future.

Sing.

{ I shall or will have

{ You shall or will have

{ He shall or will have

} been

Plur.

{ We shall or will have

{ Ye shall or will have

{ They shall or will have

} been

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.

Let me

Be you, or do you

Be he, or let him

} be

Plur.

{ Be we, or let us

{ Be ye, or do ye

{ Be they, or let them

} be

S U B J U N C T I V E.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
If, when, that, <i>or</i> tho'	I be	We be
	You be	Ye be
	He be	They be

First Perfect.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
If, when, that, <i>or</i> tho'	I were	We were
	You were	Ye were
	He were	They were

In like manner are conjugated the Optative and Potential Moods with their Signs, and the rest of the Tenses, as in the Indicative, &c.

I N F I N I T I V E.

Present.

to be

Future.

to be hereafter

Perfect.

to have been

Active Participle.

being

Passive Participle.

been.

Note, This Verb is very irregular, as well in other Languages as in English, especially in the *Present* and *first Perfect* Tenses of the Indicative Mood, which retain not the least of the primitive sound *be*, and therefore should more properly have been placed amongst the Irregulars, but that it is so highly necessary for the conjugation of other Verbs.

Conjugation

Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb *to do*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Singular.*

I do
You do
He does

Plural.

We
Ye
They } do

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

I was
You was
He was

} doing

Plural.

We were
Ye were
They were } doing

*First Perfect.**Singular.*

I did
You did
He did

Plural.

We did
Ye did
They did

*Second Perfect.**Singular.*

I have
You have
He has

} done

Plural.

We have
Ye have
They have } done

*Pluperfect.**Singular.*

I had
You had
He had

} done

Plural.

We had
Ye had
They had } done

*First Future.**Singular.*

I shall or will
You shall or will
He shall or will

} do

Plural.

We shall or will
Ye shall or will
They shall or will } do

Second Future.

Singular. { I shall *or* will have
 { You shall *or* will have } done
 { He shall *or* will have }

Plural. { We shall *or* will have
 { Ye shall *or* will have } done
 { They shall *or* will have }

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Let me }
 Do you *or* do you } do
 Do he *or* let him }
 Let us }
 Do ye *or* do ye } do
 Do they *or* let them }

In like manner are conjugated the other Moods with their Signs.

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Would to God *or* God grant I { do }
 { *or* } { have } done
 { did } { *or* }
 { had }

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should { do }
 { *or* } done
 { have }

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, tho' I { do }
 { *or* } { have } done
 { did } { *or* }
 { had }

INFINITIVE

INFINITIVE.

Present.

to do

Future.

to do hereafter

Perfect.

to have done

Active Participle.

doing

Passive Participle.

done.

Note, This Verb not only signifies an action of itself, but is conjugated and construed with any other Verb, either regular or irregular, though only in their present and perfect Tenses, serving as a sign to express the present or past action more fully distinctly and emphatically. Also observe, that when a helping Verb is set before another Verb, it changes its own ending, but the assisted Verb is always the same, as, *I do sail, I did sail, I have done sailing, Do you sail, &c.*

Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verbs, may, can, shall and will.

Note, These are defective Verbs, so called because they are not used but only in their *present* and *perfect* Tenses; besides, they have no Participles nor Gerunds, neither do they admit of any helping Verbs before them.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Sing.*

I may

You may

He may

Plur.

We may

Ye may

They may

*Perfect.**Sing.*

I might

You might

He might

Plur.

We might

Ye might

They might

INDICATIVE

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.**Sing.*

I can

You can

He can

Plur.

We can

Ye can

They can

*Perfect.**Sing.*

I could

You could

He could

Plur.

We could

Ye could

They could

Note, The Present and Perfect Tenses of these two Verbs serve as Signs to supply the *Potential Mood*, of other Verbs, through all their Tenses.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.**Sing.*

I shall

You shall

He shall

Plur.

We shall

Ye shall

They shall

*Perfect.**Sing.*

I should

You should

He should

Plur.

We should

Ye should

They should

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.**Sing.*

I will

You will

He will

Plur.

We will

Ye will

They will

*Perfect.**Sing.*

I would

You would

He would

Plur.

We would

Ye would

They would

The

The *Present Tense* of the two foregoing Verbs serve as Signs to supply the *Future Tenses* of all manner of Verbs, both regular and irregular; and their *Perfect* or *Past Tenses* serve as Signs to assist the *Potential Mood*, as was said before.

Of REGULAR VERBS.

Which are those whose perfect Tense and Passive Participle always end in *ed* after a Consonant, and *d* after a Vowel.

Conjugation of the Regular Verb to fail, ending with a Consonant.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I fail	We fail
You fail	Ye fail
He fails	They fail

Imperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I was	We were
You was	Ye were
He was	They were
failing	
failing	

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I failed	We failed
You failed	Ye failed
He failed	They failed

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I have	We have
You have	Ye have
He has	They have
failed	
failed	

Pluperfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.
SIGNS.

If, when, that, tho' I fail, or $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{have} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{had} \end{array} \right\}$ failed

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
to fail	to fail hereafter
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Active Participle.</i>
to have failed	failing
	<i>Passive Participle.</i>
	failed.

List of REGULAR VERBS,

Conjugated exactly like the foregoing, whose Perfect Tense and Passive Participle always end in *ed* after a Consonant.

	<i>Perf.</i>		<i>Perf.</i>		<i>Perf.</i>
<i>a</i>		anoint		attack	
add	} ed	attend	} ed	attempt	} ed
act		abolish		avail	
arm		abhor		avoid	
abandon		appear		adjust	
abstract		addict		alight	
accustom		admonish		affect	
affirm		accomplish		allow	
accept		astonish		appertain	
affront		absent		apprehend	
assault		address		<i>b</i>	
affright		adjourn		banter	
ascend		admit		blunder	
affix		alarm		border	
afflict		approach		buffet	
attract		arrest		butter	
answer		attach		bellow	
					bluster

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
bluster	} ed	differ	} ed	guard	} ed
button		delight		gallop	
blind		design		govern	
butcher		disgust		groan	
blot		distrust		grub	
bolt		<i>e</i>		grin	
borrow		enter		gall	
<i>c</i>		effect		<i>b</i>	
call		emit		heap	
count		exalt		harrafs	
cover		establish		hug	
contend		esteem		hunt	
conform		<i>f</i>		hurl	
confront		fear		hash	
convert		follow		hint	
commit		fill		hiss	
contest		frisk		hook	
conceal		flatter		hoot	
consider		flutter		head	
chatter		ferret		heal	
collect		famish		heat	
cheapen		fathom		hatch	
cherish		fatten		haunt	
colour		favour		hansel	
counsel		frighten		hinder	
credit		fulfill		hearten	
crown		fast		hearken	
comb		foment		humour	
corrupt		form		honour	
correct		frequent		<i>i</i>	
<i>d</i>		fail		itch	
diet		fold		infect	
differ		forfeit		intermix	
doctor		finish		interrupt	
dress		<i>g</i>		inform	
drum		gather		<i>j</i>	
dirt		grant		jilt	
debar		graft		jump	
divert		glean		jerk	
					jeer

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
jeer	} ed	mock	} ed	paint	} ed
jest		miscount		puff	
jolt		mistrust		pardon	
join		mix		pilfer	
<i>k</i>		<i>n</i>		pilot	
kick		need		pester	
knead		nail		preach	
kneel		number		punish	
kill		neglect		prosper	
kiss		<i>o</i>		perform	
knock		oil		pervert	
knot		offer		predict	
<i>l</i>		order		prevail	
lock		obstruct		pretend	
lug		obtain		project	
lack		ornament		protest	
lick		offend		purloin	
lift		oppress		prohibit	
link		occasion		petition	
lurk		<i>p</i>		pawn	
lisp		pack		polish	
list		pick		pinch	
leap		pull		<i>q</i>	
leak		pump		quench	
leer		pink		quilt	
look		pass		quicken	
lean		pour		quarter	
load		part		quiet	
light		peep		question	
laugh		plow		<i>r</i>	
litter		pluck		reach	
limit		plant		roast	
level		print		riot	
<i>m</i>		press		ruin	
murmur		parch		render	
mutter		pitch		relish	
merit		point		risk	
muster		plead		rasp	
molest		pamper		rock	

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
rail	}	flight	}	toast	}
rest		hammer		tempt	
root		suffer		thatch	
reap		slack		thicken	
roam		summon		threaten	
roll		season		trespass	
recant		<i>t</i>		<i>u</i>	
regain		tan		utter	
rust		tap		unarm	
relax		track		unbolt	
<i>s</i>		tack		undress	
sweat		talk		unfold	
suck		till		unlock	
salt		turf		<i>v</i>	
spout		term		vex	
soak		turn		vamp	
stock		trim		vent	
stamp		trip		vest	
storm		trot		view	} ed
scorn		toil		varnish	
spurn		treat		visit	
smart		trill		<i>w</i>	
start		throb		wax	
sport		trick		walk	
stain		thump		wink	
sprain		trump		want	
shout		twirl		wish	
sprout		thwart		warm	
steer		thresh		warp	
sneer		truss		wash	
scoop		trust		wean	
shield		twist		wrong	
screw		thirst		whirl	
scatter		twitch		whisk	
scollop		trail		watch	
sharpen		train		wound	
simper		taint		wander	
slumber		taunt		wanton	
stagger		touch		warrant	

whisper

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
whisper	} ed	woo	} ed	yawn	} ed
winter		wheel		yield	
worship		y		yern	
water		yelp			

Also these ending in *y*.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
essay	} ed	display	} ed	stray	} ed
dismay		decay		decoy	
convey		pray		annoy	
portray		defray		employ	
allay	}	delay	}	toy	}
array		obey		destroy	
betray		play		convoy	

Except these following,

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	
say	said	} <i>which are irregular Verbs.</i>
pay	paid	
stay	staid, &c.	

Conjugation of the Regular Verb *to LOVE*, ending with silent *e*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I love	We love
You love	Ye love
He loves	They love

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I was	We were
You was	Ye were
He was	They were
} loving	
} loving	

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I loved		We loved
You loved		Ye loved
He loved		They loved

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I have	} loved	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I had	} loved	We had	} loved
You had		Ye had	
He had		They had	

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I shall <i>or</i> will	} love	We shall <i>or</i> will	} love
You shall <i>or</i> will		Ye shall <i>or</i> will	
He shall <i>or</i> will		They shall <i>or</i> will	

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		
{	I shall <i>or</i> will have	} loved
	You shall <i>or</i> will have	
	He shall <i>or</i> will have	
<i>Plur.</i>		
{	We shall <i>or</i> will have	} loved
	Ye shall <i>or</i> will have	
	They shall <i>or</i> will have	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Let me	} love	Love we <i>or</i> let us	} love
Love you <i>or</i> do you		Love ye <i>or</i> do ye	
Love he <i>or</i> let him		Love they <i>or</i> let them	

In like manner are conjugated these other Moods with their Signs.

OPTATIVE

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, *or* God grant, I love, *or* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{have} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{had} \end{array} \right\}$ loved

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should love, *or* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{have} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{had} \end{array} \right\}$ loved

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, though, I love, *or* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{have} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{had} \end{array} \right\}$ loved

INFINITIVE.

Present
to love

Future

to love hereafter

Perfect
to have loved

Active Participle
loving

Passive Participle
loved

N. B. In order to conjugate this Verb with the auxiliary or helping Verb *do*, we say in the present Tense, Sing. *I or you do love, he does love*, Plur. *we, ye, they do love*; and in the perfect or past Tense, Sing. *I, you, he did love*, Plur. *we, ye, they, did love*; and so of all other Verbs, except the Passive, which will not admit of it.

Second

Second List of Regular VERBS.

Conjugated exactly like the foregoing, whose *Perfect Tense* and *Participle Passive* make two syllables, and always end in *d* after the silent *e*.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
<i>a</i>		compare		<i>e</i>	
accuse		compose		ensnare	
acquire		confine		elope	
approve		confuse		espouse	
arrive		confute		endure	
assure		consume		evade	
advance		commune		evinced	
advise		commute		estimate	
awake		contaminate		educate	
alledge		communicate		elucidate	
ascribe		contrive		elevate	
absolve		continue		emanate	
adhere		censure		emaciate	
abate		couple		enervate	
amaze		carouse		equivocate	
adore		create		eradicate	
amuse	d	celebrate	d	<i>f</i>	d
attire		circumcise		forge	
atone		<i>d</i>		fiddle	
assemble		damage		fondle	
assume		deprive		freckle	
aspire		double		frame	
animate		dive		fine	
<i>b</i>		dissemble		face	
balance		dine		force	
blame		divine		flote	
buckle		divide		<i>g</i>	
believe		decide		grate	
bake		divulge		gaze	
bore		debase		glue	
<i>c</i>		debate		grace	
cure		disgrace		gripe	
challenge		deceive		glaze	
					grudge

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
grudge	}	live	}	purpose	}
gamble		line		people	
graze		like		prattle	
guide		leaze		produce	
grieve		<i>m</i>		puzzle	
gore		move		pleasure	
grumble		mangle		prepare	
game		mingle		prescribe	
gape		meditate		preserve	
grease		menace		promote	
<i>b</i>		meddle		propose	
hate		<i>n</i>		procure	
hope		name		pronounce	
hedge		note		<i>q</i>	
harangue		navigate		quake	
hire	}	negociate	}	quote	}
hale		nominate		<i>r</i>	
<i>i</i>		<i>o</i>		rave	
influence		obviate		rate	
intimate		obtrude		raise	
incline		operate		remove	
induce		outlive		revolve	
importune		owe		relate	
intercede		<i>p</i>		ramble	
interline		pile		rattle	
intermeddle		pine		rifle	
introduce		pipe		ruffle	
imitate		pave		rebuke	
intimate		place		recite	
irritate		plane		reduce	
<i>j</i>	}	prune	}	rejoice	}
jibe		prize		revere	
joke		paste		<i>s</i>	
judge		praise		slice	
jumble		pause		shade	
<i>k</i>		pounce		stoke	
knuckle		pierce		survive	
<i>l</i>		piece		smoke	
lace		purchase		smile	

fnore

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
snore	} d	time	} d	undeceive	} d
surmise		twinge		undermine	
stare		taste		unlace	
store		tease		unlace ^w	
tame		tangle		wipe	
tile		tattle		wave	
tire		tipple		wedge	
tune		urge ^u		waste	
trade		uze		wreathe	
thrive		unite		yoke ^y , &c.	

Conjugation of the Regular Verb *to* EDIFY, or thus, *to* EDIFIE, whose Perfect Tense and Passive Participle end in *d* or *ed* according as it is spelt.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I edifie	} or edify	We edifie	} or edify
You edifie		Ye edifie	
He edifies		They edifie	

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I was	} edifying	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were
		} edifying

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I edified	} or edified	We edified
You edified		Ye edified
He edified		They edified
		} or edified

Second

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I have	} edified or edified	We have	} edified or edified
You have		Ye have	
He has		They have	

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I had	} edified or edified	We had	} edified or edified
You had		Ye had	
He had		They had	

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I shall <i>or</i> will	} edifie or edify	We shall <i>or</i> will	} edifie or edify
You shall <i>or</i> will		Ye shall <i>or</i> will	
He shall <i>or</i> will		They shall <i>or</i> will	

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		
{	I shall or will have	} edified or edified
	You shall or will have	
	He shall or will have	
<i>Plur.</i>		
{	We shall or will have	} edified or edified
	Ye shall or will have	
	They shall or will have	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>		
{	Let me	} edifie or edify
	Edifie you or do you	
	Edifie he or let him	
<i>Plur.</i>		
{	Edifie we or let us	} edifie or edify
	Edifie ye or do ye	
	Edifie they or let them	

In like manner are conjugated the other Moods with their Signs.

OPTATIVE.

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{I edifie} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{edify} \end{array} \right\}$ have or had $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{edified} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{edified} \end{array} \right\}$
or God grant,

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{edifie} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{edify} \end{array} \right\}$ or have or had $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{edified} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{edified} \end{array} \right\}$
would, or should,

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, tho', $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{I edifie} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{edify} \end{array} \right\}$ or have or had $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{edified} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{edified} \end{array} \right\}$

INFINITIVE.

Present.

to edifie or edify

Future.

to edifie or edify hereafter

Perfect.

to have edified or edified

Active Participle.

edifying

Passive Participle.

edified or edified.

Third

Third List of Regular VERBS.

Conjugated exactly like the foregoing, whose Perfect Tense and Participle Passive always end in *d* after *e*, and in *ed* after *y*.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
{ apply	ed	{ dry	ed	{ fancy	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ applie	d	{ drie	d	{ fancie	d
{ bury	ed	{ deny	ed	{ gratify	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ burie	d	{ denie	d	{ gratifie	d
{ beautify	ed	{ defy	ed	{ hurry	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ beautifie	d	{ defie	d	{ hurrie	d
{ carry	ed	{ descry	ed	{ imply	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ carrie	d	{ descrie	d	{ implie	d
{ certify	ed	{ empty	ed	{ indemnify	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ certifie	d	{ emptie	d	{ indemnifie	d
{ clarify	ed	{ envy	ed	{ justify	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ clarifie	d	{ envie	d	{ justifie	d
{ crucify	ed	{ exemplify	ed	{ levy	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ crucifie	d	{ exemplifie	d	{ levie	d
{ cry	ed	{ fructify	ed	{ magnify	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ crie	d	{ fructifie	d	{ magnifie	d
{ copy	ed	{ fortify	ed	{ multiply	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ copie	d	{ fortifie	d	{ multiplie	d

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
{ mortify	ed	{ rely	ed	{ supply	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ mortifie	d	{ relie	d	{ supplie	d
{ mollify	ed	{ rectify	ed	{ sanctify	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ mollifie	d	{ rectifie	d	{ sanctifie	d
{ marry	ed	{ rally	ed	{ specify	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ marrie	d	{ rallie	d	{ specifie	d
{ notify	ed	{ reply	ed	{ stupefy	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ notifie	d	{ replie	d	{ stupefie	d
{ occupy	ed	{ satisfy	ed	{ tally	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ occupie	d	{ satisfie	d	{ tallie	d
{ ply	ed	{ fally	ed	{ tarry	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ plie	d	{ fallie	d	{ tarrie	d
{ putrify	ed	{ fully	ed	{ testify	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ putrifie	d	{ fullie	d	{ testifie	d
{ purify	ed	{ study	ed	{ vilify	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ purifie	d	{ studie	d	{ vilifie	d
{ qualify	ed	{ spy	ed	{ verify	ed
{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>		{ <i>or</i>	
{ qualifie	d	{ spie	d	{ verifie, &c.	d

Conjugation

Conjugation of Verbs PASSIVE.

Note, Verbs active are made *passive* only by the help of the Auxiliary Verb *be*, and the Participle of the proper Verb, which are thus conjugated together.

Indicative Mood *of the Verb* to be feared.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural,</i>	
I am	} feared	We are	} feared
You are		Ye are	
He is		They are	

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I was	} feared	We were	} feared
You was		Ye were	
He was		They were	

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I have been	} feared	We have been	} feared
You have been		Ye have been	
He has been		They have been	

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I had been	} feared	We had been	} feared
You had been		Ye had been	
He had been		They had been	

First Future.

<i>Singular.</i>		
I shall or will be	} feared	
You shall or will be		
He shall or will be		
<i>Plural.</i>		
We shall or will be	} feared	
Ye shall or will be		
They shall or will be		

Second Future.

<i>Singular.</i>	{ I shall <i>or</i> will have been	} feared
	{ You shall <i>or</i> will have been	
	{ He shall <i>or</i> will have been	
<i>Plural.</i>	{ We shall <i>or</i> will have been	} feared
	{ Ye shall <i>or</i> will have been	
	{ They shall <i>or</i> will have been	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	{ Let me be	} feared
	{ Be you <i>or</i> do you be	
	{ Be he <i>or</i> let him be	
<i>Plur.</i>	{ Be we <i>or</i> let us be	} feared
	{ Be ye <i>or</i> do ye be	
	{ Be they <i>or</i> let them be	

In like manner are conjugated these other Moods with their Signs.

OPTATIVE MOOD.

SIGNS.

With, would to God, <i>or</i> God grant	{ <i>Present</i>	} feared
	{ I be	
	{ <i>1st Perfect</i>	
	{ I were	
	{ <i>2d Perfect</i>	
	{ I have been	
	{ <i>Pluperfect</i>	
	{ I had been	
	{ <i>1st Future</i>	
	{ I shall <i>or</i> will be	
	{ <i>2d Future</i>	
	{ I shall have been, &c. }	

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should be *or* have been feared

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, though I be or $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{have} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{had} \end{array} \right\}$ been feared

INFINITIVE.

Present.

to be feared.

Future.

to be feared hereafter.

Perfect.

to have been feared.

Active Participle.

being feared.

Passive Participle.

been feared.

Note, These Passive Verbs again become Active, or have an active Signification by virtue of the same auxiliary Verb *to be*, when joined to the Participle of the proper Verb, as *I am fearing*, i. e. *I fear*; *I am obeying*, i. e. *I obey*, &c. and so through all the Tenses of the Verbs, both regular and irregular.

E X A M P L E

Of the *double Conjugation* of the Verb *to hear*, shewing how by means of either an active or passive Participle, joined to the Auxiliary Verb *to be*, this or any other Verb may assume either the active or passive Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

Singular.

I am	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hearing} \end{array} \right\}$	I am	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{heard} \end{array} \right\}$
You are		You are	
He is		He is	

Plural.

We are	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hearing} \end{array} \right\}$	We are	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{heard} \end{array} \right\}$
Ye are		Ye are	
They are		They are	

*Imperfect.**Active.**First Perfect.**Passive.**Singular.*

I was	}	hearing	I was	}	heard
You was			You was		
He was			He was		

Plural.

We were	}	hearing	We were	}	heard
Ye were			Ye were		
They were			They were		

*Second Perfect.**Singular.*

I have been	}	hearing	I have been	}	heard
You have been			You have been		
He has been			He has been		

Plural.

We have been	}	hearing	We have been	}	heard
Ye have been			Ye have been		
They have been			They have been		

*Pluperfect.**Singular.*

I had been	}	hearing	I had been	}	heard
You had been			You had been		
He had been			He had been		

Plural.

We had been	}	hearing	We had been	}	heard
Ye had been			Ye had been		
They had been			They had been		

*First Future.**Singular.*

I shall or will	}	be hearing	I shall or will	}	be heard
You shall or will			You shall or will		
He shall or will			He shall or will		

Plural.

We shall or will	}	be hearing	We shall or will	}	be heard
Ye shall or will			Ye shall or will		
They shall or will			They shall or will		

Second

Second Future.

Active Voice.

Sing. { I shall *or* will have
You shall *or* will have } been hearing
He shall *or* will have }

Plur. { We shall *or* will have
Ye shall *or* will have } been hearing
They shall *or* will have }

Passive Voice.

Singular. { I shall *or* will have
You shall *or* will have } been heard
He shall *or* will have }

Plural. { We shall *or* will have
Ye shall *or* will have } been heard
They shall *or* will have }

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Active Voice.

Singular. { Let me be
Do you *or* do you be } hearing
Do he *or* let him be }

Plural. { Let us be
Be ye *or* do ye be } hearing
Be they *or* let them be }

Passive Voice.

Sing. { Let me be
Be you *or* do you be } heard
Be he *or* let him be }

Plur. { Be we *or* let us be
Be ye *or* do ye be } heard
Be they *or* let them be }

In like manner are conjugated the other Moods with their Signs.

OPTATIVE.

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, or God grant	<i>Present.</i>	hearing or heard
	I be	
	<i>1st Perfect.</i>	
	I were	
	<i>2d Perfect.</i>	
	I have been	
	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
	I had been	
	<i>1st Future.</i>	
	I shall or will be	
	<i>2d Future.</i>	
	I shall or will have been	

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would or should have been	hearing or heard
--	------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, tho' I be, were, have or had been	hearing or heard
---	------------------------

INFINITIVE.

Present.

Active.

To be hearing

Passive.

To be heard

Perfect.

To have been hearing

To have been heard

Participle.

being hearing

been heard

Conjugation

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs, whose Perfect Tense and Participle are the same.

INDICATIVE MOOD *of the Verb to read.*

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I read	We read
You read	Ye read
He reads	They read

Imperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I was	} reading	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were

First Perfect.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
réadd	We réadd
You réadd	Ye réadd
He réadd	They réadd

Second Perfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I have	} réadd	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have

Pluperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I had	} réadd	We had
You had		Ye had
He had		They had

First Future.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I shall or will	} read	We shall or will
You shall or will		Ye shall or will
He shall or will		They shall or will

Second

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{ I shall <i>or</i> will have	} réadd
	{ You shall <i>or</i> will have	
	{ He shall <i>or</i> will have	
<i>Plur.</i>	{ We shall <i>or</i> will have	} réadd
	{ Ye shall <i>or</i> will have	
	{ They shall <i>or</i> will have	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	{ Let me	} read
	{ Read you, <i>or</i> do you	
	{ Read he, <i>or</i> let him	
<i>Plur.</i>	{ Read we, <i>or</i> let us	} read
	{ Read ye, <i>or</i> do ye	
	{ Read they, <i>or</i> let them	

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, God grant I	{ read	{ have	} réadd
	{ <i>or</i>		
	{ réadd		
		{ <i>or</i>	
		{ had	

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should read, *or* have réadd.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, <i>or</i> tho' I	{ read	{ have	} réadd
	{ <i>or</i>		
	{ réadd		
		{ <i>or</i>	
		{ had	

INFINITIVE.

Present.

to read

Future.

to read hereafter

Perfect.

to have réadd

Active Participle.

reading

Passive Participle.

réadd.

Conjugation

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb to bend.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I bend	We bend
You bend	Ye bend
He bends	They bend

Imperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I was	We were
You was	Ye were
He was	They were
bending	
bending	

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I bent	We bent
You bent	Ye bent
He bent	They bent

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I have	We have
You have	Ye have
He has	They have
bent	
bent	

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I had	We had
You had	Ye had
He had	They had
bent	
bent	

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I shall or will	We shall or will
You shall or will	Ye shall or will
He shall or will	They shall or will
bend	
bend	

Second

Second Future.

Singular. { I shall *or* will have
You shall *or* will have } bent
He shall *or* will have }

Plural. { We shall *or* will have
Ye shall *or* will have } bent
They shall *or* will have }

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. { Let me
Bend you, *or* do you } bend
Bend he, *or* let him }

Plur. { Bend we, *or* let us
Bend ye, *or* do ye } bend
Bend they, *or* let them }

O P T A T I V E.

S I G N S.

Wish, would to God, *or* God grant I bend { have
or } bent
had }

P O T E N T I A L.

S I G N S.

I may, can, could, would, *or* should bend, *or* have bent.

S U B J U N C T I V E.

S I G N S.

If, when, though I bend *or* { have
or } bent
had }

I N F I N I T I V E.

Present.

to bend

Future.

to bend hereafter

Perfect.

to have bent

Active Participle.

bending

Passive Participle.

bent.

Note,

Note, This Verb has also a moral sense, signifying *resolved*, and then it is made Passive, and conjugated with the Auxiliary Verb *be*, as, *I am bent upon it, We are fully bent, I have been absolutely bent, &c.*

In like manner are conjugated the irregular Verbs following :

Present Tense.

send
rend
spend
lend
mean

Perfect & Part.

sent
rent
spent
lent
meant

And their Compounds, mis-spend, mis-spent, un-bend, un-bent.

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb to spell.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.

I spell
You spell
He spells

Plur.

We spell
Ye spell
They spell

Imperfect.

Sing.

I was
You was
He was

} spelling

Plur.

{ We were
Ye were
They were } spelling

First Perfect.

Sing.

I spelt
You spelt
He spelt

Plur.

We spelt
Ye spelt
They spelt

Second Perfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I have	} spelt	We have	} spelt
You have		Ye have	
He has		They have	

Pluperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I had	} spelt	We had	} spelt
You had		Ye had	
He had		They had	

First Future Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I shall <i>or</i> will	} spell	We shall <i>or</i> will	} spell
You shall <i>or</i> will		Ye shall <i>or</i> will	
He shall <i>or</i> will		They shall <i>or</i> will	

Second Future Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		
I shall or will have	} spelt	
You shall or will have		
He shall or will have		
<i>Plur.</i>		
We shall or will have	} spelt	
Ye shall or will have		
They shall or will have		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>		
Let me	} spell	
Spell you, or do you		
Spell he, or let him		
<i>Plur.</i>		
Spell we, or let us	} spell	
Spell ye, or do ye		
Spell they, or let them		

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, or God grant I	spell	{ have or had }	spelt
------------------------------------	-------	-----------------------	-------

POTENTIAL

P O T E N T I A L.
S I G N S.

I may, can, might, should *or* could spell, *or* have spelt.

S U B J U N C T I V E.
S I G N S.

If, when, that, tho' I spell, *or* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{have} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{had} \end{array} \right\}$ spelt

I N F I N I T I V E.

Present.

to spell

Future.

to spell hereafter.

Perfect.

to have spelt

Active Participle.

spelling

Passive Participle.

spelt.

Note, This Verb has also another sense, signifying to found or sift, as, *he spelt for my horse, i. e. he wanted him to ride.* Also, to put a spell or charm on any thing.

In like manner are conjugated the irregular Verbs following

Present Tense.

smell

deal

dwell

feel

gild

spill

Perfect & Part.

smelt

dealt

dwelt

felt

gilt

spilt

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb to bring.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I bring	We bring
You bring	Ye bring
He brings	They bring

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I was	} bringing	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were
		} bringing

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I brought	We brought
You brought	Ye brought
He brought	They brought

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I have	} brought	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have
		} brought

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I had	} brought	We had
You had		Ye had
He had		They had
		} brought

First Future.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I shall or will	} bring	We shall or will
You shall or will		Ye shall or will
He shall or will		They shall or will
		} bring

Second

Second Future.

<i>Singular.</i>	{	I shall <i>or</i> will have	}	brought
	{	You shall <i>or</i> will have		
	{	He shall <i>or</i> will have		
<i>Plural.</i>	{	We shall <i>or</i> will have	}	brought
	{	Ye shall <i>or</i> will have		
	{	They shall <i>or</i> will have		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	Let me	}	bring
		Bring you, <i>or</i> do you		
		Bring he, <i>or</i> let him		
<i>Plur.</i>	{	Bring we, <i>or</i> let us	}	bring
		Bring ye, <i>or</i> do ye		
		Bring they, <i>or</i> let them		

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, { have }
or God grant I bring { or } brought
{ had }

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, could, would *or* should bring, *or* have brought

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, though I bring *or* $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{have} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{had} \end{array} \right\}$ brought

INFINITIVE.

Present.

to bring

Perfect.

to have brought

Future.

to bring hereafter

Active Participle.

bringing

Passive Participle.

brought.

In like manner are conjugated these irregular Verbs following :

Present Tense.

buy
seek
catch
fight
think
beseech
teach
freight
work

Perfect & Part.

bought
fought
caught
fought
thought
besought
taught
fraught
wrought or worked

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb to sweep.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.**Sing.*

I sweep
You sweep
He sweeps

Plur.

We sweep
Ye sweep
They sweep

*Imperfect Tense.**Sing.*

I was
You was
He was

} sweeping

Plur.

{ We were
Ye were
They were

} sweeping

*First Perfect.**Sing.*

I swept
You swept
He swept

Plur.

We swept
Ye swept
They swept

Second

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I have	} swept	We have	} swept
You have		Ye have	
He has		They have	

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I had	} swept	We had	} swept
You had		Ye had	
He had		They had	

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I shall <i>or</i> will	} sweep	We shall <i>or</i> will	} sweep
You shall <i>or</i> will		Ye shall <i>or</i> will	
He shall <i>or</i> will		They shall <i>or</i> will	

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		
}	I shall <i>or</i> will have	} swept
	You shall <i>or</i> will have	
	He shall <i>or</i> will have	
<i>Plur.</i>		
}	We shall <i>or</i> will have	} swept
	Ye shall <i>or</i> will have	
	They shall <i>or</i> will have	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>		
}	Let me	} sweep
	Sweep you, <i>or</i> do you	
	Sweep he, <i>or</i> let him	
<i>Plur.</i>		
}	Sweep we, <i>or</i> let us	} sweep
	Sweep ye, <i>or</i> do ye	
	Sweep they, <i>or</i> let them	

OPTATIVE.
SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, God grant I sweep	<table> <tr> <td>have</td><td rowspan="3">} swept</td></tr> <tr> <td><i>or</i></td></tr> <tr> <td>had</td></tr> </table>	have	} swept	<i>or</i>	had
have	} swept				
<i>or</i>					
had					
	POTENTIAL.				

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should sweep *or* have swept.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, though I sweep *or* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{have} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{had} \end{array} \right\}$ swept

INFINITIVE.

Present.

to sweep

Future.

to sweep hereafter.

Perfect.

to have swept.

Active Participle.

sweeping.

Passive Participle.

swept.

Note, This Verb has other senses besides brushing and cleansing; for sometimes it means to take up all the money or plate that has been wager'd, generally called Sweepstakes.

In like manner are conjugated these irregular Verbs following:

Present Tense.

weep

creep

leap

sleep

keep

Perfect & Part.

wept

crept

lept

slept

kept

Conjugation

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb to lēad.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I lēad	We lēad
You lēad	Ye lead
He lēads	They lēad

Imperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I was	} lēading	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were
		} lēading

First Perfect.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I led	We led
You led	Ye led
He led	They led

Second Perfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I have	} led	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have
		} led

Pluperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I had	} led	We had
You had		Ye had
He had		They had
		} led

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I shall or will	} lēad	We shall or will
You shall or will		Ye shall or will
He shall or will		They shall or will
		} lēad

Second

Second Future.

Sing. { I shall or will have
You shall or will have } led
He shall or will have }

Plur. { We shall or will have
Ye shall or will have } led
They shall or will have }

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Let me
Lead you or do you } lēad { Lead we or let us
Lead he or let him } { Lead ye or do ye } lēad
Lead they or let them }

O P T A T I V E.

S I G N S.

Wish, would to God, or God grant, I lead, or { have } led
or { or }
had }

P O T E N T I A L.

S I G N S.

I may, can, might, would or should lead, or have led.

S U B J U N C T I V E.

S I G N S.

If, when, that, or tho' I { lead } { have } led
or { or }
led { had }

I N F I N I T I V E.

Present.

to lēad

Future.

to lēad hereafter

Perfect.

to have led

Active Participle.

lēading

Passive Participle.

lēd.

Note.

Note, The Passive Participle of the Verb *to read*, might as well have been short like this, as *réd*, which accent, and the connexion of speech, would have sufficiently distinguished it from *red*, the colour, if custom had so thought fit to establish it.

In like manner are conjugated the irregular Verbs following.

Present Tense.

Perfect & Part.

feed	fed
bleed	bled
breed	bred
speed	sped

Conjugation of the Regular Verb *to BIND*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I bind	We bind
You bind	Ye bind
He binds	They bind

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I was	} binding	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were
		} binding

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I bound	We bound
You bound	Ye bound
He bound	They bound

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I have	} bound	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have
		} bound

Pla-

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I had	} bound	We had
You had		Ye had
He had		They had

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I shall <i>or</i> will	} bind	We shall <i>or</i> will
You shall <i>or</i> will		Ye shall <i>or</i> will
He shall <i>or</i> will		They shall <i>or</i> will

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{ I shall <i>or</i> will have You shall <i>or</i> will have He shall <i>or</i> will have }	bound
<i>Plur.</i>	{ We shall <i>or</i> will have Ye shall <i>or</i> will have They shall <i>or</i> will have }	bound

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	{ Let me Bind you <i>or</i> do you Bind he <i>or</i> let him }	bind
<i>Plur.</i>	{ Bind we <i>or</i> let us Bind ye <i>or</i> do ye Bind they <i>or</i> let them }	bind

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, <i>or</i> God grant I bind	{ have <i>or</i> had }	bound
--	------------------------------	-------

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should bind, *or* have bound

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.
SIGNS.

If, when, that, though I bind or $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{have} \\ \text{cr} \\ \text{had} \end{array} \right\}$ bound

INFINITIVE.

Present.

to bind

Future.

to bind hereafter

Perfect.

to have bound

Active Participle.

binding

Passive Participle.

bound.

Note, This Verb has also a metaphorical sense, and signifies not only to bind or tie up any thing with a cord, &c. but also to bind an Apprentice, or lay one person under an absolute Obligation to another.

In like manner are conjugated the Irregular Verbs following :

Present Tense.

grind
wind
find

Perfect & Part.

ground
wound
found

And their Compounds un-wind unwound, over-wind over-wound.

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *to* MAKE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.

I make
You make
He makes

Plur.

We make
Ye make
They make

T

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I was	} making	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were
		} making

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I made	We made
You made	Ye made
He made	They made

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I have	} made	We have	} made
You have		Ye have	
He has		They have	

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I had	} made	We had	} made
You had		Ye had	
He had		They had	

First Future.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
I shall <i>or</i> will	} make	We shall <i>or</i> will	} make
You shall <i>or</i> will		Ye shall <i>or</i> will	
He shall <i>or</i> will		They shall <i>or</i> will	

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{ I shall <i>or</i> will have You shall <i>or</i> will have He shall <i>or</i> will have }	made
<i>Plur.</i>	{ We shall <i>or</i> will have Ye shall <i>or</i> will have They shall <i>or</i> will have }	made

IMPERATIVE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular. { Let me
Make you *or* do you } make
Make he *or* let him }
Plural. { Make we *or* let us
Make ye *or* do ye } make
Make they *or* let them }

OPTATIVE. SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, *or* God grant I make { have
or } made
had }

POTENTIAL. SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should make *or* have made

SUBJUNCTIVE. SIGNS.

If, when, that, tho' I make, *or* { have
or } made
had }

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>
to make	to make hereafter
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Active Participle</i>
to have made	making
<i>Passive Participle.</i>	
made	

Note, This Verb has also a metaphorical sense, and signifies not only to make, form, shape, or manufacture any thing, but also to *do* or act, or cause any thing to be done or acted.

In like manner are conjugated these irregular Verbs following.

T 3

pay

*Present Tense.**Perfect & Part.*

pay

paid

stay

staid

say

said

And their Compounds unsay unsaid, gainsay gainsaid,
underpay underpaid, overpay overpaid, overstay,
overstaid.

*First List of Irregular Verbs, conjugated as above,
whose Perfect Tense and Passive Participle are the
same.*

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
abide	abode	meet	met
shoe	shod	fit	set
fell	fold	fetch	fetched
tell	told	stretch	stretched
hold	held	dream	dreamt
behold	beheld	mean	meant
heave	heft	burn	burnt
leave	left	lose	lost
bereave	bereft	spin	spun
stand	stood	wring	wrung
understand	understood	tread	trodden

Conjugation of IRREGULAR VERBS,

Whose *Present Tense*, *Perfect Tense*, and *Passive Participle* being distinct, differ widely from the common rule of inflection,

*Present.**Perfect.**Participle.*

strive

strove

striven

INDICATIVE MOOD *of the Verb to strive.*

*Present Tense.**Singular.**Plural.*

I strive

We strive

You strive

Ye strive

He strives

They strive

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

I was	} striving	We were	} striving
You was		Ye were	
He was		They were	

First Perfect.

Sing.

Plur.

I strove	We strove
You strove	Ye strove
He strove	They strove

Second Perfect.

Sing.

Plur.

I have	} striven	We have	} striven
You have		Ye have	
He has		They have	

Pluperfect.

Sing.

Plur.

I had	} striven	We had	} striven
You had		Ye had	
He had		They had	

First Future.

Sing.

Plur.

I shall or will	} strive	We shall or will	} strive
You shall or will		Ye shall or will	
He shall or will		They shall or will	

Second Future.

Sing. { I shall or will have
You shall or will have } striven
He shall or will have

Plur. { We shall or will have
Ye shall or will have } striven
They shall or will have

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	{ Let me	
<i>Sing.</i>	{ Strive you <i>or</i> do you	} strive
	{ Strive he <i>or</i> let him	
	{ Strive we <i>or</i> let us	} strive
<i>Plur.</i>	{ Strive ye <i>or</i> do ye	
	{ Strive they <i>or</i> let them	

OPTATIVE MOOD.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, { strive } or { have }
or God grant I { strove } or { had } striven

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should strive, *or* have striven

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, though, I { strive } or { have }
{ strove } or { had } striven

INFINITIVE.

Present.

to strive

Future.

to strive hereafter

Perfect.

to have striven

Active Participle.

striving

Passive Participle.

striven.

In like manner are conjugated these irregular Verbs following :

Present.

drive

thrive

Perfect.

drove

throve

Participle.

driven

thriven

Conjugation

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb to throw.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I throw	We throw
You throw	Ye throw
He throws	They throw

Imperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I was	} throwing	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were
		} throwing

First Perfect.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I threw	We threw
You threw	Ye threw
He threw	They threw

Second Perfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I have	} thrown	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have
		} thrown

Pluperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I had	} thrown	We had
You had		Ye had
He had		They had
		} thrown

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I shall or will	} throw	We shall or will
You shall or will		Ye shall or will
He shall or will		They shall or will
		} throw

Second

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I shall <i>or</i> will have	}	thrown
		You shall <i>or</i> will have		
		He shall <i>or</i> will have		
<i>Plur.</i>	{	We shall <i>or</i> will have	}	thrown
		Ye shall <i>or</i> will have		
		They shall <i>or</i> will have		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	Let me	}	throw
		Throw you <i>or</i> do you		
		Throw he <i>or</i> let him		
<i>Plur.</i>	{	Throw we <i>or</i> let us	}	throw
		Throw ye <i>or</i> do ye		
		Throw they <i>or</i> let them		

O P T A T I V E.

S I G N S,

Wish, would to God, <i>or</i> God grant, I	{	throw	}	<i>or</i>	{	have	}	thrown
		<i>or</i>				<i>or</i>		
		threw				had		

P O T E N T I A L.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should throw *or* have thrown

S U B J U N C T I V E.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, <i>or</i> tho' I	{	throw	}	{	have	}	thrown
		<i>or</i>			<i>or</i>		
		threw			had		

I N F I N I T I V E.

Present.

to throw

Future.

to throw hereafter

Perfect.

to have thrown

Active Participle.

throwing

Passive Participle.

thrown.

In

In like manner are conjugated the irregular Verbs following.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
blow	blew	blown
fly	flew	flown
grow	grew	grown
know	knew	known

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *to* SWEAR.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I swear	We swear
You swear	Ye swear
He swears	They swear

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I was	} swearing	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I swore	We swore
You swore	Ye swore
He swore	They swore

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I have	} sworn	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I had	} sworn	We had
You had		Ye had
He had		They had

First

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I shall <i>or</i> will	} swear	We shall <i>or</i> will
You shall <i>or</i> will		Ye shall <i>or</i> will
He shall <i>or</i> will		They shall <i>or</i> will

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		
I shall <i>or</i> will have	} sworn	
You shall <i>or</i> will have		
He shall <i>or</i> will have		
<i>Plur.</i>		
We shall <i>or</i> will have	} sworn	
Ye shall <i>or</i> will have		
They shall <i>or</i> will have		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>		
Let me	} swear	
Swear you <i>or</i> do you		
Swear he <i>or</i> let him		
<i>Plur.</i>		
Swear we <i>or</i> let us	} swear	
Swear ye <i>or</i> do ye		
Swear they <i>or</i> let them		

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God,	} swear	have	} sworn
<i>or</i> God grant I		<i>or</i>	
		swore	
		had	

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should swear, *or* have sworn.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, tho' I	} swear	have	} sworn
		<i>or</i>	
		swore	
		had	

INFINITIVE.

INFINITIVE.

Present.

to swear

Future.

to swear hereafter.

Perfect.

to have sworn

Active Participle.

swearing

Passive Participle.

sworn.

In like manner are conjugated the irregular Verbs following

Present Tense.

bear

shear

tear

wear

Perfect.

bore

shore

tore

wore

Participle.

borne

shorn

torn

worn

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb to sing.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.

I sing

You sing

He sings

Plur.

We sing

Ye sing

They sing

Imperfect.

Sing.

I was

You was

He was

finging

Plur.

We were

Ye were

They were

finging

First Perfect.

Sing.

I sang

You sang

He sang

Plur.

We sang

Ye sang

They sang

Second

Second Perfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I have	} fung	We have	} fung
You have		Ye have	
He has		They have	

Pluperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I had	} sung	We had	} sung
You had		Ye had	
He had		They had	

First Future Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I shall <i>or</i> will	} sing	We shall <i>or</i> will	} sing
You shall <i>or</i> will		Ye shall <i>or</i> will	
He shall <i>or</i> will		They shall <i>or</i> will	

Second Future Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		
I shall or will have	} fung	
You shall or will have		
He shall or will have		
<i>Plur.</i>		
We shall or will have	} fung	
Ye shall or will have		
They shall or will have		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>		
Let me	} sing	
Sing you, or 'do you		
Sing he, or let him		
<i>Plur.</i>		
Sing we, or let us	} sing	
Sing ye, or do ye		
Sing they, or let them		

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God or God grant I	} sing or fang	} have or had	} fung

POTENTIAL

POTENTIAL.
SIGNS.

I may, can, might, should *or* could sing, *or* have sung.

SUBJUNCTIVE.
SIGNS.

If, when, that, tho' I $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{sing} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{sung} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{have} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{had} \end{array} \right\} \text{sung}$

INFINITIVE.

Present.
to sing

Future.
to sing hereafter.

Perfect.
to have sung.

Active Participle.
singing.

Passive Participle.
sung.

In like manner are conjugated these irregular Verbs following :

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
cling	clang	clung
fling	flang	flung
ring	rang	rung
fling	flang	flung
spring	sprang	sprung
swing	swang	swung

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb to drink.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.
I drink
You drink
He drinks

Plur.
We drink
Ye drink
They drink

U

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I was	} drinking	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were
		} drinking

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I drank	We drank
You drank	Ye drank
He drank	They drank

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I have	} drunk	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have
		} drunk

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I had	} drunk	We had
You had		Ye had
He had		They had
		} drunk

First Future.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
I shall or will	} drink	We shall or will
You shall or will		Ye shall or will
He shall or will		They shall or will
		} drink

Second Future.

<i>Singular.</i>		
{	I shall or will have	} drunk
	You shall or will have	
	He shall or will have	
<i>Plural.</i>		
{	We shall or will have	} drunk
	Ye shall or will have	
	They shall or will have	

IMPERATIVE

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. { Let me
Drink you, *or* do you } drink
 { Drink he, *or* let him }
Plur. { Drink we, *or* let us } drink
 { Drink ye, *or* do ye }
 { Drink they, *or* let them }

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, } drink { have }
 { *or* } { *or* } drunk
or God grant I } drank { had }

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, could, would *or* should drink, *or* have drunk.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, though I } drink { have }
 { *or* } { *or* } drunk
 { drank { had }

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Future.</i>
to drink		to drink hereafter
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Active Participle.</i>
to have drunk		drinking
	<i>Passive Participle.</i>	
	drunk.	

Note, Formerly the Perfect or Past Tense of *drink* was *drunken*, and of *sink*, *sunken*, but these last are become obsolete.

In like manner are conjugated the irregular Verbs following :

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
sink	sank	sunk
stink	stank	stunk
shrink	shrank	shrunken
	U 3	<i>Conjugation</i>

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb to hide.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I hide	We hide
You hide	Ye hide
He hides	They hide

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I was	} hiding	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I hid	We hid
You hid	Ye hid
He hid	They hid

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I have	} hidden	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I had	} hidden	We had
You had		Ye had
He had		They had

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I shall or will	} hide	We shall or will
You shall or will		Ye shall or will
He shall or will		They shall or will

Second

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I shall <i>or</i> will have	}	hidden
		You shall <i>or</i> will have		<i>or</i>
		He shall <i>or</i> will have		hid
<i>Plur.</i>	{	We shall <i>or</i> will have	}	hidden
		Ye shall <i>or</i> will have		<i>or</i>
		They shall <i>or</i> will have		hid

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	Let me	}	
		Hide you, <i>or</i> do you		hide
		Hide he, <i>or</i> let him		
<i>Plur.</i>	{	Hide we, <i>or</i> let us	}	
		Hide ye, <i>or</i> do ye		hide
		Hide they, <i>or</i> let them		

OPTATIVE.
SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, God grant I	{	hide	{	have	}	hidden
		<i>or</i>		<i>or</i>		<i>or</i>
		hid		had		hid

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would <i>or</i> should hide <i>or</i> have	}	hidden
		<i>or</i>
		hid

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, though I	{	hide	{	have	}	hidden
		<i>or</i>		<i>or</i>		<i>or</i>
		hid		had		hid

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
to hide	to hide hereafter
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Active Participle.</i>
to have hidden	hiding
	<i>Passive Participle.</i>
	hidden <i>or</i> hid.

In like manner are conjugated these irregular Verbs following :

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
chide	chid	chidden or chid
ride	rode	ridden or rid
slide	slid	slidden or slid

And their Compounds, over-chide, over-ride, out-slide.

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb to take.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I take	We take
You take	Ye take
He takes	They take

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I was	} taking	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I took	We took
You took	Ye took
He took	They took

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I have	} taken	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have

Pluperfect.

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
I had	}	taken	We had	}	taken
You had			Ye had		
He had			They had		

First Future.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
I shall <i>or</i> will	}	take	We shall <i>or</i> will	}	take
You shall <i>or</i> will			Ye shall <i>or</i> will		
He shall <i>or</i> will			They shall <i>or</i> will		

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>					
Sing.	{	I shall <i>or</i> will have	}	taken	
		You shall <i>or</i> will have			
		He shall <i>or</i> will have			
<i>Plur.</i>					
Plur.	{	We shall <i>or</i> will have	}	taken	
		Ye shall <i>or</i> will have			
		They shall <i>or</i> will have			

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Singular.</i>					
Singular.	{	Let me	}	take	
		Take you <i>or</i> do you			
		Take he <i>or</i> let him			
<i>Plural.</i>					
Plural.	{	Take we <i>or</i> let us	}	take	
		Take ye <i>or</i> do ye			
		Take they <i>or</i> let them			

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, <i>or</i> God grant, I	{	take	}	<i>or</i>	{	have	}	taken
		<i>or</i>				<i>or</i>		
		took				had		

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should take *or* have taken.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.
SIGNS.

If, when, that, *or* tho' I } take { have } taken
 } *or* { *or* }
 } took { had } taken

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
to take	to take hereafter
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Active Participle.</i>
to have taken	taking
<i>Passive Participle.</i>	
taken.	

In like manner are conjugated the irregular Verbs following.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
shake	shook	shaken
forfake	forfook	forfaken
mistake	mistook	mistaken
retake	retook	retaken
undertake	undertook	undertaken

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *to* SEE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I see	We see
You see	Ye see
He sees	They see

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I was	We were
You was	Ye were
He was	They were

seeing seeing

First

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I saw	We saw
You saw	Ye saw
He saw	They saw

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I have	We have
You have	Ye have
He has	They have

seen

seen

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I had	We had
You had	Ye had
He had	They had

seen

seen

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
I shall or will	We shall or will
You shall or will	Ye shall or will
He shall or will	They shall or will

see

see

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	
I shall or will have	
You shall or will have	seen
He shall or will have	

seen

<i>Plur.</i>	
We shall or will have	
Ye shall or will have	seen
They shall or will have	

seen

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	
Let me	
See you or do you	see
See he or let him	

see

<i>Plur.</i>	
See we or let us	
See ye or do ye	see
See they or let them	

see

OPTATIVE

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, } see { have }
 or God grant I } or { or } seen
 } saw { had }

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should see, *or* have seen.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, tho' I } see { have }
 or } or { or } seen
 } saw { had }

INFINITIVE.

Present.

to see

Future.

to see hereafter.

Perfect.

to have seen

Active Participle.

seeing

Passive Participle.

seen.

Note, The first Perfect Tense of this Verb *to see* is the same as the Present Tense of the Verb *to saw*, sever or cut asunder, both in the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, and can only be distinguished by Connexion of Speech.

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb to go.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.

I go

You go

He goes

Plur.

We go

Ye go

They go

Imperfect

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I was	} going	We were
You was		Ye were
He was		They were

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
I went	We went
You went	Ye went
He went	They went

Second Perfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I have	} gone	We have
You have		Ye have
He has		They have

Pluperfect Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I had	} gone	We had
You had		Ye had
He had		They had

First Future Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
I shall or will	} go	We shall or will
You shall or will		Ye shall or will
He shall or will		They shall or will

Second Future Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		
I shall or will have	} gone	
You shall or will have		
He shall or will have		
<i>Plur.</i>		
We shall or will have	} gone	
Ye shall or will have		
They shall or will have		

IMPERATIVE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. { Let me
Go you, *or* do you } go
Go he, *or* let him }

Plur. { Go we, *or* let us
Go ye, *or* do ye } go
Go they, *or* let them }

OPTATIVE.
SIGNS.

Wish, would to God *or* God grant I { go
or } { have } gone
went { or } had }

POTENTIAL.
SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would *or* should go, *or* have gone.

SUBJUNCTIVE.
SIGNS.

If, when, that, though, I { go
or } or { have } gone
went { or } had }

INFINITIVE.

Present.

to go

Future.

to go hereafter

Perfect.

to have gone

Active Participle.

going

Passive Participle.

gone, *for* go on.

Note, This Verb may also be expressed *passively*, as,
I am gone, *for I go*; *I have been*, *for I went*; *I will be gone*, *for I will go*, &c.

Secoad

Second List of IRREGULAR VERBS,

Conjugated as above, having the *Present Tense*, *Perfect Tense*, and *Participle* distinct or different.

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
cleave	clove	cloven
weave	wove	woven
get	got	gotten
forget	forgot	forgotten
lie	lay	lain
slay	flew	slain
fall	fell	fallen
swell	swelled	swollen
steal	stole	stolen
run	ran	run
do	did	done
win	won	won
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
speak	spoke	spoken
swim	swam	swum
come	came	come
choose	chose	chosen
freeze	froze	frozen
write	wrote	written
smite	smote	smitten
bite	bit	bitten
spit	spat	spitten
eat	ate	eaten
beat	beat	beaten
shew	shewed	shewn
strow	strewed	strown
mow	mowed	mown
sow	sowed	sown
snow	snowed	snown

Note, The following Verbs are of the same sort, but don't run chiming.

X

Present

Present Tense. *Perfect.* *Participle.*

crow	crew	crowed
fow	few	fowed
dare	durst	dared
hew	hewed	hewn
help	helped	helpt
gird	girt	girded
geld	gelt	gelded
learn	learnt	learned
chaw	chew	chewed
draw	drew	drawn
rise	rose	risen
shine	shone	shined
hang	hung	hanged
dig	dug	digged

Note, The following Verbs admit of no Reflection at all, but are exactly the same in the Present Tense, Perfect Tense, and Participle, *viz.*

cast	shut	knit	let
cost	thrust	slit	bid
cut	hurt	spit	shed
put	hit	split	spread

And their Compounds

forecast	undercost	unknit
overcast	overcost	unsplit
roughcast	uncut	bespread
unlet	unshut	unspread
outbid	unhurt	overspread, &c.

Formerly the Past Tense or Participle of *let* was *letten*, of *bid*, *bidden*, of *spread*, *spreaden*, &c.

Of Reflected Verbs.

AS to *Reflected Verbs*, they are nothing else but such whose action returns upon the agent that produces it, which reflection of the action in most modern tongues is marked thro' all their Persons and Tenses, with their respective Pronouns Conjunctive annexed. And tho' the English sometime make use of these sort of Verbs, yet it is never after their manner, since it would be the most egregious nonsense to say,

I please me	I see me
I flatter me	I fit me
I instruct me	I laugh me
I recollect me	I walk me, &c.

But if it could bear at all, it must be this way,

I fatigue	} myself	I hurt	} myself
I please		I enjoy	
I flatter		I love	
I instruct		I hate	
I recollect		I use	

I know	} myself
I acknowledge	
I confess	
I trouble	
I abuse	
I pride	

I see myself in a glass.
 I sit myself down.
 I laugh myself hoarse.
 I walk myself tired, &c.

And so through all Moods and Tenses, according to the following Example.

Conjugation of the Reflective Verb to flatter one's self.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Sing.*

I flatter myself
You flatter yourself
He flatters himself
She flatters herself

Plur.

We flatter ourselves
Ye flatter yourselves
They flatter themselves

*Imperfect.**Sing.*

{ I was flattering myself
You was flattering yourself
He was flattering himself
She was flattering herself

Plur.

{ We were flattering ourselves
Ye were flattering yourselves
They were flattering themselves

*First Perfect.**Singular.*

I flatter'd myself
You flatter'd yourself
He flatter'd himself
She flatter'd herself

Plural.

We flatter'd ourselves
Ye flatter'd yourselves
They flatter'd themselves

*Second Perfect.**Sing.*

{ I have flatter'd myself
You have flatter'd yourself
He has flatter'd himself
She has flatter'd herself

Plur.

{ We have flatter'd ourselves
Ye have flatter'd yourselves
They have flatter'd themselves

Plur.

Pluperfect.

Sing. { I had flatter'd myself
You had flattered yourself
He had flattered himself
She had flattered herself
Plur. { We had flatter'd ourselves
Ye had flatter'd yourselves
They had flatter'd themselves

First Future.

Sing. { I shall *or* will flatter myself
You shall *or* will flatter yourself
He shall *or* will flatter himself
She shall *or* will flatter herself
Plur. { We shall *or* will flatter ourselves
Ye shall *or* will flatter yourselves
They shall *or* will flatter themselves

Second Future.

Sing. { I shall *or* will have flatter'd myself
You shall *or* will have flatter'd yourself
He shall *or* will have flatter'd himself
She shall *or* will have flatter'd herself
Plur. { We shall *or* will have flatter'd ourselves
Ye shall *or* will have flatter'd yourselves
They shall *or* will have flatter'd themselves

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. { Let me flatter myself
Flatter yourself
Let him flatter himself
Let her flatter herself
Plur. { Let us flatter ourselves
Flatter yourselves
Let them flatter themselves

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would }
to God, *or* } I flatter, have *or* had flatter'd myself
God grant }

Of Impersonal Verbs.

THERE are two sorts of *Impersonal Verbs*, the first are those which are absolutely impersonal in their own nature, *i. e.* of no sex at all, and which are therefore conjugated in the third person singular, through all Moods and Tenses, by the Particle *it*.

The second are those which are of themselves personal, but are impersonally used, and have joined to them generally the third person plural of the personal pronoun *they*, both which sorts are indifferently applied to persons or things, expressing actions either *natural* or *moral*.

Conjugation of Neutral Impersonals in the singular Number, expressing natural Actions, as to rain, &c.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

it { rains
hails
snows

it { freezes
thaws
thunders, &c.

Pluperfect.

it was { raining
hailing
snowing, &c.

First Perfect.

it { rained
hailed
snowed &c.

Second Perfect.

it has { rained
hailed
snowed, &c.

Pluperfect.

it had { rained
hailed
snowed, &c.

First Future.

it will { rain
hail
snow, &c.

Second Future.

it will have { rained
hailed
snowed, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Let it { rain
hail
snow, &c.

OPTATIVE MOOD.

SIGNS-

Wish, would to God, { rain
or God grant it may { hail
snow, &c. { have
or had } rained, &c.

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

It may, can, might, { rain
would, could or should { hail
snow, &c. } or have rained, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, tho' it { rain
{ hail
snow, &c. { have
or had } rained, &c.

Conjugation of Active and Neutral Impersonals in the singular Number, expressing moral Actions, to say, &c.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

it { says
reports
relates
affirms
asserts
mentions
hints

it { seems
means
refers
happens
suffices
behoves
becomes

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

it was { saying
reporting
relating, &c.

First Perfect.

it { said
reported
related, &c.

Second Perfect.

it has { said
reported
related, &c.

Pluperfect.

it had { said
reported
related, &c.

Future.

It shall or will { say
report
relate, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Let it { say
report
relate, &c.

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, or God grant it may { say
report
relate, &c.

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

It may, can, might, would, &c. { say
report
relate } or have said, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, though, it { say
report
relate, &c. } { have
or
had } said,
&c.

Conjugation

Conjugation of Active and Neutral Impersonals in the Plural Number, expressing moral Actions, to report, &c.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

they { say
report
relate, &c.

Imperfect.

they were { saying
reporting
relating, &c.

First Perfect.

they { said
reported
related, &c.

Second Perfect.

they have { said
reported
related, &c.

Pluperfect.

they had { said
reported
related

Future.

they shall or will { say
report
relate, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Let them { say
report
relate, &c.

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God or God grant they may { say
report
relate, &c.

POTENTIAL.

They may, can, might, would or should { say
report
relate, &c. } or have said, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

If, when, that, tho' they { say
report
relate, &c. } { have
or
had } said, &c.
Conjuga-

Conjugation of Passive Impersonals, both in the Singular and Plural Number, expressing moral Actions, to be needful, &c.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

It is *or* they are { needful
necessary
convenient, &c.

Perfect.

It was *or* they were { needful
necessary
convenient, &c.

Pluperfect Tense.

It has been *or* they have been { needful
necessary
convenient, &c.

Future Tense.

It *or* they shall *or* will be { needful
necessary
convenient, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Let it be, *or* let them be { needful
necessary
convenient, &c.

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, *or* God
grant it may be, *or* they may be

{

needful
necessary
convenient, &c.

POTENTIAL.

S I G N S.

It *or* they may, can, } needful { have } needful, &c.
could, would *or* } necessary { been }
should be } convenient { }

SUBJUNCTIVE.

S U B J U N C T I V E.

S I G N S.

If, when, } needful { have }
 that *or* though } necessary { *or* had } needful, &c.
 it *or* they were } convenient, &c. { been }

In like manner may be conjugated the third Persons, either Singular or Plural of most of the Verbs, both regular and irregular, thro' every Mood and Tense.

The following Impersonals are expressed by the Adverb *there*.

Singular.

there { is
was
has been
had been
shall be
will be

Plural.

there { are
were
have been
had been
shall be
will be

Praxes on Verbs Imperfonal.

On Verbs expressing natural Actions.

Sing.

it { burns
cools
heats
hardens

Plur.

they { burn the paper
cool the heaters
heat the oven
harden the linen

On Verbs expressing moral Actions.

Singular.

it { behoves us to be wise betimes.
seems to be reasonable we should be so.
becomes every one to be just.
suffices to do our duty when call'd upon.

Plural.

Plural.

they { have good laws in England, but
don't always put them in execution.
talk of peace.
hold counfels.

Speaking of men, women, flowers, trees, animals, &c. we say of them alike,

they are { healthy
lusty
strong
tall
short

they are { fine
coarse
handsome
ordinary

Besides the aforegoing, there is another manner of expressing these Impersonal Verbs in English, which Foreigners ought to be acquainted with, and that is by these words *men* and *people*, which seem to be put instead of the first person plural of the personal Pronoun *we*.

E X A M P L E.

men { know these things very well.
or { have not all they wish for.
people { tell a great many lies.
talk of things they don't understand.
lose many things for want of asking.

Note, That the following impersonal *one* is sometimes by us used after the manner of the French, instead of *we*, before Verbs of the singular Number.

one { loses many things for want of asking.
is not always in equal circumstances.
can't tell how things may turn out
can't always tell one's own mind.

But this way is rather foister'd in by the people of that nation than natural to the true genius of the English Language, for we oftener and more properly say, *we*, turning the Verb to the Plural Number, as, *We lose*, &c. *We can't always tell our own minds*, &c.

*Conjugation of Verbs Active in all their Significations,
either as Affirmative, Negative, or Interrogative;
and also with an Interrogation and Negative together.*

INDICATIVE MOOD *of the Verb to hear.*

Present Tense.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I do	} hear	We do	} hear
I do not		We do not	
Do I?		Do we?	
Do I not?		Do we not?	

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I was	} hearing	We were	} hearing
I was not		We were not	
Was I?		Were we?	
Was I not?		Were we not?	

First Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I heard <i>or</i> did	} hear	We heard <i>or</i> did	} hear
I did not		We did not	
Did I?		Did we?	
Did I not?		Did we not?	

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I have	} heard	We have	} heard
I have not		We have not	
Have I?		Have we?	
Have I not?		Have we not?	

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I had	} heard	We had	} heard
I had not		We had not	
Had I?		Had we?	
Had I not?		Had we not?	

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I shall <i>or</i> will	}	hear
		I shall <i>or</i> will not		
		Shall I <i>or</i> will I ?		
		Shall I <i>or</i> will I not ?		
<i>Plur.</i>	{	We shall <i>or</i> will	}	hear
		We shall <i>or</i> will not		
		Shall <i>or</i> will we ?		
		Shall <i>or</i> will we not ?		

Second Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	{	I shall have	}	heard
		I shall not have		
		Shall I have ?		
		Shall I not have ?		
<i>Plur.</i>	{	We shall have	}	heard
		We shall not have		
		Shall we have ?		
		Shall we not have ?		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.
 Let me hear
 Let me not hear
 Hear you ?
 Hear you not ?
 Let him hear
 Let him not hear

Plur.
 Let us hear
 Let us not hear
 Hear ye ?
 Hear ye not ?
 Let them hear
 Let them not hear

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

Wish, would to God, or God grant	{	I hear	{	have	}	heard
		I hear not		or had not		

POTENTIAL.

SIGNS.

I may, can, might, would <i>or</i> should	{	hear	{	have heard
		not hear		not have heard

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SIGNS.

If, when, that, tho' } I hear { have }
 } I hear not { or }
 } { had not } heard

INFINITIVE.

Present.

{ to hear
 { not to hear

Future.

{ to hear hereafter
 { not to hear hereafter

Perfect.

{ to have heard
 { not to have heard

Active Participle.

{ hearing
 { not hearing

Passive Participle.

{ heard
 { not heard

In like manner are the Negatives and Interrogatives conjugated throughout the *Passive Verbs*.

INDICATIVE MOOD *of the Verb* to be well.*Present Tense.**Sing.*

I am
 I am not
 Am I?
 Am I not? } well

Plur.

We are
 We are not
 Are we?
 Are we not? } well

*First Perfect.**Sing.*

I was
 I was not
 Was I?
 Was I not? } well

Plur.

We were
 We were not
 Were we?
 Were we not? } well

Second

Second Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I have been	} well	We have been	} well
I have not been		We have not been	
Have I been ?		Have we not ?	
Have I not been ?		Have we not been ?	

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
I had been	} well	We had been	} well
I had not been		We had not been	
Had I been ?		Had we been ?	
Had I not been ?		Had we not been ?	

First Future.

<i>Sing.</i>		
I shall or will be	} well	
I shall not or will not be		
Shall I be or will I be ?		
Shall I not be or will I not be ?		
<i>Plur.</i>		
We shall or will be	} well	
We shall not or will not be		
Shall we be or will we be ?		
Shall we not be or will we not be ?		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Let me be well	Let us be well
Let me not be well	Let us not be well
Be you well ?	Be ye well ?
Be you not well ?	Be ye not well ?
Let him be well	Let them be well
Let him not be well	Let them not be well

OPTATIVE.

SIGNS.

With, would to God,	I am well	have been well
or God grant	I am not well	have not been well

I may
or
I might, &c. } have *no* Denial

I can
or
I could, &c. } have *no* Resistance.

I shall
or
I should, &c. } have *no* Security, &c.

But when a Question is asked, the above Nouns need not be repeated, but only understood by the Negative *none*, as,

Q. Have you *any* friends ?

A. None ; or, I have none, *for* no one.

The above may become Interrogations by putting the Pronoun after the first Verb, as,

Have I *no* Parents ?

Have I *no* inclination ?

May I
or
Might I } have *no* Denial ?

Can I
or
Could I } have *no* Resistance ?

Shall I
or
Should I } have *no* charity ? &c.

Remarks

*Remarks on Verbs, and their exact Formations,
Their Tenses, Moods, and different Acceptations.*

On the Indicative Mood.

THE PRESENT Tense of all Verbs, both regular and irregular, is formed from the Infinitive Mood, by leaving out the particle *to*, and putting a personal pronoun in its place, as, instead of *to love*, say, *I love*, &c.

The IMPERFECT Tense is so called, as well from its time, as the irregular manner of its formation, which is of the Perfect or Past Tense of the Passive Auxiliary Verb *be*, making *was* or *were*, and the Active Participle of the proper Verb to which it is joined, as, *I was hearing*, *we were seeing*, &c.

The FIRST PERFECT, or FIRST PAST Tense, may be called definite, because it is perfectly past, and is formed of the Present Tense of the Indicative Mood of the Verb (if regular) by adding *d* or *ed*, as, *loved*, *acted*, &c. or by joining the Past Tense of the Auxiliary Verb *do*, which is *did*, to the Present Tense of the proper Verb, as, *I did love*, *I did act*, &c.

The SECOND PERFECT, or SECOND PAST Tense, is formed of the Present of the Auxiliary Verb *have*, and the Participle of the Verb treated of, whether regular or irregular, to which it is always joined, as, *I have loved*, *I have slain*, &c.

The PLUPERFECT, or *more perfect* Tense, is formed exactly the same way, only from the Perfect or Past Tense of the same Auxiliary Verb, as, *I had acted*, *I had drawn*, &c.

The FIRST FUTURE is formed of the Present Tense of the helping Verbs, *shall* and *will*, and the Present of the Verb treated of, as, *I shall or will love*, *we shall or will love*, &c.

The SECOND FUTURE is formed the same way, with the addition of the auxiliary Verb *have* to the Passive Participle of the proper Verb, whether regular or irregular, as, *I shall or will have loved*, &c.

Note,

Note, The Present Time is often used instead of the Future, as, *I go away to-morrow*, i. e. *shall go*, &c. *the ship falls down*, i. e. *sails*, for *will sail next tide*; *he does not come to-morrow*, i. e. *he will not come*, either on account of some impediment, or that he does not chuse it.

SHALL is used in the first Person to express the speaker's disposition with respect to the event of things, as, *I shall be glad to merit by my service the asylum you are pleased to grant me*; also to express what the speaker apprehends will be his condition from the circumstances in which he feels himself at present, as in that song where it is said,

*Merrily, merrily shall I live now
Under the blossom that hangs on the bow.*

Also observe, we propose questions in the first Persons of both numbers in *shall*, but not in *will*, as, *shall I or shall we do so and so?* but never, *will I or will we*, &c. for although we may be in doubt about events, or about the orders or determinations of others, we can never doubt or want to be informed about our own will and inclination.

In the second or third Persons, whether singular or plural, *shall* represents the speaker as in some degree of authority, eminence, or power, over the person addressed, as when we say, *you shall, he shall, ye shall, or they shall*, for this is a stile in which we command, promise, threaten, or doom the person spoken to.

SHALL is sometimes designedly omitted (though understood) after these Subjunctives, *if, when, though*, denoting future action, as, *if they (shall) come to-morrow*; *when we (shall) have done it*; *though they (shall) attempt it*.

SHOULD is the Perfect or Past Tense of *shall*; it is a conditional sign, but generally denotes the duty and necessity of doing a thing in the same manner as *ought*, as, *you should or ought to do it*; *they should not lose time*; *you should have learnt your lesson*; and also refers to time present, as, *I should be glad to hear such news every hour*.

WILL

WILL is called by some the determinative Mood; it occurs both as a Verb and a Sign; when used as a Verb, it signifies either to decree, determine, resolve, order, or chuse, and has a Present and Past, as well as Future Tense, viz.

Necessity and choice

Approach not me, and what I will is fate.

MILTON.

Trembling he stood before the golden wain,

And bow'd to dust the honours of his mane:

When, strange to tell! (so Juno will'd) he broke

Eternal silence, and portentous spoke.

POPE.

It is often made use of without repeating the proper Verb to which it is joined, especially in answering a question, as *Will you do it? I will, not I will do it. Learn this lesson? I will, not I will learn it. He will have me do it, but I will not*, without saying *I will not do it*, which is sufficiently understood.

WOULD is the Perfect or Past Tense of *will*, and refers likewise to a present time; as,

Would to Heaven I had your potency.

SHAKESPEAR.

It is used not only to signify a future time, but also in a sense of willing, *i. e.* implying order, command, will, and earnestness of desire, as, *I would have him do so and so; he would not have him play.*

In short, the main difference between the two Futures *shall* and *will*, seems to me to be this, that *shall* is more indefinite than *will*, for *shall* regards any uncertain time so it be future, but *will* implies something more certain and designed.

Again, *shall*, but not *will*, is used in the Future as belonging to the Potential, because *shall* respects what is only possible, *i. e.* what may or may not be, but *will* respects what is fully resolved on, as, *when I shall have advised with my friend, I will give you an answer.* Here advising with my friend is yet doubtful and undetermined, but to give an answer when I have taken
his

his advice is certain and resolved on. Yet sometimes, as in interrogative and indefinite forms, the sign *will* in that future Potential seems to be used as well as *shall*, as, *When shall you have done? When will you have done? I know not when he shall or will have done.* But even here *will* seems to determine the action more than *shall*, and has more of a Verb than of a Sign, as, *When will you have? i. e. When do you resolve to have?* But these are niceties that require more speculation than is consistent with the practical use or design of this Grammar, and therefore I proceed to my remark

On the Imperative Mood.

It has hitherto been maintained by some (from what authority I know not) that the Imperative Mood has no first person in the singular Number, neither is it capable of one, and the reason assigned for it is, “because one cannot properly command one’s self.” But they might as well have said there should be no third person neither, because we don’t properly and directly command or desire any but those to whom we immediately speak or address ourselves; yet, if we duly consider, we shall find that in the manner of *willing*, whatever we *will*, depends on the person of whom we may obtain it. ’Tis to mark this motion (says a certain author) that the Mood called Imperative was invented. If therefore it be granted that the first person plural ought to be admitted in the Imperative, as we daily see it is, as, *Let us do, let us sing, &c.* why not the first person singular? since it is plain that this plural *us* includes in it the consent of the first person *me*, and where is the great difference of resolving to do a thing alone, or in company? If it be here objected, that the singular *let me* implies an address to another person, as asking leave to *let me* do a thing by way of permission, the same may be said of the first person plural, *let us*, which is a reference to the will and consent of each other; but if it be answered, that here not only the will and consent, but the power and determination to do a thing is absolute in all, the same
may

may be said of the first person singular, which has the same power, will, and determination rested in itself, so that take it which way we please, we must infer the same propriety, and absolute necessity for establishing the first person singular as the first person plural in the Imperative Mood of all English Verbs, both regular and irregular.

To confirm what I have here advanced, I shall beg leave to quote two very ingenious authors that have wrote on this head; first, Mr. Mattaire, who in his English Grammar, at p. 67, says, “ The Greek and
“ Latin Imperatives have no first persons, but the Eng-
“ lish seem to have them, as, *let me read, let us read,*
“ which in these two languages are supplied by the
“ Subjunctive, for that Mood is often used by them
“ instead of the Imperative, and is then called man-
“ dative or commanding;” and then he adds, “ The
“ English use of the Imperative in the first person has
“ the signification of the Optative, wishing or exhort-
“ ing, &c.” But whatever be the signification or use we make of it, ’tis plain that it is become a frequent and necessary part of speech in our language.

Second, Mr. White, in his Dedicatory Essay on the English Verb, has also introduced the first person singular of the Imperative Mood, and has been very elaborate to shew both the use and propriety of it in several remarkable as well as incontestible instances quoted from the most eminent authors of their time, viz.

Now to the bloody battle let me bend. POPE.

But, let me see, is this our foman’s face;

Ab! no, no, no, it is my only son.

SHAKESPEAR.

Let me have a dram of poison, &c. IDEM.

Let me, a simple swain with honest pride,

If chance a lambkin from its dam should roam,

Or sportful kid, the little wand’rer chide,

And in my bosom bear exulting home. PIERCY.

The

The Tense or Time of this Mood has regard, as well to the Future as present, and therefore it happens that the Imperative and Future are often taken one for the other, especially in Hebrew, as *לֹא תִרְצֵחַ* *non occides*, thou shalt not kill, for kill not.

The Imperative Mood is formed two ways; first, by the Verb *let* joined to the Pronoun of the first and third persons singular or plural, as, *let me, let us, let him, let them love*; second, by the Auxiliary Verb *do* joined to the Pronoun of the second person in both numbers, as, *do you, do ye love*.

Observe also, that the Imperative is often supplied only by an Adverb or Preposition, without either of these Signs, *let* or *do*.

Example,

Off with his head.

Down with the top-mast.

Out, tawny Tartar, out.

In to your tents, the air is raw and cold.

SHAKESPEAR.

About it, Gentlemen, even now about it.

Hence ye long-legg'd spinners hence;

Away, I say time wears.

Up with your heads and mince.

IDEM.

In like manner some Nouns, or rather Interjections, are often substituted imperatively instead of Verbs, such as, *Courage, peace, silence, &c.*

On the Optative, Potential and Subjunctive Moods.

The Tenses or Times of these Moods are formed entirely the same way as in the Indicative, and differ in nothing but their respective Signs placed before them, as may be seen in their several Conjugations.

MAY, called by some the Permissive, and by others the Elective Mood, is frequently used optatively to express a wish, and then it precedes its Person and Verb, as, *May he perish; long may he reign.* It is not only used precisely to point out a person's conduct as depend-

depending upon will, but also intimates reasonableness, and marks the end or object of that will.

It has occasionally not only a present, but a future signification, viz.

———— *What in me is dark
Illumine; what is low raise and support,
That to the height of this great argument,
I may assert eternal providence,
And justify the ways of God to man.* MILTON.

MIGHT is the Perfect or Past Tense of *may*, implying choice or permission, as, *I might go, you might do it.* It is a sign that sometimes refers us to the present Time.

*Well might I wish, could mortal wish renew
That strength which once in boiling youth I knew.* POPE.

*So worn, so wretched and despis'd a crew,
As ev'n old Priam might with pity view.* DRYDEN.

CAN is the Present Tense of the Potential Mood, and is used to denote power, either natural or moral, as, *Can you assist me; can you bear the sight of me exposed to torture.*

Can flags there flourish where no waters flow. SANDYS.

COULD is the Perfect or Past Tense of *can*, and also implies power and possibility, and both of them are used in the same sense of being able, as, *I could do it; we could read it; they could make it.*

*Few words she spoke, tho' much she had to say,
And scarce those few for tears could force their way.* Pope.

*If e'er, O father of the Gods, she said,
My words could please thee, or my actions aid,
Some marks of honour on my son bestow,
And pay in glory what in life ye owe.* Idem.
MUST

MUST is by some called the Compulsive Mood, because it always imports obligation or necessity, either of a natural, social, or political kind. It simply marks both the Present and Future Tense, viz.

*Remember, I am built of clay, and must
Resolve to my ordinary, dust.* Sandys.

OUGHT is a sign attending the Verb in its Potential and Subjunctive Moods, and has the same obligative, though not compulsive signification with *must*, but with this difference, that *must* is always joined to the Verb, but *ought* has always the Preposition *to* following it, as, *Children ought to obey their Parents; the Officers ought to do their duty.*

These signs, *must* and *ought*, attend the Verbs only in the Present and Second Perfect Tenses, as, *I, you, he, we, ye or they must know; I, you, he, we, ye or they must have known, &c.*

The Present and Perfect Tenses of the Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, when they are followed by their own Infinitives, also denote duty or necessity, as, *If I am to be punished; I was to be at his house, &c.*

On the Infinitive Mood.

The Tense or Time of this Mood, like the Imperative, has a signification partaking both of present and future: of the Present, thus, *I think him to be grateful, i. e. I think that he is grateful; of the future, thus, I promise you to come, i. c. I promise you that I will come.*

It is formed not by changing its ending as in other Languages, but from Nouns Substantive, from which our Verbs cannot be distinguished but by the Preposition *to* set before them, as the only sign of the Infinitive Mood, as, *to dress, to paint, to drum, to fiddle, to trumpet, to pump, to plow, &c.* according to this distich,

*As th' Imperative is let or do,
The Infinitive is always to.*

But then observe that this sign is very frequently omitted when the Verb to which it belongs is immediately consequent to, or dependent on any of these sort, viz. *to come, to dare, to chuse, to go, to have, to be, to let, to make, to need, to feel, to hear, to see, to seek, &c.*

I dare do all that
I bid him come
I must go seek him
I charge thee waft me
Jove bids his thunder fall, &c.

not,

I dare *to* do all that
I bid him *to* come
I must go *to* seek him
I charge thee *to* waft me
Jove bids his thunder *to* fall, &c.

The Present Tense of the Infinitive Mood has, in many cases, a sense merely passive, as, *there is nothing to see* (be seen); *that is good only to throw* (be thrown) away, &c.

The Future Tense of the Infinitive Mood is by some formed thus, viz. *about to do, &c.* in conformity to the Latin; but I have rejected *about*, because as Mr. Johnson well observes, it has no import in English, it being only a French expression, of which the following phrases are examples, *venir à bout d'une affaire*, to succeed in an affair; *venir à bout de ses ennemis*, to vanquish one's enemies; *venir à bout d'une chose*, to accomplish or bring about a thing, &c.

With regard to *Irregular Verbs*, there are two things to be taken notice of, first, that this irregularity relates only to the formation of the Perfect or Past Tense, and Passive Participle. Second, that this irregularity does not relate to foreign words, but only to the native words of our own tongue; by foreign words, I mean those borrowed from the French, Italian, Spanish, Dutch, Portuguese, &c. of which there are great numbers, as will be shewn hereafter; but those are native, which
take

take their original from the old Teutonick, or Saxon Language, all which generally consist of words of one Syllable, or else derived from words of one Syllable.

The first irregularity, and that which is the most general, probably took its rise from our quickness of Pronunciation, by changing the consonant *d* into *t*, (the vowel *e*, in the regular ending, being cut off) in order that the sound might come out more free and easy; and it seems indeed to be rather a contraction than an irregularity, for *c*, *cb*, *sh*, *f*, *k*, *p*, *x*, *s*, *th*, when pronounced hard, and sometimes *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, (when a short Vowel goes before) more easily take *t* after them than *d*, as *plac't* for *plac'd* or *placed*, *snatcht* for *snatch'd* or *snatched*, *fisht* for *fish'd* or *fished*, *stufft* for *stuff'd* or *stuffed*, *mixt* for *mix'd* or *mixed*, *wakt* for *wak'd* or *waked*, *dwelt* for *dwell'd* or *dwelled*, *smelt* for *smell'd* or *smelled*, &c.

In some Verbs, whose Present Tense ends in *d* or *t*, the Perfect or Past Tense and Participle is the same; as in the Present of this Verb, *read*, the Past is also *read*, so in the Present *cast*, the Perfect is likewise *cast*; but it is most probable that these are only contractions of *ed*, meaning *readed*, *casted*, &c.

The second irregularity is in those Verbs whose Perfect Tense and Participle are the same, as when the Infinitive ends in *ead* or *eed*, it then makes *ed* both in their Past Tense and Participle, as *bleed* makes *bled*, *breed* *bred*, *speed* *sped*, *lead* *led*, *feed* *fed*, so those in *eel* make *elt*, as *feel* *felt*, *kneel* *knelt*, those in *eep* make *ept*, as *keep* *kept*, *sweep* *swept*, those in *end* make *ent*, as *bend* *bent*, *lend* *lent*, *send* *sent*, *spend* *spent*, those in *ind* make *ound*, as *bind* *bound*, *find* *found*, others not ending in *d* or *t* are formed by contraction, as *bad* for *haved*, *made* for *maked*, *fled* for *fled*, &c.

The third irregularity is in such Verbs whose Perfect Tense and Participle are different, as in the following instances, those ending in *ive* in the Infinitive make *ove* in the Perfect Tense, and *iven* in the Passive Participle, as *strive*, *strove*, *striven*, &c. and those ending in *ow* make *ew* and *own*, as *throw*, *threw*, *thrown*, &c.

those in *ear* make *ore* and *orn*, as *swear*, *swore*, *sworn*, &c. those in *ing* make *ang* and *ung*, as *sing*, *sang*, *sung*, &c. those in *ink* make *ank* and *unk*, as *drink*, *drank*, *drunk*, &c. those in *ide* make *id* and *idden*, as *chide*, *chid*, *chidden*, &c. those in *ake* make *ook* and *aken*, as *take*, *took*, *taken*, &c. and so of many more examples, too tedious to mention.

But then again there are other Verbs that are still more irregular, differing widely from each other in their Terminations, both in their Perfect Tense and Participles; such are these following:

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
to be	was	been
to see	saw	seen
to go	went	gone, &c.

All which must be learnt by Observation and Practice.

While we are upon the Formation of the Verbs, I cannot forbear quoting a Passage from the very ingenious and critical Author of a late Piece, intitled, *An Introduction to English Grammar*, where, in page 87, is this judicious Remark.

“ There are not in English (says he) so many as
 “ a hundred Verbs which have a distinct and different
 “ form, for the Past Time, Active and Participle Per-
 “ fect or Passive. The general bent and turn of the
 “ Language is towards that form which makes the Past
 “ Time and the Participle the same; this general in-
 “ clination and tendency of the Language seems to
 “ have given occasion to the introducing of a very
 “ great corruption, by which the form of the Past
 “ Time is confounded with that of the Participle.
 “ This confusion prevails greatly in common discourse,
 “ and is too much authorised by the examples of some
 “ of our best writers; thus it is said, *he begun* for *he*
 “ *began*; *he run* for *he ran*, the Participle being used
 “ instead of the Past Time, and much more frequently
 “ the

“ the Past Time instead of the Participle, as, *I had*
 “ *wrote, it was wrote*, for *I had written, it was writ-*
 “ *ten, bore for born, chose for chosen, bid for bidden, got*
 “ *for gotten*. This abuse (says he) has been long grow-
 “ ing upon us, and is continually making further en-
 “ croachments.” And then he gives us instances,
 where in some of these custom has established it beyond
 recovery. “ In the rest, (he says) it seems most inex-
 “ cusable; the absurdity of it will be plainly perceived
 “ in the example of some of these Verbs, which cus-
 “ tom has not yet so perverted. We should be im-
 “ mediately shocked at, *I have knew, I have saw, I*
 “ *have gave, &c.* but our ears are grown familiar with
 “ *I have wrote, I have drank, I have bore, &c.* which
 “ are altogether as barbarous.”

To these Observations I will just beg leave to add,
 that a certain Author * has made a distinction, if not
 very material, yet so equivocal, as cannot pass my no-
 tice, because I find others have followed him in the
 same mode of expression. He says, “ The Verb Pas-
 “ sive is expressed by the help of *am* or *be*, and the
 “ Participle Passive.” Now I would appeal to any
 Foreigner who meets with this passage, whether at first
 sight he is not naturally led to consider *am* as a diffe-
 rent and distinct part of Speech from *be*, which yet was
 not the intention of that author, as appears from his
 manner of treating it; but the way in which he has
 here thought fit to express himself in English concern-
 ing it, is, as if he had said of the Latin, that their
 Verb Passive is expressed by the Verb *sum* or *esse*, or the
 French Passive by the help of *suis* or *etre*, &c. whereas
 every one conversant in these tongues knows them to
 be of the same identical Verb; that *am* is the first per-
 son singular of the Indicative Mood, Present Tense, of
 the English Auxiliary Verb *to be*, that *sum* is the same
 of the Latin *esse*, and *suis* of the French *etre*, &c.

The same, and other Authors have likewise been in-
 duced to think that the *Imperfect* Tense of all Verbs
 might be supplied by the word *whilst*, as, *whilst I sup,*
whilst I am supping, &c. they might as well have chosen
 the

the French word *durant*, *during*, because if this were the case, it would be extremely vague and uncertain, as the same would hold good through all the Tenses of every Verb both active and passive; thus, *whilst I sup*, *whilst I have or had supped*, *whilst I shall or will sup*, *whilst I have or had been there*, *whilst I shall be there*, &c. and so it would come to pass, that every Present, Past, and Future Tense would become imperfect by the random introduction of the word *whilst*; but this is contrary to the main intention of all good Grammarians, which is to find out an Imperfect Tense to the Active Verbs, without being obliged to borrow it from the Perfect or Past Tense of the Passive Verb *be*, which by reason of the apparent irregularity of our Language seems altogether impossible.

Observe, we scarce ever use the Auxiliary Verb *do*, either in its Present or Past Tense, except before interrogative and negative sentences, or when we would affirm any thing emphatically, as, *does he*, or *did he love me?* *Do they*, or *did they eat any thing?* *I do not*, or *did not see you*. *I do love you dearly*, *that I do*, &c. otherwise, though it be English, it sounds very stiff and pedantic, except in long periods, as will be shewn hereafter. Besides, the judicious Mr. Johnson, than whom perhaps no one is a better judge of English, very properly styles it in his Grammar a vicious Pronunciation. The same may be said with regard to the Passive Participle ending in *ed*, which in most words would sound better with an Elision of the *e*, as, *I lik'd him*, *he lov'd me*, *I punish'd them*, instead of *I liked him*, &c.

As to the Pronoun *thou*, it being generally esteemed an unmannerly expression in common discourse, and as another word is already substituted in its stead, it will in all probability soon become obsolete; and therefore as an improvement of our Language, I have taken the liberty to leave it out through all the Conjugations of the Verbs, which immediately has this good effect, that it makes the inflexion of the Second Person Singular of the Present and Past Tenses become more uniform and regular, and instead of the following harsh and intolerable jargon hitherto used, viz.

thou

thou { hast, hadst, art, wast, wert, beest, dost, didst,
wilt, wouldst, shalt, shouldst, mayst, mightst,
canst, couldst, oughtst, burnest burnedst, &c.

We now say,

you { have, had, are, was, were, be, do, did, will,
would, shall, should, may, might, can, could,
ought, burn, burnt, &c.

All which is so extremely easy and harmonious to an English Ear, that if the present Age does not approve it, I hope Posterity will.

In like manner the third person singular of all Verbs should always end in *s* or *es*, as *he burns, she loves, he teaches*, though we sometimes use the termination *eth*, but it is only in formal speeches, as in scripture, in our prayers, the pulpit, &c. as *he burneth, she loveth, he teacheth*, &c. the first manner being much more preferable, except where it may seem necessary for distinction sake, as *he liveth*, which if it were written, *he lives*, might by some Foreigners be mistaken for the Plural of *life*, though Englishmen know better, not only from connexion of speech, but because the annexed word *he* is a Pronoun of the third person singular, which always attends the Verb, and not a Noun, for we never say, *he life, he death*, but *he lives, he dies*, &c. however, Mr. Greenwood seems to think it very blameable to use *s*, instead of *eth*, because (he says) “ it multiplies a letter which adds to that hissing in “ our language, which is taken so much notice of by “ Foreigners.” See his Essay, p. 126. But I think these Foreigners, whoever they were (or this Author for them) should have considered that the Termination *eth* being a dental sound is abundantly harder for them to pronounce than *s*, which frequently occurs in most Languages.

There are two material points to be remarked with respect to Foreigners, for whose Instruction this Grammar was partly designed. The first is, that because in our Tongue the Plural Number of Nouns is generally known by adding *s* or *es* to the Singular, they may be

be apt to imagine that it is the same in our Verbs and Participles, therefore to obviate this mistake, I shall here observe that it is quite the contrary, for that Verb which appears to them to be Plural is Singular, and that is Singular which seems to them Plural; for instance, we say in the Singular, the *Fidler plays* and the *boy dances*, but in the Plural we say, the *Fidlers play* and the *boys dance*: Here the Plural Verb to the Noun is *play* and *dance*, and the Singular *plays* and *dances*. The second is, that the Passive Participles are not like the regular Nouns, to become Plural by adding of *s*, for although the personal Pronoun be Plural, yet the Participle to which it is joined is always Singular, as, *we sailed*, *ye loved*, *they taught*, not *we saileds*, *ye loveds*, *they taughts*, &c.

In like manner, I would just observe to some of my own Countrymen, that they are apt to use the Apostrophe over Verbs somewhat too profusely, which yet I would charitably attribute rather to an excess of care than negligence, and more to ignorance than either; for in words ending with *y*, as *carry*, *tarry*, &c. the third person Singular should never be marked thus, *he carry's* or *he tarry's*, as some do, because they mean no more than that *he carries* or *carrieth*, *he tarries* or *tarrieth*, and so of all other Verbs of the third Person in the Singular Number, which, though they end with *s*, admit of no Elision at all.





C H A P. IV.

Of PARTICIPLES.

THE PARTICIPLE is a Part of Speech, formed of the Indicative Mood, which, together with the Auxiliary Verbs *have* and *be*, (to which it is frequently joined) make the Compound Tenses of all Verbs, both regular and irregular. It derives its name from the Latin *Participium*, for its participating both of the Verb and the Noun, in the following manner.

First, of the Verb, as of *love* comes *loving* and *loved*. It betokens BEING, as, *I was sitting*, *I have been a child*; and DOING, as, *I am reading a book*, *I was sweeping the house*; and SUFFERING, as, *I was abused*, *the child was burnt*.

Second, it partakes of the Noun Substantive, to which it is often joined in the same manner as an Adjective, as, *a loving child*, *a dancing dog*, *a ruined man*, *a cloistered nun*; and so in the Plural, as, *grazing cattle*, *skipping lambs*.

Thus we may see there are two Sorts of Participles, the *Active*, which always ends in *ing*, as *loving*, *dancing*, &c. and the Participle which regularly ends in *ed*, as *ruined*, *cloistered*, &c.

This Participle ending in *ing* is very properly called *Active*, because it generally has in itself an active sense, and signifies *doing*, as, *I am cutting a stick*, *I am dressing the victuals*, &c.

The Participle which ends in *ed* is called the *Passive* Participle, because though we have in English no passive Voice, *i. e.* no distinct ending to distinguish a Verb that signifies *doing*, from a Verb that signifies *suffering*; yet we make up this deficiency by the help of *am* and
this

this Participle, as, *I am loved, I am ruined, &c.* for this Participle cannot properly be called Passive from its signification alone, it being as often used in an active sense, as, *I have loved the woman, he has ruined the man, &c.*

The Active Participle is formed by adding *ing* to the Verb, if it be a Consonant, as, *ruin, ruining, fight fighting*, but when the Verb ends with a Vowel, which is always the silent *e*, as *love, move*, then the *e* is left out in the Participle, as, *loving, moving, &c.*

It is used in a peculiar manner with the passive Verb *be*, especially in answer to a question, as, *What was you doing? I was writing. How were they employing themselves? They were playing; they had been working, &c.* The Passive Participle of regular Verbs is made by adding *ed* to the Verb, as, *kill killed, fill filled, &c.* but if the Verb ends in *e*, as, *prove*, then it is made by adding only *d*, as, *proved*; and the reason why this Participle in *ed* is called Passive, is because being joined to the Verb *be*, it makes up or forms the whole passive Voice, as, instead of *I love, we love*, say, *I am loved, we are loved, &c.* But then it must be observed, that this Passive Participle does not always end in *ed*, for although the Perfect or Past Tense and Passive Participle are always one and the same, both ending in *ed* in all the regular Verbs, yet there are other Verbs wherein the Passive Participle often changes its ending, as, *teach taught, tell told, speak spoken, see seen, give given, &c.* which departing from the common rule are therefore called irregular Participles.

The Passive Participle being used with the Auxiliary Verb *be*, has the same sense with words ending in *able* or *ible*, and relates to future time, as, *it is to be admired, it is to be desired, it is to be seen*, that is, *it is admirable, desirable, visible, &c.*

Participles are used as Adjectives in these three respects: First, when they have no regard to time, and are joined to Substantives, in which Cases they always take the Article, as, *a writing-desk, a carved head, a discerning man, &c.* Second, whenever they may be compared, as, *learned, more learned, most learned; and*
third,

third, when they are compounded with a Preposition, that the Verb from whence they derive cannot be compounded with, as, *unbecoming, unheard, unseen*, for we don't say, *unbecome, unheard, unseen*, &c. although it be admitted that Participles often become Adjectives, it cannot by any means be granted, that they are therefore always mere Adjectives, as some affirm, they being often used in a sense where no Adjective can take place, as, *I am writing a book, he is mending a pen, we have removed the dirt, they have appraised the furniture, &c.*

The Active Participle often supplies the place of the Infinitive Mood, as *eating, drinking, sleeping*, are the necessary Preservatives of life. Also the general Article *a* is frequently (though I think not very elegantly) used before the Active Participle, as, *a squinting, a peeping, a sotting, a plotting, a contriving*, &c. as is also the limited Article *the*, as, *the eating, the drinking, the studying, the wrestling*, &c.

The Participle is either simple or compounded, as the Verb itself is from which it is derived, as, *taking, partaking, claimed, reclaimed*, &c. but there are also some that are compounded, though their Primatives be not, as, *to breed, bred, well-bred; to colour, coloured, high coloured*. Now when these compound Participles are compared, it is done either by changing the first compound word, as, *better bred, best bred, higher coloured, highest coloured*, or else by the Signs, as, *very well bred, welcome, more welcome, most welcome*. If foreigners would know the reason why *better come* and *best come* are not used together, as well as *better bred* and *best bred*, when *well* compounds both, it is because that in resolving the composition, you may say, *he is bred well*, in the same sense as *he is well bred*, but not *he is come well*, as *he is well come*; besides, the Participle *well come*, though it be compounded, yet is (in that signification) primitive, for the compounded Verb *to welcome* is no other than an active transitive, but the Participle *welcome* is neuter, like the simple Verb *to come*, for though we may say, *he came*, yet we cannot properly say, *he well came*.

Note, The *Participle*, so far as it partakes of the Verb, has induced some Grammarians to consider it only as an additional Mood to the Verb, and not as a distinct part of speech from it, and the reasons they assign for it are, that the Participle has the like times of present, past, and future, and is both active and passive with the Verb, and therefore no ways distinct from it. To which I answer, that admitting the Premises to be true in part, yet the illation does not always follow; for it ought to be considered, that the essential reason why a Participle is not a Verb, is that it does not signify the affirmation, whence it comes that to make a preposition, which is the property of the Verb, the Participle must add a Verb, that is, restore that which was taken away, by returning the Verb into the Participle, as *living Peter*, for else how comes it that *Peter lives* or *liveth* is a Preposition or Affirmation, and *Peter living* is not so, unless the Verb *is* be added? as, *Peter is living*, but because the Affirmation *lives* or *liveth* was taken away by making the Participle *living*, whence it follows that the Affirmation, which is found or not found in a word, makes it to be or not to be a Verb.

Again, We may perceive the Participle partakes as much of the quality of the Noun Adjective as of the Verb, and is often joined to the Substantive, to shew its nature and signification, nay is sometimes a Substantive itself, as may be seen in the following Remark on this part of Speech, and therefore is very properly treated by all good authors as a distinct part of Speech from the Verb.

*Remarks on Participles, in Number two,
Active and Passive, as they stand in view.*

THE Active Participles of the Present Tense are often made Nouns Substantive, as, he has lost his *bearing*; he has no *understanding*; have you seen his *writing*, her *drawing*, &c. but more commonly they take

take the form of an Adjective, and are joined to Nouns as in the following Examples, and numerous others.

Active Participles.

Nouns.

A {	babbling	Woman
	barking	Dog
	buzzing	Fly
	braying	Ass
	bleating	Sheep
	bellowing	Bull
	{ capering or	Horse
	prancing	
	croaking	{ Raven, or
		Frog
	cunning	Fox
	crowing	Cock
	clucking	Hen
	chattering	Magpie
	frisking	Lamb
	fluttering	Bird
	grumbling	Bear
	galloping	Nag
	grunting	Hog
	hunting	{ Hound, or
		Horse
	hissing	Snake
	howling	Wolf
	humming	Bee
	neighing	Horse
	purring	Cat
	roaring	Lion
	raving	Man
	fucking	Child
	railing	Woman
	squeaking	Pig
	finging	Bird
	strutting	Peacock
	trotting	Horse
	talking	Parrot
	wadling	Duck

Active Participles.

an {	ambling	Nouns
	ebbing	Nag
	intriguing	Tide
	obliging	Wench
	unbecoming	Answer
		Conduct

Note, The foregoing Participles serve to shew the Sounds and Properties peculiar to distinct Animals.

The *Passive Participles* are also sometimes used substantively, as, Here lie the *slain*, there the *wounded*, *maimed*, *condemned*, &c. but more frequently they are Adjectives joined to Nouns.

Regular Passive Participles

A {	battered	Nouns
	carved	Castle
	disciplined	Head
	faded	Army
	grated	Flower
	hired	Nutmeg
	jilted	Servant
	kindled	Spark
	learned	Fire
	noted	Man
	painted	House
	quartered	Cloth
	ravaged	Pig
	scattered	City
	tired	Flock
	united	Horse
	varnished	Company
	withered	Table
		Tree

Irregular Passive Participles.

a {	bent	Nouns.
	burnt	Bow
	bred	Child
	bound	Mare
	bidden	Book
		Guest

beaten

Irregular Passive Participle.

Nouns.

A	{	beaten	Track
		broken	Table
		chosen	Friend
		cloven	Foot
		dead	Dog
		drunken	Swine
		ground	Knife
		grown	Boy
		gilt	Chariot
		gelt	Horse
		hidden	Treasure
		kept	Mistress
		known	Truth
		loft	Man
		lent	Horse
		rotten	Egg
		sunk	Ship
		shaken	Leaf
		stolen	Horse
		swollen	Face
an	{	sworn	Brother
		spent	Fortune
		torn	Coat
		trodden	Path
		written	Order
		abused	Friend
		elected	Member
		inhabited	Town
		opulent	City
		unlimited	Power
the	{	beaten	Track
		bidden	Guest
		blown	Meat
		driven	Snow
		spun	Yarn
		shorn	Sheep
		stolen	Goods
		shrunk	Cloth

Irregular Passive Participles.

the	{	woven	Nouns.
		new flown	Stockings
		forfaken	Bird
		frozen	Maid
			Globe

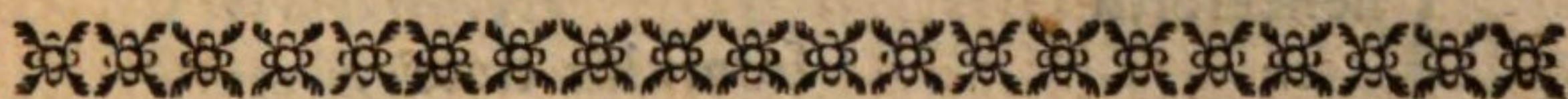
Sometimes the Active and Passive Participles come both together.

The King	{	having answered
		or
	{	being indisposed
The Master	{	having threatened
		or
	{	being vexed
The Culprit	{	having submitted
		or
	{	being condemned

Note, As Composition is one of the chief Characteristics of a Language, I have endeavoured to make some reparation for the universal neglect of my Predecessors in this respect, by inserting the foregoing Active and Passive Participles. Those, and numerous others that I could mention, are what serve to form numbers of our compound words in English, all which may be declined like simple Nouns, either with a general or limited Article. Besides this, there is another use, which is very material, and seems to be much wanted in our Language, namely, the furnishing an ordinary capacity with proper epithets and similitudes necessary in discourse, as when we would compare one person or thing with another, we say, he, she, or it is like *a bent bow, a faded flower, a shaken leaf, a withered tree*, which manner saves abundance of circumlocutions, and is extremely useful both in Prose and Verse.

Of GERUNDS.

THE GERUND is formed of the Active Participle of the Present Tense of all Verbs, both regular and irregular; and when such Participle only denotes some action, and is joined with the casual Signs and some governing Particle or Preposition, without agreeing with any word, it is then termed a Gerund, as, he made an end *of speaking*, he is given *to lying*, I delight *in reading*, this land is fit *for ploughing*, I am discouraged *from writing*, we are both weary, he *with beating*, and I *with being beat*, he got his money *by singing*, and lost it again *by or through gaming*.



C H A P. V.

Of ADVERBS.

AN ADVERB is an invariable Particle, or Part of Speech, serving to declare some quality or circumstance either of a *Verb*, an *Adjective*, or *Participle*, or another *Adverb*, to each of which it is frequently joined, in order to shew their respective significations, as in the following manner; first, to a *Verb*, to shew how, whether, when, or where one *is*, *does*, or *suffers*, as, the man works *neatly*, he dances *well*, she speaks *now*, the book is printed *there*: Secondly, to an *Adjective*, as, he is *very* good, no man is *always* wise, &c. Thirdly, to a *Participle*, as, a man *truly* fearing God, a house *well* furnished, &c. Fourthly, to another *Adverb*, as, he lives *very* happily, &c.

These Adverbs are divided into *Time*, *Place*, *Quantity*, *Quality*, *Affirmative*, *Negative*, *Doubting*, *Comparison*, *Order*, *Moderation*, *Excess*, and divers other Accidents

cidents, which being highly useful in construction for their frequent attendance on the Verbs, I have been very sedulous in collecting and ranging as many as I could find under all their various significations.

ADVERBS of TIME.

Now	<i>i. e.</i>	at this time
already		now done
yesterday		the day before this
to-day		on this day
to-morrow		on the day following
{ formerly		
<i>or</i>		before this time
{ heretofore		
{ henceforth		
<i>or</i>		from this time
{ henceforward		
{ thenceforth		
<i>or</i>		from that time
{ thenceforward		
hereafter		after this time
thereafter		after that time
{ presently		
<i>or</i>		in a little while
{ by and by		
when		at which time
then		at that time
{ first		
<i>or</i>		the preceding time
{ before		
lately		the time just past
{ since		
<i>or</i>		the next succeeding time
{ afterwards		
{ rarely		
{ seldom		not very frequent
{ sometimes		
{ always		
<i>or</i>		at all times
{ ever		

never

never	at no time
early	betimes
{ annually	
<i>or</i>	every year
{ yearly	
monthly	every month
weekly	every week
daily	every day
hourly	every hour
again	once more
{ often	
<i>or</i>	
{ frequently	
constantly	} times repeated
continually	
perpetually	
everlastingly	
{ eternally	

Note, Those Adverbs within the Braces are synonymous.

ADVERBS OF PLACE.

where	<i>i. e.</i> in which or what place
somewhere	in some place
elsewhere	in some other place
any where	in any place
every where	in all places
no where	in no place
whither	to which or what place
hither	on this side or to this place
thither	on that side, or to that place
whence	from which or what place
hence	from this place
thence	from that place
here	in this place
there	in that place
within	into this place
without	out of the place
upward	towards the top
downward	towards the bottom

forward

forward	towards the fore part
backward	towards the back part
adjacent	adjoining to some place
hard by	near such a place
separately	divided
singly	by itself
afunder	a space between
before	} <i>i. e.</i> in point of precedence or situation of place.
behind	
after	
above	
below, &c.	

ADVERBS of ORDER.

Firstly	twelfthly
secondly	in the thirteenth place, &c.
thirdly	first of all
fourthly	above all
fifthly	two and two
sixthly	in a row
seventhly	by turns
eighthly	one after another
ninthly	finally
tenthly	lastly
eleventhly	last of all, &c.

ADVERBS of MODERATION.

{ by degrees	easily
{ step by step	silently
{ softly	quietly
{ gently	leisurely
fairly	sufficiently

ADVERBS of EXCESS.

too much	{ extravagantly
very much	{ excessively
beyond all	{ enormously
immensely	{ exceedingly
	immeasurably

immeasurably	{	monstrously
unfathomably		preposterously
{ hugely		inconceivably
{ vastly		extraordinarily

ADVERBS of QUANTITY.

much	enough	moreover
more	fully	besides
great	in heaps	several
little	something	entirely
less	abundantly	completely
few		

ADVERBS of QUALITY.

*aptly	furiously	*lavishly
accidentally	*feelingly	largely
*badly	*freely	lovingly
*boldly	*gladly	madly
barely	*gallantly	mildly
bravely	gloriously	*merrily
*carelessly	grievously	mercifully
constantly	hardly	mutually
confidently	*handsomely	movingly
*daringly	*happily	*narrowly
*diligently	*heartily	*nobly
*discreetly	*handily	*nimbley
*differently	*heavily	notoriously
*elegantly	*heedlessly	nauseously
eminently	*honestly	*openly
*eloquently	hedioufly	odiously
evidently	infinitely	*publicly
expressly	*ignorantly	perfectly
exactly	*innocently	punctually
erroneously	*insolently	precisely
egregiously	indolently	*prudently
*fairly	*impertinently	*rashly
*fitly	*jovially	*richly
*falsely	*jocosely	rightly
*fiercely	*justly	*rudely

furly

*furly	truely	virulently
forely	tamely	*wisely
*fordidly	temperately	*weakly
*sparingly	temporally	waggishly
stoutly	violently	wantonly

See more of these in Pages 128, 129, 130.

Note, The above, and numerous other Adverbs of Quality, are formed of Adjectives by adding of the Particle *ly*, as the French do theirs by the Particle *ment*, as, *justement* *justly*, *discrettement* *discreetly*, *prudemment* *prudently*, &c. all which are sometimes explained by a Noun and Preposition, thus, *with justice*, *with discretion*, *with prudence*, &c. which answers to *justly*, *discreetly*, *prudently*, &c.

These Adverbs, for the most part, denote the same quality or manner as the Adjectives do from whence they are derived, to most of which may be joined *very* to signify Augmentation of the Quality, as appears by those marked with a Star, and the like.

ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION.

yes	infallibly	unfeignedly
certainly	doubtless	earnestly
indeed	surely	positively
undoubtedly	verily	absolutely
truly	assuredly	willingly

ADVERBS OF NEGATION.

no	nay	nobody
not	none	by no means
nor	never	in no wise
neither	nothing	not at all

ADVERBS OF INTERROGATION.

how?	whose?	where?
when?	why?	whither?
whence?	what?	wherefore?
who?		

ADVERBS

ADVERBS of COMPARISON.

as	almost	thus
so	little	rather
much	less	of this sort
so much	least	likewise
more	better	in this wise
most	worse	well nigh

ADVERBS of DOUBTING.

it may be	perchance
perhaps	peradventure

Of DEMONSTRATION.

look	see here
behold	see there
admire	see yonder

Of DIMINISHING.

little	scarcely
hardly	barely

ADVERBS of EXCEPTION.

but if	unless	on condition
but that	provided	seeing that
yet	however	nevertheless
still	else	notwithstanding
besides	otherwise	mean while

Of ACCELERATION.

presently	shortly	at first sight
instantly	hastily	instantaneously
immediately	suddenly	in the twinkling of
quickly	soon	an eye.
speedily	nimbly	

ADVERBS of CHOICE.

first
beforerather
sooner

Of NUMBER.

once
twicethrice
many, &c.

Of PERSONALITY.

with { me
you
him
herwith { this
that
those
them

Of AGGREGATION, or UNION, both of Persons and Things.

together
close
near
bothjointly
in heaps
in company
brotherlyfriendly
sociably
side by side
cheek by jowl

Note, The following, and some of the foregoing, have rather an *adverbial* sense than that they are real *Adverbs*, but, being frequently in use, ought to be admitted.

ADVERBIALS.

obliquely
reversely
grovelingly
by the by
by the way
athwartat random
by guess
by fits
afresh
anew
at timesgratis
in truck
in exchange
covertly
by stealth

Note, Although in these several Arrangements of the *Adverbs* there may seem to be a repetition of the same words,

words, some of which may also be found in the Adjectives, Conjunctions and Prepositions, yet as they are placed under distinct heads, they are necessarily and properly introduced, according to the different Moods of speaking, in order to shew or specify the various manner of an action expressed by the Verb.

*Remarks on Adverbs, both of Time and Place,
Of Order, Moderation, and Excess.*

THE Adverbs of *Time* being already sufficiently explained, I must further observe, with respect to those of *Place*, that these three words, *here, there, where*, are frequently used in composition with *of, by, with, at, in, on, upon, to, unto, about*, instead of the Pronouns *this, that, which, &c.*

E X A M P L E.

hereof	thereof	whereof
<i>of this</i>	<i>of that</i>	<i>of which</i>
hereby	thereby	whereby
<i>by this</i>	<i>by that</i>	<i>by which</i>
herewith	therewith	wherewith
<i>with this</i>	<i>with that</i>	<i>with which</i>
hereat	thereat	whereat
<i>at this</i>	<i>at that</i>	<i>at which</i>
herein	therein	wherein
<i>in this</i>	<i>in that</i>	<i>in which</i>
hereto	thereto	whereto
<i>to this</i>	<i>to that</i>	<i>to which</i>
hereunto	thereunto	whereunto
<i>unto this</i>	<i>unto that</i>	<i>unto which</i>
hereon	thereon	whereon
<i>on this</i>	<i>on that</i>	<i>on which</i>

hereupon
upon this

thereupon
upon that

whereupon
upon which

caret

therefore
for that

wherefore
for which

hereabouts
about this place

thereabouts
about that place

whereabouts
about which place

The Adverbs of Order are not taken from the Numerals, *one, two, three, &c.* but from the Ordinal Numbers, *first, second, third, &c.* which last have the Particle *ly*, joined to them only up to the number 12, or twelfthly, but *thirteenthly* making too many syllables, sounds very harsh, and therefore it were better to express it by circumlocution, as, *in the thirteenth place, &c.* and so of the rest of the Adverbs expressing Ordinal Numbers.

The Adverbs of *Moderation* and *Excess* need little or no explanation, having nothing particular in them different from the rest of the Adverbs, except that they are a sort of antithesis to each other, viz. *sufficiently, extravagantly, &c.* as may be seen in sentences where they are properly applied.

Adverbs of Quality when the Verb governs the Accusative, are commonly put after it, as, *I love you dearly*; but when the Verb governs the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative, the Adverb is put indifferently before or after, as, *he spoke basely of his brother*, or, *he spoke of his brother basely*; *he wrote sincerely to him*, or, *he wrote to him sincerely*; *he returns cowardly from the battle*, or, *he returns from the battle cowardly*, or, *he cowardly returns from the battle*.

Adverbs of Affirmation ending in *ly* are commonly used like those of Quality, as, *you have seen him certainly*, or, *you certainly have seen him*; but this must be understood only when there is no Adverb of Quality in the Phrase, for when there is, the Adverb should be changed into an Adjective, and occupy the last place; thus you should not chuse to say, *I have certainly loved him tenderly*, but rather, *I have certainly loved him in a tender manner*.

Adverbs

Adverbs of Number being followed by a Singular that expresses a space of time, have the general Article *a* put after them, and then the Particle *in*, which is the Sign of the Ablative Case, is understood, as, *once a Week, twice a Month, thrice a Year*, but when the Noun is in the Plural, it is put in the Ablative Case, with the Particle *in*, sometimes with and sometimes without the Article, as, *twice in three Years, thrice in a hundred Years*.

When an Adverb meets with a Verb, the Adverb is commonly put after it, as, *to sing well, to behave ill, she speaks better, he hears much, he has not sung before*, and sometimes before it, as, *well said, well made, well done, &c.*

The Adverb meeting with a Participle Passive, or Noun Adjective, is generally placed before it, in the Nature of a compound Word, as, *fashionably-made, wilfully wicked, smartly said, manfully-stout, artfully invented, craftily managed, innocently done, narrowly escaped, thoroughly examined, properly bestowed, lawfully married, &c.*

YES, Is an Adverb of Affirmation, commonly put at the end of a phrase, as, *Yes, I love her better than myself*. In answer to a Question, it implies the full sense of the Verb, without repeating it, as, *Will you have this Woman to your wedded Wife?* Answer, *Yes*; where the Words *I will* are sufficiently understood.

It is much more usual and modish than the old-fashioned word, *Yea*. *I* was formerly used in a hasty or merry manner for *Yes*, and sometimes we say *Ay*; but these ways of affirming are now become obsolete.

INDEED, Is an asseverating Verb compounded of a Preposition and a Noun, viz. *in* and *deed*. It is put at the beginning, and often in the middle, and at the end of a sentence, and implies a certainty or confidence that the thing is or is not so. It comes sometimes before, and sometimes after the Verb, as, *Indeed I will, or, I will indeed; he told me indeed he would come; he said indeed you were not at home.*

NO, Is an Adverb of Negation, and is used like *Yes*, that is, without being joined to any other word, as, *Will you do it?* Answer, *No*. But when it comes before a Substantive, it is then an Adjective, as, *no man, no body, &c.* It is also sometimes used between a Preposition and a Noun, as, *in no wise, in no manner, in no shape, &c.* In doubtful phrases we often use *no*, as, *Will you pay me or no?* i. e. *Will you or will you not pay me?*

NAY, Is seldom or never used as a Negation, but only in an emphatical and elegant manner, to correct an error in ourselves or others, as, *he is as good a scholar as his master, nay a better, &c.*

NOR, Is always in the second member of a sentence, and then the word *neither* is in the first, as, *I have eaten neither bread nor meat to-day*; but if *not* be in the first member, then *neither* must be in the second, or rather *nor*, as, *I have not tasted any bread to-day, nor (neither) have I seen any.*

NOT, Is always joined to some Verb or Sign, as, *I dare not, he will not, she must not, &c.* But we may perceive that Foreigners at their first coming over, and before they are well able to make the Distinction, naturally use *no* instead of *not*, as bearing the nearest resemblance to the idiom of their own language; thus, the Italians say, *Io no amo, I no love*, the Spaniards, *no esta bueno, he is no well*, whereas the proper interpretation of this phrase in English is, *I do not love, he is not well, &c.*

This Adverb in English is often followed by the Pronoun *that*, only before a Nominative, in which Case the phrase is negative, as *not that I blame him*, and when *but* follows *not*, it is then affirmative, because *not* and *but* are two Negatives, which in English make an Affirmative, as, *not but I love him better than the other.*

NOT AT ALL, Is also a Negative Adverb, exactly of the same signification as the French *point de tout*; but it should be remarked that in English it is very often separated, and in this case *not* is put after the first Verb at the beginning of the phrase, and *at all* at the end of it, as, *they will not study at all*; *he will not come at all*; but when this Adverb is not separated it is placed between two Verbs, and sometimes with an Elision of the *o*, as, *I don't at all like it*, which is the same as to say, *I do not like it at all*.

NONE, Is likewise an Adverb of Negation; it seems to be a Contraction of *no one*, and is always used in answer to a Question, as, *Is there any Company?* No, none, i. e. *no one person*. *Is there any wine?* No, none, i. e. *not one drop*, &c. It is used in all the persons, in both numbers, as, *I have none*, *you have none*, *he has none*, *she has none*, *we have none*, &c.

NEVER, Is also a Negative Adverb used in a definitive manner in answer to any Question, as, *When do you intend to come and see me?* Answer, *Never*. But it is not properly used after a Verb in asking a Question, as, *Do never you intend to come and see me?* *Do never two Adverbs directly follow one another?* &c.

Note, We put our Adverbs of denying after the first Verb, as, *I do not love him*, and sometimes after the Pronoun, as, *I love him not*. But other Sorts of Adverbs may be placed before or behind occasionally, only observe that those ending in *ly* are commonly placed next to the Verb.

Although it has been a trite Maxim in English, that two Negatives generally make an Affirmative, as *We will not have none of them*, which is not denying but we will have some, yet I think the sense would run much better if rendered thus, *We will have none of them*, or, *We will not have any of them*; for we should never use more than one Negative in one sentence: thus we should say, *You did not know any better*, or, *You knew no better*; *he does not like her*, *no more do I*;

I; he has no ill design; he shall do no more mischief, &c. and not thus, *You did not know no better, no more don't I; he hasn't no ill design; he shan't do no more mischief, &c.* because we see it is much better explained as above. Besides which, the Word *any* will best supply the last Negative, as, *he has not any ill design; he shall not do any more mischief; except in the following phrases, where we may be allowed two Negatives, as, I do not say that he did not see you; I do not say that he did not assist us, which is admitting that he did.*

HERE, Is an Adverb of Place, and sometimes signifies *hither*, i. e. *on this side*, pointing out not only the situation of him who speaks, or the part or place where the person or thing is that is spoken of, but is also a note or sign by which one calls, or answers to another's calling, or which directs us to the place where he is who calls. Also on calling over a list of names, in search of absentees, the person who hears his name called cries out *here*, to shew he is present.

THERE, Is an Antithesis to the foregoing Word, as, *here prating, there silence, here smoke, there stink.*

WHERE, Has *ever* and *soever* added to it, as, *wherever or wheresoever he be, I shall always love him.*—This Adverb is never separated like *howsoever* and *whichsoever*, but it is often used in composition with other words, as, *whereof, whereby, &c.* See p. 279. Also observe, that sometimes we make use of these three words together, *where with all*, as, *I have not where with all to pay my debts, &c.*

MUCH, Is not so properly an Adverb as an Adjective, unless compared with *more* or *less*; it is generally joined to Substantives or collective Nouns that relate to Quantity of Number, Weight, or Measure, as, *much company, much meat, much wine, &c.* It is frequently joined to several other words, as, *much pleasure, much satisfaction, much ado, much alike, &c.*

This

This word has been extremely abused by ignorant or country people, who to express their surprise at any thing, will answer, *that's much indeed*, whilst others will be making comparisons on the word itself; when speaking of any particular thing they say, *It is much of a muchness*, meaning the similitude, equality, or size of any thing before them, both egregiously wrong and uncouth, and therefore carefully to be avoided by all well bred persons.

LITTLE, Is not only an Adverb of Quantity, as, *Give me a little, I shall say but little, &c.* but also serves as a Noun Adjective, as, *little wine, little money*, and sometimes as a Substantive, as, *the little you do is not much regarded*.

MORE, LESS, and LEAST, are Adverbs of Comparison, as, *I have bought more, you have bought less, and he least*. When they serve as Adjectives, they are never followed by the Genitive Case, except when they go before the Pronouns *this, that, and it*, and their Plurals, and then these Pronouns are put in the Genitive, with the sign *of*, as, *take more of this, of that, of it, of these, of those, of them; give her less of this, of that, &c.* Sometimes these Comparative Adjectives are used all together, as, speaking of the dimensions of any thing, we say, *it contains so many feet, little more or less, i. e. over or under*. When *least* operates as a Noun, it is then followed by the Genitive Case, as, *I love him the least of all, &c.*

OFTEN, SELDOM, and SOON, are Adverbs that are compared like Adjectives, as, *often, oftener, oftenest, seldom, seldomer, seldomest, soon, sooner, soonest*.

YET and STILL, are both used alike in the present and past Tenses, as, *are you here yet? are you here still?* We say, *he is not dead yet*, but we don't say, *he is not dead still*.

EVER,

EVER, Is an Adverb of duration, and signifies *always*, as, *I am ever desirous of serving you*. It is frequently joined to *what*, *which*, *who*, *where*, *since*, *more*, *lasting*, as, *whatever*, *whichever*, *whoever* *wherever*, and *ever since*, *evermore*, *everlasting*, &c. but *ever* and *anon* is become obsolete.

Sometimes the Abbreviation of this Word *ever*, which is wrote *e'er*, is confounded with the Adverb *ere*, which signifies *before*, ; but no one can mistake it, if he does but take notice that the first ends in *er*, and the second in *re*, as, *his memory will e'er be dear to me*, i. e. *ever be dear*, &c. *I shall finish my letter ere he comes in*, i. e. *before he comes*, &c. But this sort of Contraction is oftener used in Verse than in Prose.

Ever is joined with *how* and *so*, as, *however* or *howsoever* *that be*, or *however* or *howsoever* *rich he may be*, or by transposition, as, *how rich soever he may be*, and not *howsomever* or *howsomdeavour*, which are mean and barbarous Pronunciations.

EVERY, When joined to *where* is an unlimited Adverb of Place ; added to Nouns it is an Adjective, as, *every householder*, *every man in his humor*, *every tub on its own bottom*, *every one*, *every thing*, *every now and then*.

EACH, Is a Distributive Adverb, as, *it comes to sixpence each*, and is never joined to Substantives but in the Singular Number only, as, *each man takes care of himself*.

ANY, Is used in a vague and undetermined sense, and joined to words either in the Singular or Plural Number, as, *have you any money*, *is there any man*, *are there any boys* ; also with other words, as, *any how*, *any other*, *any where*, *any thing*, &c.

MANY, Is not only an Adverb of Quantity, but an Adjective joined to Substantives of the Plural Number, as, *many boys*, *many girls*, but never to the Singular, except when the general Article intervenes, as, *many*

a boy, many a girl. It is also joined to *fold*, and then the *y* is changed into *i*, as, *manifold*, &c.

SOME, Determines neither Quantity nor Number, as, *I have some fruit, he does some good actions.* It is joined to Nouns of both Numbers, but seems most properly applied to the Plural, as it is perhaps a contraction of *so many*, and therefore *some men, some books, some boys*, is perhaps much better English than *some man, some book, some boy*, &c. though both of them mean some certain man or men, book or books, boy or boys, &c. Besides, when joined to Verbs, it has a manifest connection with the Third Person Plural, as, *some say, some speak, some come, some go*, &c. not *some says, some speaks, some comes, some goes*, which is extreme bad English. See the Declension of this word, in the Plural of the General Article, at p. 109.

OTHER, Is used with *some, no*, and *any*, as, *some other, I have no other, have you any other?* It is also joined to Substantives of both Numbers, as, *the other house, the other houses*, but where there is no Article it is Plural, as, *other boys, other girls, other persons*, and in this case it is sometimes used substantively, as, *I have seen others*, and is joined to *many, several*, and *most*, as, *many others, several others, most others*, &c.

ANOTHER, Is used with a Substantive only in the Singular Number, and never with the Plural, as, *send me another letter.* It is sometimes used with an Elipsis, as, *I speak of another's praise*; here Man, Woman, or some Substantive is understood.

OTHERWISE and OTHERWAYS, Are Modal Adverbs, as, *he says, acts, or thinks otherwise; he goes otherways to work, I know no other way*, &c.

SINCE, Is an Adverb of Time, and is put sometimes in the Middle, and sometimes at the end of a phrase, as, *I have never seen him since his departure; he has not been*

been here since. It is frequently joined to the word *long*, as, *it is long since I saw you; my brother has been dead long since; it is not long since my father died, &c.*

Ago, Is never put at the Beginning, but sometimes in the Middle, and frequently at the End of a Phrase, as, *not long ago I was at Paris, or, I was at Paris not long ago; it is a great while ago, not a great while ago*, as some country folks are apt to say.



CHAP. VI.

Of CONJUNCTIONS.

THE CONJUNCTION is a Part of Speech serving to connect or join Words and Sentences together, through all Parts of a Discourse, shewing the Manner of their Dependance on one another; it comes from the Latin Word, *Conjungere*, i. e. *jungere*, to join, *con*, with, because it is joined with other Parts of Speech, and it not only unites and ties together the several Parts of a Period, but also lays the Subject under a Condition.

Names. Signs and Nature of the Conjunctions.

COPULATIVE,	{	Uniting words, and connecting the sense.
SIGNS,		<i>and, also, too, likewise, both.</i>
DISJUNCTIVE,	{	Dividing the sense, and joining the expressions.
SIGNS,		<i>or, whether, either, nor, neither.</i>

Names.

<i>Names.</i>	<i>Signs and Nature of the Conjunctions.</i>
ADVERSATIVE,	{ Coupling two sentences and denoting the opposition of the second with regard to the first.
SIGNS,	{ <i>but, yet, however, nevertheless, notwithstanding.</i>
EXCEPTIONAL,	{ Restraining, stopping, barring, or reserving.
SIGNS,	{ <i>but, unless, otherwise, save, except.</i>
CONDITIONAL,	{ Shewing both the obligation and restriction.
SIGNS,	{ <i>if, supposing, on condition, if not, provided, so that, but if.</i>
CONCESSIVE,	{ Such are those which grant the thing to be so.
SIGNS,	{ <i>altho', granting, admitting, put the case that, suppose that</i>
DUBIOUS,	{ Doubting, suspending, inclining to the negative.
SIGNS,	{ <i>whether, if perhaps, I wonder.</i>
DECLARATIVE,	{ Manifesting, explaining, publishing, shewing, or setting forth.
SIGNS,	{ <i>namely, to wit, for example, that is to say.</i>
INTERROGAT.	{ Questioning or asking, demanding, examining, or sifting.
SIGNS,	{ <i>whether? is it? why? wherefore? to what end or purpose?</i>
COMPARATIVE,	{ Resembling things, as best to worst great to small.
SIGNS,	{ <i>so, as, like, same, such.</i>
AUGMENTATIVE	{ Increasing, enlarging, improving, adding, supplying, amending.
SIGNS,	{ <i>besides, even, over and above, also, moreover, further.</i>
DIMINUTIVE,	{ Decreasing, extenuating, or taking away, the force of some word or thing.
SIGNS,	{ <i>at least, however, yet, nevertheless, howbeit.</i>

<i>Names.</i>	<i>Signs and Nature of the Conjunctions.</i>
CAUSATIVE,	{ Belonging to or shewing the power or cause of producing any thing of a like kind.
SIGNS,	{ <i>because, by reason, whereas, for or inasmuch as.</i>
ILLATIVE,	{ A conclusion, inference, or conse- quence drawn from preceding ar- guments.
SIGNS,	{ <i>therefore, now, then, so that, since, seeing, as.</i>

Note, Many of the foregoing Conjunctions may be used as Adverbs, and so *vice versa* as Occasion may require.

Here follow several short Praxes, or Practical Lessons on all the foregoing Conjunctions, shewing their Application in Order as they stand.

Praxis on Copulatives.

Bread *and* Cheese, Beer *and* Ale.
 King George is liberal *and* charitable.
Both here and there, *both* one and t'other,
 John *and* Mary are married.
 I sink deeper *and* deeper.
 You love peace very much, *and* I too.
 He is for war, and so are you and I *both*.
 You love good eating, and I *likewise*.
 To grow better *and* better, worse *and* worse.

Praxis on Disjunctives.

Peter *or* John, it is one *or* other of them.
 Will you play *or* will you not.
 I do not know *whether* it be good or bad.
 If you don't care to go to Rome, *neither* do I.
Either this or that, *either* rich or poor.

Either

Either good luck or ill luck, *either* in jest or earnest.
Either by fair or foul means you shall do what I bid you
If you dislike harlots, I love them as little.
It is *either* my brother or sister that has done it.
I am sure it is *neither* you *nor* I.

Praxis on *Adversatives*.

She is not handsome, *but* she pleases me.
Tho' she promised marriage, *yet* she would not have him
However Marianne may despise me, *yet* I esteem her.
I believe the thing true, *notwithstanding* I can't prove it

Praxis on *Exceptives*.

I will not go *unless* you will go with me.
Serve the King *otherwise* you will be punished.
I do nothing of what you say *except* the going to church.
I will do whatever you ask me *save* the telling a lie.

Praxis on *Conditionals*.

If you fight you will gain the victory.
Do your duty, *if not*, you'll be cashiered.
If you will stay for me I will go.
Upon condition the King sends for me I will go.
Supposing the King commands then I obey.

Praxis on *Concessives*.

Provided I be satisfied, what signifies with what.
The French will be beat, *in case* the English take up arms
Robbing would be honoured, *provided* it were done
with gallantry.

Praxis on *Dubious Conjunctions*.

I do not know *whether* it be so or no.
I wonder *whether* or no he will do what he said.
I don't know *if* I shall go to-morrow.
Perhaps I may come back the same evening.
They say the Bishops will hold a Synod, query *if* it will
be admitted.

Praxis on Declaratives.

There are four elements, *namely*, earth, air, fire, and water.

There are four seasons in the year, *to wit*, summer, winter, spring, and autumn.

England abounds with all things useful, *as* corn, meat, wool, tin, copper, lead, &c.

Sir Isaac Newton is very learned, *for example*, he is a general historian, a mathematician, and a philosopher.

This merchant has all sorts of wares, *as* cloths, silks, &c.

The light of Grace, *that is to say*, the vision of God.

Several parts of Speech compose one discourse, *that is to say*, or *to wit*, Noun, Pronoun, Verb, &c.

Praxis on Interrogatives.

Why did ye do it? I would know *whether* he be in earnest?

To what *end* came you to my house?

To what *purpose* did you undertake it?

Wherefore have you told so many lies?

Whither shall I go, or fly from thy presence?

Praxis on Comparatives.

As you do *so* will I. I do just *as* you did.

I will do the *like*.

He is *as* much your friend *as* mine.

I will serve him the *same* trick.

You can't do it *so* well *as* I have done.

I heard *such* a story *as* you never heard in your life.

Praxis on Augmentatives.

Besides that he is a liar, he is a thief.

He is brave even *beyond* what is reported.

He is *moreover* learned in proportion.

Over and above this he is extremely affable.

She is kind *even* to a fault.

Praxis on Diminutives.

If you won't assist me yourself, *at least* don't hinder others.

Tho' he be proud, he is not *however* very churlish.

He may be passionate, *however* he is easily pacified.

If I can't stay to vanquish my enemy, *at least* I can fly to escape him.

Seeing we have so profusely spent the meal, let us *at least* give God the bran; alluding to our far-spent lives in folly, that we should apply the remainder in God's service.

Praxis on Causatives.

I cannot assist you *because* I am poor.

I cannot run *by reason* I am lame.

Inasmuch as you have faithfully served me, I will amply reward you.

Inasmuch as ye have done it unto them, ye have done it unto me.

Forasmuch as it hath pleased God of his infinite mercy to take to himself, &c.

Praxis on Illatives.

Man is a creature, *therefore* is mortal.

Since all men are fallible, who is there without fault.

Now I am well assured he will not complain of our conduct.

Then let us all agree to do as we said.

Seeing no other help is at hand, we must do it ourselves.

Seeing things are thus determin'd, we must submit.

Wherefore let us not be disheartened.

Whereupon we all agreed to go.

Thereupon the whole was concluded.

*Remarks on the Conjunction's Destination,
Shewing its Nature, Use, and Application.*

OF all the Conjunctions, the chief and most generally used is *and*, which serves to unite two words under one Affirmation, as, *Peter and Paul preach*, not *preaches*, because Peter and Paul being two persons joined together, they are both but as one Nominative word to the Verb *preach*, which is also Plural, to agree with these two Persons.

This Conjunction also serves several Substantives, but is put only between the two last, requiring a Verb Plural, as, *bread, wine, meat, cheese, pepper, and salt*, are among the necessaries of life; *wisdom, prudence, valour and liberality*, are exalted virtues. But this Copulative is never put between Adjectives, as, *he was a brave, stout, clever, handsome man*, not *and handsome*, &c. however it comes in very well between two Verbs that express local motion, as, *let him come and drink*, *let him come and go when he pleases*.

Two or more Substantives singular, signifying different things, and being joined by a copulative Conjunction, always form the Plural, and therefore if a Verb and a Noun come after them, both these must be put in the Plural Number, as, *faith, hope, and charity are divine virtues*; but when two or more Substantives singular are joined together, and signify but one person or thing, they require no more than a Singular Number, as, *George the Third, King of England, and Elector of Hanover is an excellent Prince*.

The next Conjunction that is most in use is *or*, which is a disjunctive, serving to separate or divide the sense of two words in one sentence, as, *Peter or Paul preaches to-day*, not *preach to-day*, because Peter and Paul being thus separated by *or*, they are each a Nominative word to the Verb *preaches*, which is singular, to agree with these two persons separately, as, *Peter preaches, or Paul preaches, &c.*

ALSO,

Also, Is a Conjunction which sometimes comes after *and*, as, *I ordered this and also that, I will give you this and more also.* It likewise follows *not only*, as, *I mention to you not only what he told me, but also what I myself know to be true.*

The endings *eth* or *s* of the Verb are generally left out when attended by these Conjunctions, *if, tho', that, altho', unless, whether*, as, *if he dare do it, for if he dares do it; he will dare (not dares) tho' he die (not dies) for it; if the master forbid him he'll not do it, lest he correct him, or lest he be corrected.*

Also, whenever the Passive Auxiliary Verbs are attended with these Conjunctions, it is reckoned not so good English to use them with the Singular as with the Plural Verbs, which in this case go annexed with the Singular Pronoun, as, *if I were he, if he be there, if I be thus harrassed, tho' I were to undergo every inconvenience, I would still persevere*, and not, *if I was he, if he is there, if I am thus harrassed, if I was to undergo, &c.*

Great care should be taken not to join together two Conjunctions of the same meaning, as some who call themselves Englishmen too often do, as, *if (in case) my brother comes, &c. if (in case) you like it, &c.*

When several Nouns, Substantives or Adjectives, of different numbers, come together in the same phrase, and are tied by a Conjunction under one Affirmation, some use the word *thing*, either before or after, to perfect the sense, as, *it is a sad, grievous, and vexatious thing that he should stay so late; it is a thing highly to be lamented and complained of; and in Psalm xcii. It is a thing both good and mete to praise the highest Lord.* But when I say gold, silver, fame, honours and dignities, are *things* uncertain, or uncertain *things*, here being no obscurity, it would be as good sense if the word *things* were entirely omitted.

BUT, Is both an Exceptive and Negative Conjunction, and supplies the place of *no more than* in these words, *I have but one hundred crowns, we have but a week to Christmas, i. e. no more than one week; he wrote but one letter, i. e. no more than one, &c.*

Some-

Sometimes in the Subjunctive Mood we place the Verb before the Personal Pronoun, leaving out the Conjunction by way of elegance, as, *had she* more beauty than Venus, or *were she* more chaste than Lucretia, I would not regard her, which answers to, *if she had*, or *if she were*, and so likewise in this turn of expression, which conveys a beautiful metaphor.

Were I of royal robe, and lord of all the globe,
And she as poor as Job, she should be mine.

Where we see these Conjunctions, *if*, *tho'*, *yet*, are all fully understood to precede the Personal Pronoun and Verb, as if the sentence were thus express'd, *if* or *tho'* *I were* of royal robe, and *if* *I were* lord of all the globe, and *if* or *altho'* *she were* as poor as Job, *yet she should be* mine, &c.

Observe, in the following sentence, that two or more Participles coming together, are joined by the Copulative *and*, as, *that pleased and charmed the prince*, and not like the French manner, *cela plut au prince, & le charma*; for although this may be good French, it is not so good English to say in its literal translation, *that pleased the prince and charmed him*.

THEN, After *what* and *why*, has always a relation to something going before, or following after, as, *your grandmother is dead, and what then? Why then, she must be buried*.

NOW, Is an illative Conjunction, and is frequently followed by *that*, signifying *since*, as, *now that you are come, I will go out*.

BEING, Was formerly used for these Conjunctions, *now*, *as*, *since*, *seeing*, *because*, &c. Example, *being things are so ordered, being I am old and worn out*, &c. But this manner of expression is become quite obsolete.

The Comparative Conjunctions (especially poetical ones) are commonly made by *such*, *as*, *so*, *like*. Examp. *such once were critics*, &c. *such as Chaucer is shall Dryden be*.

As, when immediately followed by *to* or *for*, signifies *with regard to*, viz. *as to vice it is detestable, as for virtue*

virtue it is most laudable : It is also a note of Affe-
 ration or rather of Imprecation, viz. *as I am an honest*
man ! as I am a sinner to God ! as I live saith the Lord !
as I hope to be saved ! It is a proper Conjunction of
 Comparifon when the fentence is affirmative, viz. *he*
has as much wit as his mafter ; ſhe is as wife as handſome :
 But where it is negative, the Conjunction *ſo* comes im-
 mediately after, as, *ſhe has not ſo much beauty as wit,*
 i. e. *as ſhe has wit ; he is not ſo learned as you.*

So, ſerves to avoid the repetition of a whole ſentence,
 as, *they ſay you are a liar. Who told you ſo ?* (inſtead
 of, *Who told you I was a liar ?*) *I am told we ſhall have*
peace, ſo they ſay.

When *ſo* is followed by *as*, it ſerves inſtead of the
 Relative Pronoun *that*, as, *Do your buſineſs ſo as nothing*
may be wanting.

SUCH, is uſed with Subſtantives in the Singular
 and Plural, but with the general Article *a* or *an* after
 it, whenever it comes before a Noun of the Singular
 Number, as, *ſuch a man, ſuch a woman*, but before a
 Plural it is joined to the Noun without the Article, as,
uch men, ſuch women. It has the word *as* after it in-
 ſtead of the relative Pronouns *what* or *who*, Example,
ſuch as ſeek the paths of virtue are wiſe, ſuch as I have
got you ſhall have.

SAME, is both abſolute and relative, and uſed with
 the limited Article *the*, both in the Singular and Plural
 Number, as, *the ſame ſhirt, the ſame ſhoes, it is the*
ſame, they are the ſame, &c. *Very* and *ſelf* are alſo
 frequently joined to *ſame*, for whenever we would ex-
 preſs identity we ſay, *the very ſame, the ſelf ſame*, and
 ſome will go ſo far as to uſe all the three terms, as, *the*
very ſelf ſame perſon or thing, &c.

BOTH, Is always made uſe of with the Copulative
and, as, *both my uncle and aunt dined here yeſterday, when*
we had both wine and muſic.

It is alſo often underſtood when it is not expreſſed,
 as, *you and ſhe muſt go*, i. e. *both muſt go.*

EITHER and *OR*, are uſed only in diſjunctive affir-
 mative ſentences.

NEITHER

NEITHER *and* NOR, are used only in Negatives of the same kind.

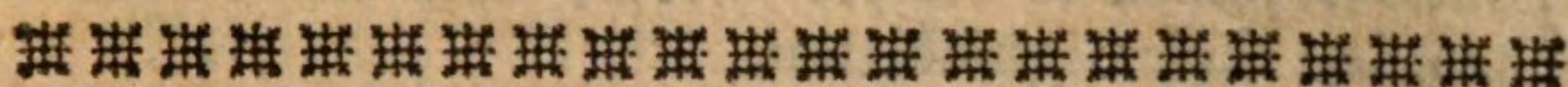
Thus, whenever the Conjunction *either* is at the beginning of a Paragraph, *or* is commonly in some part of it, which must likewise be remarked with regard to *neither* and *nor*.

When several Nouns or Verbs come together, and we make use of the word *either*, we must repeat *or* after it, if *neither* then *nor*, as, *you came either to dance or play, or laugh or sing; neither you nor I, nor our fathers, nor grandfathers have ever seen the like.*

Also observe, that these Conjunctions, *both, either, and neither*, are often followed by a Genitive Case, as, *both of us, either of ye, neither of them, &c.*

WHEREAS, Is a term very much used in Law Prefidents, especially in recitals, which always begin with this word. It is always frequently made use of in common discourse, but care should be taken not to confound it with *whereof*, as too many illiterate persons often do, as, *he told me of six horses, whereof there were but four that ran; also of a misfortune that happened, whereof if I had known it, it might have been prevented, &c.*





CHAP. VII.

Of PREPOSITIONS.

A PREPOSITION is a Part of Speech most commonly set before other Parts, as the Latin word *Prepositio* itself imports, serving to mark or shew their state or reference to each other; or it is a word added to other words, in order to denote the respect or relation one thing has to another.

They are divided into separable and inseparable.

The *separable* Prepositions are those which have the signification in themselves.

The *inseparable* ones are never found alone, but are always used in composition at the beginning of simple Words, making no sense at all of themselves without being incorporated with others.

Table of Separable Prepositions.

at	between	off	to
above	betwixt	on	unto
about	beneath	out	ward
after	below	upon	toward
against	by	out of	towards
among	for	over	under
amongst	from	through	with
before	in	thorough	within
behind	into	'till	without
beyond	of	until	

Note,

Note, The following are made up of Separable Prepositions joined to Simple Words, with the Power of changing their Signification,

<i>Separ.</i> <i>Prep.</i>	<i>Simp. words.</i>	<i>Separ.</i> <i>Prep.</i>	<i>Simp. words.</i>
above	{ board bound said spoken mentioned	before	{ hand named mentioned said known
after	{ ages clap game noon pains wit ward thought named mentioned reckoning	for	{ get gat got gotten getting fake fook faking faken fwear fwore fwearing fworn ward
behind	hand	off	{ set spring
beyond	sea		
bye	ways		
below	{ stairs deck		
between	deck		
for	{ bad bid bidden bare bore borne gave give given	with	{ in out all draw stand standing stood hold holding held

The following Prepositions in *in*, generally denote contrariety, negation, or dissolution. *in*

Separ. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

in { action
accessible
adequate
animate
articulate
attention
correct
credible
credulous
credulity
continent
coherent
consistent
comparable
confederate
consideration
civility
commodious
convenient
compatible
comprehensible
discreet
discretion
direct
dispose
disposed
divisible
dubitable
dependent
effectual
equality

Separ. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

in { evitable
exorable
equity
estimable
firm
fringe
famous
grate
glorious
human
humane
humanity
imitable
justice
ordinate
offensive
road
slave
snare
solvent
separable
sufferable
tolerable
tractable
fatiate
fatiable
scrutable
visible
violate
violable
valid

The following Prepositions in *in* rather augment and increase the signification of what the simple words themselves import.

Separ. Simp. words.
Prep.

in { cite
 chant*
 courage
 carnate
 carnation
 camp*
 crease
 counter*
 close*
 deed
 duce
 dear*
 flame
 flamable
 finite
 form
 force*
 fancy
 gage*
 genius
 habit
 join*
 joy
 jury
 let
 large*
 most
 quest
 quire
 rich*

Separ. Simple words
Prep.

in { rage*
 roll*
 sect
 sure
 scribe
 side
 step
 stall
 still
 spire
 sue*
 sign*
 tend
 tent
 tense
 trench
 trust
 treat*
 treaty
 treating
 treated
 tire
 throne*
 vent
 vest
 vert
 venom
 voice
 ward

Those of the above words mark'd with a Star, are
 spelt *in* or *en* indifferently.

Also these in *out* encrease their Signification.

out { ask
 brave
 bawl

out { bid
 climb
 cry

Separ.

Separ. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

out { cast
do
done
face
go
grow
guard
line
jeer
law
land
lie
live
let
learn
last
parts
parish

Separ. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

out { ride
right
run
side
stretch
swear
shine
stand
stood
strip
stript
shoot
shot
throw
talk
ward
work
walk

Also those in *over*.

over { act
against
allowance
board
bear
bore
borne
bid
bold
balance
burthen
cast
come
cloud
curious
charge
dear
done

over { flow
free
great
grown
good
heat
heated
haste
hasty
head
hear
heared
lay
look
loop
land
match
much

Separ. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

over { pay
pile
plus
power
run
reach
rate
rule
reckon
righteous
sea
fee
feen
set
fight
stall
shoot

Separ. *Simp. words*
Prep.

over { shot
strain
sharp
turn
throw
threw
thrown
thwart
take
value
vigilant
wife
ween
weight
work
whelm
witty

These Prepositions in *under* have the power of diminishing.

under { ask
bid
do
done
foot
feet
go
gone
hand
ling
lip
lay
mine
most
mention
neath
name
prop

under { rate
reckon
stand
standing
fell
fold
signed
fide
take
took
value
write
wrote
written
wood
went
weight
wrought

Note,

Note, The following List of words borrowed from the foregoing Separable Prepositions, communicate their signification to Verbs, without being incorporated with them, so that as often as a new Preposition comes after the Verb its sense is entirely changed.

to	{	come	at	to	{	come	off
		go	above			go	on
		look	after			look	up
		run	against			run	upon
			among				for
			amongst				from
			before				out
			behind				out of
			beyond				over
			between				through
			betwixt				thorough
			beneath				toward
			below				under
			by				upward
			in				toward
			to				within
			into				without
			unto				

By the foregoing and following Prepositions, Foreigners may see at one view the great Variety of compound words, which are very extraordinary as well in their number as signification, many of which are peculiar only to the English Tongue. These, numerous as they seem, might be multiplied, but that use and curiosity are here sufficiently gratified, and the frame of our Language, and Modes of our Combinations, are amply discovered for the ease and benefit of all those who would excel in composition.

Table of Inseperable Prepositions.

Note, Most of these following are Latin Prepositions, used in the composition of English words, and have the like force and power of increasng, diminishing, and even changing the signification of the simple words with which they are incorporated.

<i>Insep. Prep.</i>	<i>Simp. words.</i>	<i>Insep. Prep.</i>	<i>Simp. words.</i>
a	base	ac	quire
	bate		quaint
	bound		quiescent
	bout	ad	am
	bridge		apt
	corn		just
	gain		judge
	main		hear
	maze		mire
	mifs		monition
	mend		vice
	mount		vent
	muse	be	came
	pace		come
	part		cause
	pish		fall
	rise		fell
	rose		fore
	tone		friend
	vail		fool
	vast		guile
	ward		gun
ab	stain		get
	sent		got
ac	coft		hind
	curate		half
	knowledge		have
	quit		hove

Insep.

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

hold
head
long
love
low
moan
night
fide
smear
fought
speak
be { spoke
spoken
ftir
ftow
think
times
tray
troth
wail
ware
witch
adjutant
equal
existant
eternal
co { incident
operate
partner
ordination
mend
mode
mute
com { pare
pile
plain
plot

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

denfe
found
fort
tempt
con { tend
tent
troul
trite
vert
lute
di { veft
vine
vifion
ample
agitate
asperate
change
chequer
ex { communicate
plain
pert
tent
toll
terminate
legal
il { literate
legitimate
lustration
lumination
long
ob { fcene
due
per { fame
verfe

Insep.

Insep. *Simp. words*
Prep.

pre { deliver
 caution
 engage
 eminent
 eminence
 fix
 judge
 lude
 mature
 monition
 meditate
 occupy
 ordain
 pare
 fage
 sumptuous
 suppose
 vail

pro { cure
 fane
 found
 long
 mote
 rogue

fe { cure
 date
 quest
 vere

sub { dean
 due
 divide
 lime
 ordinate
 stantial
 scribe
 fervant

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

fur { cease
 loin
 name
 pass

trans { act
 action
 acted
 mute
 mutation
 marine
 migration
 port
 position

ante { cede
 date

anti { christ
 gallic

inter { cession
 change
 changeable
 lace
 lard
 leave
 line
 meddle
 mix
 mingle
 mediate
 texture
 view
 weave

super { add
 abundant
 cargo

Insep.

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

super- { eminent
 { excellent
 { induce
 { intend
 { structure
 { cede

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

contra { band
 { distinction

extra { judicial
 { ordinary
 { parochial

These fix Prepositions following, in *de*, *ir*, *dis*, *im*, *un* and *non*, generally denote contrariety, negation, or dissolution

de { bar
 { base
 { bate
 { camp
 { coy
 { cease
 { cry
 { creed
 { face
 { fame
 { fault
 { fence
 { file
 { fraud
 { fray
 { finite
 { flower
 { generate
 { liberate
 { liver
 { light
 { legate
 { mean
 { note
 { nominate
 { part
 { populate

de { ride
 { scent
 { fire
 { spite
 { spoil
 { throne
 { vice
 { vote

dis { allow
 { array
 { agree
 { approve
 { affect
 { affection
 { advantage
 { able
 { annul
 { believe
 { band
 { card
 { cant
 { charge
 { credit
 { courage
 { commend
 { ease

Insep.

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

engage
figure
grace
gust
guise
hearten
inherit
interest
interested
ingenuous
lodge
loyal
may
miss
mantle
own
obey
obedient
dis { patch
play
place
please
prove
praise
quiet
robe
sect
service
satisfy
similar
taste
train
trust
temper
till
tort
troy
unite

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

broil
bitter
bolden
modest
mortal
moderate
mediate
moveable
material
moral
mature
mutable
maculate
pair
pend
pale
part
peach
im { plant
print
pure
purity
pious
prison
patient
piety
potent
position
panel
possible
politic
partial
prudent
pending
perfect
provident
proper
propriety

Insep.

Insep. Simp. words.
Prep.

im { penetrable
practicable

ir { reclaimable
religious
resolute
reparable
remediable
resistable
remissible
reducible
refutable
reproachable
retrievable
refragable
reprehensible
reproveable
recoverable

un { able
apt
advised
alterable
answerable
acquainted
bar
bend
bent
bind
bound
bolt
blameable
clasp
clean
cloath
chaste
comfortable
conscionable
do

Insep. Simp. words.
Prep.

done
due
deliver
expected
elegant
equal
employed
fair
fold
fortified
fathomable
gain
glue
govern
governable
guard
generous
hasp
hinge
un { hurt
heard
hook
hand
hold
heedful
imaginable
improved
just
kind
known
lace
lade
load
lock
less
loose
learn
learned
lettered

Insep.

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

man
 made
 mask
 moor
 move
 molested
 manured
 mannerly
 mindful
 nail
 necessary
 needful
 occupied
 offered
 paid
 pitied
 polished
 pardoned
 pardonable
 un { profitable
 paved
 pin
 pleasant
 prepared
 quenched
 quenchable
 questionable
 questionably
 ripe
 reap
 rip
 roll
 safe
 say
 seen
 screw
 fought
 seal
 sorted

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

searchable
 suitable
 scriptural
 serviceable
 sufferable
 sociable
 settled
 till
 true
 truth
 twist
 twine
 un { twirl
 twitch
 tie
 tied
 tuneable
 tractable
 tainted
 used
 usual
 wise
 warily
 wearied

 non { age
 action
 admittance
 attendance
 appearance
 conformist
 entity
 existence
 payment
 performance
 residence
 suit
 suited

These

These following in *fore* generally signify Precedency, Foresight, or Forethought.

Insepar. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

fore { arm
cast
close
fend
front
go
hand
head
judge
know
knew
known
land
lock

Insepar. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

fore { loin
man
mast
most
noon
part
run
seen
say
fight
tell
thought
taste
warn

The following in *mis* generally denote some defect or error.

mis { apply
behave
call
count
chance
chief
deed
deal
fortune
govern
give
gave
guide
hap
judge

mis { like
lead
name
place
print
reckon
represent
spend
take
took
taken
trust
use
understand
understood

The following in *re* augment and increase the signification of what the simple words themselves import.

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

re { admit
assemble
bound
build
buff
bate
cant
coil
collect
capitulate
cognizance
conciliation
commend
deliver
enter
edify
fit
fix
fine
fresh
fund
form
formation
geneate
gard
gain
hear
hearse
join
iterate
instate
inforce
lease
lent
lax

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

re { ly
load
mote
mark
mind
mount
move
new
occupy
ordain
obtain
pass
place
proof
pay
paint
print
pulse
pave
pent
pine
past
probate
present
petition
publick
publish
quest
quite
fort
spite
solution
sponsable
splendent
tort

Insep.

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

re {
torted
turn
trench
treat
tail
tire

Insep. *Simp. words.*
Prep.

re {
unite
vile
volve
view
vere
ward

Table of Mixed Prepositions.

en
ex
re
counter
trans

} act

a
re
pro

} bate

ac
re
dis
con
un

} cord

in
oc
re
con

} cur

re
con
dis
inter

} course

re
mis
un

} called

ac
re
un
dis
mis

} count

ac
re
con
ante
inter
super

} cede

re
un
dis

} cover

ac
ex
re
un
de
dis
pro

} claim

dis
in
un
fore

} closed

Insep. Prep. Simp. words

re
un
fore } cast

re
un
pro } create

ex
in
re } cite

ad
re
un } drefs

de
in
re
a
fe
con
pro
intro } duce

un
re
pre } fix

con
de
re
super } fine

af
in
con } firm

de
in } form

Insep. Prep. Simp. words

re
un
con
per
trans } form

af
con
fore } front

re
un
pro } fit

be
un
re } held

ad
en
re
con
dis
sub } join

di
re
trans } late

dis
un
mis } like

de
re
in
un
mis } lay

<i>Insep. Prep.</i>	<i>Simp. words.</i>	<i>Insep. Prep.</i>	<i>Simp. words.</i>
a re dis	} miss	ex re dis im com	} pell
a re dis	} member	ex re de im com trans	} port
a re dis	} mount		
re ad dis sub trans inter	} mission	ex pro com	} pound
un preter super	} natural	com mis sur enter	} prize
dis re counter	} order	de dis ex re im com pro	} pose
dis im re	} pair		
de ex re im com sup	} press	re un dis mis	} place
un im preter	} perfect	ap re im dis	} prove

<i>Insep. Prep.</i>	<i>Simp. words</i>	<i>Insep. Prep.</i>	<i>Simp. words</i>
ac in re	} quire	re con dis	} strain
re un dis	} qualify	as in de sub pre pro super circum	} scribe
as re dis con ab pre	} sent	ab re dis un	} solve
un on re be	} set	be re in out pre sub co-in	} side
a in re con per trans	} spire	re dis con pre un	} sent
re de ob con pre sub	} serve	at in ex con dis por pre	} tend
de re as con	} sign		

<i>Insep. Prep.</i>	<i>Simp. words</i>	<i>Insep. Prep.</i>	<i>Simp. words</i>
at de con pro	} test	ab ac re mis dis un	} use
at de dis re ex con pro sub	} tract	a in di con re per	} verse
in dis mis	} trust	a di in con re per sub	} version
un fore	} told	in con pre circum	} vent
at re con dis	} tribute		
be re mis under	} take, &c.		

Note, The simple words annexed to all the aforegoing Prepositions have an absolute signification in themselves when taken separately, which shew the beauty and copiousness of the English Tongue, equal, if not superior, in this respect, to any other Language.

Remarks

*Remarks on Prepositions that are various,
Shewing their Rule and Government precarious.*

THE *Conjunctions*, of which I have already spoken, and the *Prepositions*, which I now treat of, are, as it were, the very Nerves and Ligaments of all Discourse; and we cannot attain to a right Knowledge of any Language, especially English, without a good understanding of these Parts of Speech.

But I do not here speak of the Government of Prepositions over Nouns by *Cases*, in the manner of the Latin, French, and other Languages; for the English Tongue has no Diversity of Cases at all, nor indeed need they any, the foregoing *Prepositions* effectually answering the Purpose. But then again, their Rules are exceeding vague and uncertain; for although the Prepositions generally come before the Noun, yet they also come before other Parts of Speech, as may be seen in these five Examples, viz.

1st, Before the Pronoun, as, *he came to him, or from him.*

2d, Before the Verb, as, *to fight, to read.*

3d, Before the Article, as, *with the help of a sword.*

4th, Before the Participle, as, *after having read, &c.*

5th, Before the Adverb, both of Time and Place, as, *from hence, from thence*, and sometimes after the word it governs, as, *What did you sell this for? &c.*

It serves also to shew the state and dependance of Words, as, *John dwells at the market, Charles lives in the country; he lives within the city, or without it; Peter goes over the bridge, or under it, I go to the place, or from it, &c.*

The following is an ample Explanation of all the Separable Prepositions, collected from the most approved

proved Authors, and treated under all their various significations.

AT, Denotes Nearness to a Place or Thing, also Time, Price, the Instrument, Cause, Manner, as, *at home, at three o'clock, at sixpence each, &c.*

It also signifies as much as *in*, as, *at school, at church, at London, i. e. in the school, &c.* It lies *at* the bottom, *i. e. in* the bottom; *at* the beginning, *i. e. in* the beginning.

It signifies *about*, as, *at sun-set, at break of day, i. e. about sun-set, about break of day.*

Near or close by, as, he watches *at* the door, *i. e. near* the door.

For, as, he sold it *at* a great rate, *i. e. for* a great rate. What do you sell it *at*? *i. e.* What do you sell it *for*?

With, as, he plays *at* bowls, *i. e. with* bowls.

On or upon. Handell is excellent *at* the Harpsichord and Violin, *i. e. on, &c.* Lully is skillful *at* the Haut-boy, *i. e. on, &c.*

It is used also to denote all sorts of business or action, as, to be *at* study, *at* dinner, &c. *i. e.* he studies, he dines, &c.

ABOVE, Chiefly relates to Place, and answers to *below* or *beneath*, as, his chamber is *above* mine.

It also denotes being higher in greatness, excellence, or any degrees of honour, as, Cæsar could not abide to have any body *above* him in learning.

It also signifies *beyond* or *more than*, as, *above* his strength, *i. e. beyond*. He minded none of those *above* the rest, *i. e. more than the rest*.

It denotes *more or longer than*, as, he fought *above* two hours, *i. e. more or longer than, &c.*

Also *besides*, as, over and *above* those evils, there was, &c. *i. e. besides* these, &c.

ABOUT, Relates both to Time and Place, as, *about* noon, *about* Christmas, *about* the field.

It

It is used to denote within the compass, or in some part of it, as, *they have set up a shop about Cheapside, i. e. in some part of, or near Cheapside.*

It signifies *round about*, as, they made a hedge *about* the ditch, *i. e. round about*; they made a moat *about* the house, *i. e. round about.*

It implies *concerning* or *of*, as, he wrote *about* the circulation of the blood, *i. e. of or concerning it.*

Also *nigh*, as, it was *about* night, *i. e. nigh, or at night*

About, being put to Verbs, signifies ready to do, or the future time of action, as, he is *about* to fight, *i. e. he is ready to fight.* He is *about* to depart to-morrow, *i. e. he will depart.*

It denotes also the present time of action, and imports one's being busied and employed in doing of any thing, as, *I am about business, i. e. doing or designing it.*

It also signifies *near*, and sometimes *more or less*, as, his estate is *about (near)* 200l. a year. The board is *about* 20 feet long and 2 broad. He lives *about* two miles off. It is *about* five bushels; *about* two pound; somebody has been *about* our house, meaning literally to invest or beset it, or else figuratively to rent, lease, or purchase it.

In old English we may perceive that they formerly used the word *some* for *about*, following the French manner of expression, as, *J'ai quelque cinquante ecus, I have some fifty crowns, for, I have about fifty crowns.*

And much after this fashion we find the old Translators of Don Quixote speaking of *some* forty years ago, and of Sancho's receiving *some* fifty stripes, instead of *about* forty years ago, and *about* fifty stripes. But this manner of expression is grown obsolete.

AFTER, Serves to denote posterity of Time, and inferiority of place or order, and is put in opposition to *before*. First, Posterity of time, *i. e. a being or coming after*, as, *after* the Deluge Abraham was born, *i. e. Abraham came into the world, or his birth was after the Deluge.* *After* Julius Cæsar Christ was born, *i. e. Christ came into the world after Julius Cæsar.*

Second,

Second, Inferiority of place or order, *i. e.* a lower degree, as, the Lieutenant comes *after* the Captain, his Place is *after* the Master's.

But *after*, when it is put to Verbs, has then reference only to time, as, *after* he arrived. There is a particular sense of *after* used in Painting, as when one says to paint *after* Raphael or *after* Titian, *i. e.* to copy a Picture made by Raphael or Titian, or *after* their manner; that is *according to* as he writes or paints *after* his copy, *i. e.* according to his copy.

There are several other senses in which *after* is taken, as, she longs or hankers *after* it, *i. e.* she wishes for it with an ardent desire. *After all*, *i. e.* after having well examined all things, or every thing being well considered. We also say, *after that*, by way of connexion to discourse.

AGAINST, Sometimes serves to denote a direct opposition, by which one designs to fight, to attack, to destroy a person or thing, as, *to march against the enemy, to conspire against the King, to speak against religion.* So to speak *for* or *against*, here *thing* or *person* is understood.

Against, when it relates to place, signifies *over-against*, as, *his house is against mine; he lodges against the church; I was placed against him.*

It also denotes contiguity or joining to, as, *to fasten a thing against the wall; he run up a wall against our house.*

It signifies *from*, as, *to defend the myrrile against the cold, i. e. from the cold.*

It also denotes *for*, as, *he prepares a dinner against to-morrow, i. e. for to-morrow.*

Lastly, *against* joined with *over*, *i. e. over-against*, is only used when reference is made to the opposite position of some thing, person, or place, as, *that house was straight over-against the other; over-against that place; he stood over-against him.* But we have lately learnt from Foreigners to say *opposite*, facing or fronting, which means the same as *over-against*.

AMONG

AMONG or AMONGST, Has been held to signify as much as *between* or *betwixt*; but there is a distinction to be observed in the use of them. *Between* or *betwixt* properly signifies *between* two persons or things, and therefore when we speak of more, it is better to use *among*; tho' they are sometimes used promiscuously.

BEFORE, Denotes priority both of time and order, also rank or situation, as, *before* the creation of the world, *before* the birth of Christ; the Captain marches *before* the Soldiers; the horse goes *before* the cart.

It is used to mark the setting or placing of a person or thing, and then it denotes nearness, as, *put it before the fire, i. e. over-against or near.*

It is used by way of comparison, and denotes preference of any kind, as, *he values learning before gold, i. e. more than gold*, and in this sense it signifies as much as *beyond*, as, *in many arts he is before all, and in Rhetoric behind none, before all, i. e. beyond all.*

It signifies *rather* or *sooner*, as, *I will do any thing before I will comply, i. e. rather or sooner than. I shall want voice before I shall want words, i. e. sooner than.*

This Preposition is also a Note of Asseveration, or rather of Execration or Swearing, as, *before George I will not bear it.*

BEHIND, Relates to place, and is used to mark the situation which is directly opposite to that which is expressed by *before*, as, *behind* the door, *behind* the house, *behind* the bush.

Also in a figurative manner, when we speak of a person that excells others in any thing, as in the college or at school he leaves all others *behind* him, *i. e. he excells all others in learning*; or is deficient, as, he is *behind* hand in his payments, *i. e. he is slack in paying.*

BEYOND, Relates chiefly to place, or to the further side of which any thing is or goes, as, *beyond* the mountain, *beyond* the church.

It is also used to denote any sort of excess, either good or bad, and is applied to any moral things, or
such

such as regard the Manners of Men, as, *he goes beyond all in justice, i. e. he exceeds all, &c. It pleases him beyond imagination, i. e. it exceeds imagination to think how it pleases him. He rewarded him beyond his merits, i. e. the reward was greater than he deserved.*

It denotes Superiority in any Thing, as, *he went beyond all in valour, strength and agility, i. e. he excelled them, &c.*

It signifies over, as, *he is gone beyond sea, i. e. over sea.*

On the other side, which answers to *hither*, and is used to denote a place that is near, as *beyond* does that which is distant or farther off.

BY, Denotes the efficient Cause, Means, or Motive of any Action or Thing, as, *he was slain by the enemy, he was wounded first by his own fear, then by his enemies sword; nothing is done but by God's permission; all things were created by the word of God.*

It shews the Motive which makes one do a Thing, as, *she is hurried on by her passion.* Also the Means by which one uses to do a thing, or which contributes any way to the doing it, as, *he satisfies all the world by his conduct. He received the letters by the post. He persuades by his reasons.*

It signifies as much as *in*, as, *I will serve him by day or by night, i. e. in the day or night time.*

Through, as, *by Cheapside, i. e. through Cheapside.*

At, as, *to come by, i. e. to obtain or come at.*

By also signifies *beside*, i. e. *by the side*, denoting nearness, as, *he sat by the river, i. e. by the side, nigh, or close to the river.*

It denotes erring or wandering, as, *that time is gone by, i. e. has slipt. That opportunity has passed by, and no recalling it.*

This Preposition is also a Note of Imprecation or Swearing, as, *by my life! by him that made me! by Jove, &c.*

BETWEEN or BETWIXT, Relates both to Time and Place, and is spoken of two Terms in which they

are included, as, *between* or *betwixt* Heaven and earth, i. e. *the space*, &c. Or,

It is spoken of two words including the space of time of which we speak, as, *between* the Promise made to Abraham, and the coming of the Messiah, i. e. *the space of time* which was from the Time when the Promise was made to Abraham, and to the Messiah's coming. And also in these Phrases, *between* or *betwixt* hope and fear.

Observe, there are always two terms considered as being equally distant from the subject of which we speak; as, for Instance, in the first Sentence, *the man is between hope and fear*, i. e. *the man is as distant or far from hope as he is from fear*, or *he has as much hope as he has fear*.

It also signifies as much as in the Middle or thereabout, as, *the river ran between the two fields*, i. e. *in the middle*, &c. *He sat at dinner between or betwixt them*, i. e. *in the middle of them*.

It serves to denote Society or Union, as, There was a Conference *between* them. There is a great Friendship *between* him and me.

It denotes Participation or Sharing, as, The grey is *between* the white and the black, i. e. the grey Colour partakes of Part of the white and Part of the black Colour. The Money to be divided *between* them, i. e. Half or Part to one, and the rest to the other.

It denotes Privacy, as, That was done *between* them both, i. e. privately, or that no Person joined with them in doing it, much like the French *entre nous*, which in English is as much as *between us*, or *between you and I*.

It answers to the Latin *sub rosa*, under the Rose, i. e. *secretly between ourselves*.

BENEATH or BELOW, Generally denotes Place or Situation, and answers to *above*, as, *beneath* the Firmament, *below* the Hemisphere.

It is used to signify Inferiority, as, He is *beneath* him in Honour, i. e. *not so honourable*. He is *beneath* or *below* him in Birth, i. e. *not so well born or descended*. He is *beneath* him in Fortune, i. e. *not so rich*.

The

The following is a very particular Phrase, It is *be-neath* or *below* him to do so and so, i. e. *he would scorn it, his dignity, honour, or conscience is above it, he cannot stoop to so mean an action, &c.*

FOR, Has great Variety of Significations. It serves to denote the End or Object which one proposes in any Action, as, *to fight for the public good.*

It serves to mark the Motive, Cause, or Subject of any Action, and may be rendered by *in consideration*, as, God has done all Things *for* his own Glory. He does all Things *for* the Love of Virtue. I will write this Book *for* your sake.

It is used to mark the use for which a thing is done, as, Chelsea Hospital was built *for* disabled Soldiers, and Greenwich for disabled Seamen. He has the Beef *for* his Dinner.

It denotes Profit, Advantage, Interest, and may be rendered by *in favour*, as, The Lawyer pleads *for* his Client. I do it *for* your Interest. I wrote *for* your Satisfaction.

It shews what Thing is proper or not, as, *a good horse for the chaise. This is fit for a cabinet. That's a good remedy for the Fever.* In which last Example *to cure* is understood.

It is used also to denote Agreement or Help, in opposition to against, as, Peter is *for* me, John is *against* me. The Soldier fights *for* his King and Country.

Also the Convenience of a Thing, as, He is big enough *for* his Age. It is well, Sir, *for* you. Or the Inconvenience, as, The Coat is too big *for* him, the House is too little *for* him.

It is used also to denote Exchange, Trucking, Recompense, Retribution or Requital, and Payment, as, He exchange'd Silk *for* Lace. He gave a Diamond *for* the Chrystal. He rewarded him *for* his good Services, to render Evil *for* Good. He gave him Money *for* the Book. And if we may introduce these Phrases, *Eye for Eye, a Tooth for a Tooth, Fault for Fault.*

It is used to denote *instead of*, or *in place of*, as, I will grind *for* him, i. e. *in his stead.* I will watch *for* you,

you, i. e. *in your place*. Sometimes it signifies a mistake, as, He speaks one word *for* another, takes one person *for* another, and in this Sense we are to take this Phrase, *Whom do you take me for?* when a Man supposes all that Respect is not paid him which he counts his due.

It denotes Distribution of Things by Proportion to several others, as, *he sets down twelve Acres for every man*. Also the Condition of Persons, Things, and Times, as, He was taxed enough *for* his Estate, i. e. *considering his Estate*. He was a learned Man *for* those Times, i. e. *considering those Times in which he lived*. Also Quality, as, He had him *for* a Tutor. He hired him *for* a Coachman. He suborned him *for* a witness.

It likewise signifies as much as *because* or *by reason of*, as, To punish a Man *for* his Crimes, i. e. *because of*, &c. To imprison him *for* Debt, i. e. *because of*, &c. He could not walk faster *for* Age, i. e. *by reason of his years*.

It also denotes *as* or *be*, as, He was sent *for* a Pledge, i. e. *as or to be a Pledge or Hostage*. Also *during*, as, He was chosen *for* Life, i. e. *during Life*.

It is often used to signify *concerning* and *notwithstanding*, Example, *as for me*, i. e. *concerning me*; *as for that*, i. e. *concerning that*. And speaking of the Faults of a Man we add, *for all that he may be an honest Man*. i. e. *notwithstanding*.

FROM, Signifies Motion from Person or Place, and then it is put in Opposition to *to*, as, *he goes from one to the other*, from London to York; *he skips from this to that*.

It is also used to denote the Beginning of Time, as, *from the Creation of the world*, *from his birth*.

It denotes the Original of Things, as, It grew so big *from* a small Seed. He is descended *from* the Family of the Stuarts. Also the Order, as, *from Head to Foot*, *from Stem to Stern*, *from first to last*.

It signifies *off*, as, He took me *from* the Ground, i. e. *off the Ground*; and in these three last Senses it is put for Adverbs, as, *from hence*, i. e. *from this place*; *from hence-*

forth, i. e. *from this time*, or *all times after this*; *from thence* and *from thenceforth*, &c.

IN or INTO, Denotes the Manner of Being, Thinking, Acting or Doing, the Motive which causes one to act, and the Means we use to act by. There is this Distinction to be observed, that *in* relates to Rest, and *into* to Motion, as, Peter lives *in* the House, not *into*, but Peter goes *into* the Cellar.

It relates to Time, as, *in* the Summer, *in* the Winter.

It marks the different Postures and Dispositions of the Body, and the divers Manners of Existence or Being, either of Persons or Things, with Relation either to Art or Nature, as, To be *in* a suppliant Posture, to be *in* good Health. An Army *in* Battle Array. He is *in* his Shirt. He is *in* a Robe of State. Also to comply, as to fall *in* with his Sentiments.

It serves to denote the different Circumstances of a Person's Fortune and Affairs, as, To be *in* Favour, to be rich *in* Land, *in* ready Money; to have his Affairs *in* good Condition, to be *in* good Circumstances, i. e. *to be rich*.

It also expresses the different Manners of Being with relation to the Passions or Affections of the Soul to the Thoughts and Operations of the Mind, as, To be *in* Fear, to be *in* Love, to be *in* Doubt; to put him *into* good Humour, to take it *in* good Part; his Memory is yet *in* Esteem, i. e. *we esteem the remembrance of him*.

It shews the Motive and Object, as, *he lives in hope*, *he dies in despair*, *he did it in revenge for the affront*.

It signifies *among*, as, The Wicked has not God *in* all his Thoughts, i. e. *among all his Thoughts*.

Against or *into*, as, He run the Poker *in* my Face; he put it *in* his Mouth.

It denotes the Change of a Person or Thing, whether it be into better or worse, as, They turn brass *into* Gold, Narcissus was changed *into* a Flower.

OF, Answers to the Genitive Case of the Latin, French, and other Languages, and admits of the same Variety

Variety of Significations. At first it shews the Author of a Thing, as, *the Works of Cicero*, i. e. *the Works which Cicero wrote*. Also the Possessor or Owner of a Thing, as, *the Palace of the King*.

As this Preposition signifies all Sorts of Relation or Respect that the latter Substantive has to the former, so it signifies natural Relation, as, *the Earl's son*, or *the son of the Earl*.

It signifies the Subject, as, a Cup *of* Water, a Piece *of* Bread. Also the Object, as, A Treatise *of* Physic, i. e. *concerning Physic*. He writes *of* the Mathematics, i. e. *concerning it*.

It denotes the Matter of which a Thing is made, as a Cup *of* Gold, a Building *of* Marble, i. e. a Cup made *of* Gold, a Building made *of* Marble; which Phrases may be turned into an Adjective, making a Sort of Compound Word, as, a Golden Cup, a Marble Building.

It is used to signify the Means or Cause, as, to die *of* Hunger, *of* a Consumption. Also the Quality of a Person or Thing, as, a Man *of* Honour, an Affair *of* Importance.

It sometimes denotes an active Sense, as, the Providence *of* God, i. e. the Providence by which he takes Care of all Things, and sometimes a passive Sense, as, the Fear *of* God, i. e. by which he is feared.

Sometimes it denotes both these Senses, as, the Love *of* God, i. e. either the Love with which God loves his own People, or the Love with which good Men love God.

It is sometimes only a Note of Explication or Specification, as, the City *of* London, the City *of* Rome.

Lastly, it signifies *from* and *among*, as, South *of* London, i. e. South *from* it, and *of* four Daughters three were blind, i. e. *among* four Daughters, &c.

OFF, Denotes Separation or Distance, as, to put *off* one's Cloaths; stand *off*, i. e. get away, or on one side; *off* with his Head, i. e. sever it from his Shoulders; he stood aloof *off*, i. e. at a Distance.

It

It signifies Delay, as, He puts me *off*, i. e. *he delays*.

This Preposition, joined to *on* by a Conjunction, signifies Inconstancy or Unsettledness, as, He is *off* and *on* with me, i. e. *he sometimes agrees, and sometimes will not*.

It sometimes is used to signify Approbation or Disgust, as, I am well *off*, i. e. *I fare well*. You are sadly *off*, i. e. *you are pinched in allowance, or suffer in circumstance, or situation*. Also to apostise, as, to fall *off*. Also to embellish, as, set *off*. Also to copy, as, take *off*. Also to stop abruptly, as, to break *off*. Also to escape by a fetch, as, to come *off*.

ON or UPON, Relates both to Time and Place, as, It happened *on* or *upon* that Day, *on* or *upon* that Festival.

When this Preposition relates to Place, it has divers Uses; where it is employed in a Sense more or less proper: But it every where denotes the Superiority of the Situation (that is, being uppermost or over) of Persons or Things in respect to one another, as, to lie *on* or *upon* the Bed; to put his Hat *on* or *upon* his Head. And in Allusion to this Acceptation, it is used in speaking of the Imposition or Raising of Taxes, Contributions, &c. and then it serves to denote either the Persons of whom the Taxes are demanded, or the Funds from whence the Taxes are raised, as, He laid Contributions *on* or *upon* all the Enemy's Country. It is paid out of the Taxes *on* or *upon* Malt and Coals, &c.

In speaking of Business, it is used to denote what we are doing, and the Manner or Subject of our Conversation, Deliberation, or Application, as, to dispute *on* or *upon* such a Subject, to deliberate *on* or *upon* such a Proposition, to make Notes *on* or *upon* such an Author.

It serves also to denote the Cause or Occasion of doing any thing, as, *upon* the News of his Arrival, he presently departed; *on* or *upon* the Advice of the Enemy's Approach they fled.

It

It serves to shew the Consideration of what a Person says, does, or designs, as, *on* or *upon* these Hopes we married; he ventured relying upon the publick Faith, *i. e.* by Virtue of, in Consideration of, &c.

It also signifies to attack, as, to fall *on*, and to encounter, as, come *on*.

It serves also to denote the Terms which one makes use of to affirm any Thing, as, I protest *on* or *upon* my Honour, *on* or *upon* my Conscience, *upon* my Salvation.

It also signifies *concerning*, as, He has agreed *on* or *upon* that Matter, *i. e.* *concerning*.

After, denoting the Reiteration or repeating of something already done or spoken, as, He thanks me with Letter *upon* Letter; he repeats Line *upon* Line, and Precept *upon* Precept.

When added to Verbs, it signifies as much as forward or Continuation, as, to go *on*, *i. e.* *to go forward*.

OUT or OUT OF, Refers to Matter, Time, Place, Number, or Multitude, from whence any Person or Thing comes, goes, is sought, fetch'd, or taken, and answers to *into*, as, *out of* the Frying pan *into* the Fire, *out of* the Church *into* the Alehouse.

It also denotes the Reason or Cause of a Thing, as, She did it *out of* Spite, *out of* Malice, *out of* Love, *out of* Kindness.

It signifies Distance, as, Go *out of* my Sight. He is *out of* Gun-Shot.

Without, as, *out of* Doors, *i. e.* *without* Doors; *out of* Doubt, *i. e.* *without* doubt; *out of* twenty-six Letters there are but five Vowels.

It signifies *not in*, as, *out of* Date, *out of* Heart, *i. e.* not in Date, &c. *out of* Place, *out of* Fashion, *i. e.* not in Fashion.

It also signifies to begin a Course or Journey, as, to set *out*.

It signifies to leave off any Exercise, as, he gives *out*, *i. e.* he is done running, fighting, &c. and also to justify, as, he bears it *out*.

OVER.

OVER, Denotes the Height of a Place above which any Thing is said to be done, as, A black Shower hangs *over* our Head; he holds a Sword *over* his Head, meaning naturally or metaphorically.

It also refers to the Distance of Place beyond, cross or over thwart which any thing moveth or is made to move, as, He goes *over* Sea, *i. e.* beyond or cross, &c.

It denotes Excess, as, That comes by *over* much Ease, *over* Eating, *over* Drinking, *over* Heating, *i. e.* too much, &c. No body is *over* happy, *i. e.* too, &c.

It signifies *above*. It is not two Fingers *over*, *i. e.* *above*. *Through*, as, He is known all *over* the World, *i. e.* through the whole World.

It denotes Power and Authority. The Captain is *over* the Soldiers, *i. e.* above in Command and Dignity. *Besides*, as, He gave me four *over*, *i. e.* *besides*.

After the Verbs, it signifies to cease or desist, as, he gives *over*, *i. e.* *desists*.

THROUGH, Denotes these three Things; first, the efficient Cause, as, The World was created *through* the Power of God, *i. e.* by his Power. Secondly, the Motive, as, She does it *through* Envy. Thirdly, the Place, denoting the Action, as, The Power of God is seen *throughout* the World; he ran him *through* the Body; the Beams of the Sun pass from Heaven *through* the Air to the Earth; it came quite *through*, *i. e.* *through both sides*. The whole was done *through* his Means, *i. e.* by his, &c. It happened *through* his Carelessness, &c.

THOROUGH, Signifies *quite through*, from one End to the other. It is a Corruption of the above Word *through*, which also denotes the same thing, only with this Difference, that the latter has a metaphorical Sense and the other has not.

Also a *Thorough-fare* means no more than a *through-fare*, or Place to go quite through. The same may be said when it operates as an Adverb, as, We examined the Affair *thoroughly*, *i. e.* *thoroughly*, or *through every*
Part

Part of it. However, this Word is not yet quite out of use, Custom still retaining it in many Places.

'TILL or UNTIL. The first of these Words seems a Contraction of the latter, and should therefore be always marked with an Apostrophé, to shew the Ellipsis of the Syllable *un*, which is very seldom used in Prose, but in Verse often to fill up the Feet.

It signifies *before*, as, They did not dare to commence Hostilities 'till the Ambassadors were come back, *i. e.* not before. He will not come 'till To-morrow, *i. e.* not before. He has born gently with me 'till or until now.

Note, The former is spelt with double *ll*, and the latter with single *l*.

TO or UNTO, Answers to the Dative Case in Latin, French, and other Languages, as, I go *to* Church, I gave it *to* Peter, it belongs *to* him.

It also signifies several things, as, Motion to a Place, Example, I go *to* Rome, *to* France, &c.

It denotes Relation, as, Good *to* his Friends, favourable *to* the Church.

It likewise shews the Use for which a thing is designed, as, A Mill *to* grind Coffee, a Bason *to* wash Hands, and some have made this last Phrase a compound Word, as, *a wash hand's bason*.

It denotes Capacity, Aptitude, and present Disposition, as, A Man qualified *to* undertake any thing. It is easier *to* say than *to* do, *to* promise than *to* perform. Wine fit *to* drink, &c.

It also signifies Design or Intent, as, *to* invite to Dinner, to have something *to* do.

It denotes *on*, *for*, *before*, *about*, *of* or *concerning*, *to-ward* and *until*, as, *to* day, *i. e.* on this day, *to* morrow, *i. e.* on the next day. He did it *to* the End, *i. e.* for the End; he gave her 500*l.* *to* her Portion, *i. e.* for or to be her Portion. He made an Oration *to* the King, *i. e.* before or in his Presence; he commends him *to* his Face, *i. e.* before his Face. The Parliament is prorogued *to* November, *i. e.* until then. It follows that
I speak

I speak *to* that one Part of Honesty, *i. e.* of or concerning it. Your Kindness *to* me is great, *i. e.* towards me.

It also signifies *in comparison of*, as, He is nothing *to* me, *i. e.* in comparison of me. He thinks them Clowns *to* him, *i. e.* in comparison of him.

It sometimes signifies *may* or *can*, as, I have none *to* comfort me, *i. e.* who may, can, or will comfort me.

Lastly, This Preposition being put before our Verbs, answers to the Infinitive Mood of the Latins, as, *to fight*, pugnare, *to love*, amare, *to teach*, docere; where we may further observe, that *to fight* is as much as *fighting*, &c. as, *I love to fight*, *i. e.* *I love fighting*, &c.

It is frequently left out both in speaking and writing, as, *like me*, *give me*, *tell me*, *near me*, *i. e.* *near to me*, &c.

It is ordinarily left out after Verbs of one Syllable, whether of Acquisition or Motion, especially before the Personal Pronouns when they immediately follow the Verb, as, *give me the cup*, *send me my book*, *bring me my sword*.

The Preposition *unto* is also seldom used, except in Poetry to fill up the Feet, and also except in this Portion of Scripture, as, *a new commandment give I unto you*, &c. which also means *to*, and is only as an Expletive.

WARD, Comes from the Saxon *weard*, and that from the Franco-Gallic word *garder*, to guard, watch, or look to, for *g* was formerly frequently changed into *w*. It is also used in Composition, as, *wardrobe*, *wardmote*, and also in the Termination of these Words, *toward*, *forward*, *backward*, *inward*, *outward*, *hitherward*, *thitherward*, *upward*, *downward*, *eastward*, *westward*, *southward*, *northward*, *reward*, *award*, *wayward*, *Heavenward*.

TOWARD or TOWARDS, Are used indifferently, denoting both Time and Place. When it denotes Time it is without any precise fixing of it, as, *towards the Spring*,

Spring, *towards* Noon, *towards* the End of Winter; but it gives a more precise and exact Distinction when it is applied to Place, as, *the troops march towards the Rhine*; *to have his eyes turned towards Heaven*.

It sometimes signifies Docility, Aptness, or Unaptness, as, *he is a very toward child*, i. e. *knowing or apt to know*; *he is a very untoward boy*, i. e. *refractory or undocile*.

UNDER, Refers both to Time and Place: When it relates to Time, it is ordinarily restrained to the marking the Time of a Reign or Government, as, *under the Reign of Queen Anne*, *under the Government of Augustus*, and by Abbreviation, or for Shortness, we say, *under Queen Anne*, *under Augustus*, *under Pontius Pilate*; and we use it in the same Acceptation or Sense in speaking of the Time of the Birth of any fortunate or unfortunate Person, as, *he was born under a happy planet*, *under a favourable constellation*, i. e. *a happy planet, or favourable constellation ruled at his birth*. He *was born under a three-penny planet*, *never to be worth a groat while he lives*, ludicrously spoken of unfortunate Persons who are always in extreme Poverty or Indigence, in spite of their Endeavours to be otherwise.

When it relates to Place, it denotes being lower in Situation, as, *every thing under Heaven*, *under the Earth*, and it is in Allusion to this Acceptation when we say, *he returned under the cannon of such a place*; *to put a thing under lock and key*.

It signifies *privately* or *secretly*, as, *to do a thing under hand*; *to undermine a person in his trade or calling*.

It also forms a compound Word, as, *understand*, *underfell*, *underwater*, &c.

WITH, Serves to denote Union, Conjunction, Mixture, &c. *Union*, as, *he is Friends with all the world*. *Mixture*, as, *to put a little Vinegar with a great deal of Oil*. *Means*, as, *with the Grace of God*, *with the Help of his Friends*; *he purges with Hira Pira*. *Instrument*, as, *he killed him with a sword*, *with a pistol*, &c.

IT also denotes the Manner of being or doing, as, *to speak with Eloquence, to answer with Sweetness, with Haughtiness*, which last Examples have an adverbial Sense, as, *eloquently, sweetly, haughtily*.

It sometimes denotes Disunion, as, *to be at war with France, i. e. against France, to have words with one, i. e. to disagree*.

IN or WITHIN, Denotes both Time and Place. When it refers to Place, it serves to denote that the Person or Thing of which we speak is contained or comprehended in that Place, as, *Peter is within the house, he walks within the walls*.

When it refers to Time, it serves to fix and determine the Space of Time with respect to the Thing that is doing, as, *he will go within three days, it will be finished within a month, i. e. in a month's time, he lives in the city, i. e. within it*. But although these two Words do here and in many other Instances signify the same, yet they are not to be always indifferently used, as, *he has been famous both in peace and in war, not within peace, &c.*

Sometimes *within* is used to signify that the Thing in question will not be 'till after a certain Time, as, *he will come within eight days, i. e. not before. I thought within myself I would ask. Pray is your master within? i. e. at home, &c.*

OUT or WITHOUT, Denotes what is called Privation, or Exclusion, as, *he is out of paper, i. e. without any, he is out of his mind, i. e. without his senses, out of all order, i. e. without any*. Also in speaking of a Good or Advantage we have not, we say, *nothing can be done without the Grace of God, i. e. not having his assistance. He passes the whole night without sleep, i. e. not having any*. It also denotes being exempt or free from, as, *he spoke without passion, i. e. free from*.

It answers generally to *not with*, as, *he did it without the authority of Parliament, i. e. not with, &c. without jesting, &c. i. e. not with*.

It signifies *void of*, as, *he is without wisdom*, i. e. *void of*, &c. *Unless or except*, as, *he will not come without being sent for*, i. e. *unless or except he be sent for*.

It signifies *besides*, as, *there were two hundred without the Boys*, i. e. *besides*, or *not counting the boys*.

The following Prepositions are compared, as *in*, *inner*, *innermost*, *out*, *outer*, *outermost*, *up*, *upper*, *uppermost*. But these want the Positive, as, *hinder*, *hindermost*, *under*, *undermost*, &c.

Although the Prepositions be so called, because they commonly go before Nouns, nevertheless to make the Sentence run better they are sometimes placed at the End, especially after the Interrogative Pronouns, *who*, *what* and *where*, as, *Who did you speak to?* *What Country are you of?* *What do you trouble yourself for?* *Where do you come from?* *Whom did you live with?*

Before I conclude my Remarks on these Prepositions, I must here observe, that the general Article *a* or *an*, and the limited Article *the*, having a Signification in them equal to that of a Noun Adjective, has induced some (who seem to have copied after the French and other modern Grammars) to consider them as separate and distinct Parts of Speech from all the rest, whereas these Articles are no other than Particles borrowed from the Prepositions, and are actually employed as Inseparable Prepositions themselves in the Composition and Formation of Words, as may be seen in the following and the like Examples.

a joined.

abridge
acorn
amount
amiss, &c.

a separate.

a { bridge
corn
mount
miss

See more in Pages 306, treating of Inseparable Prepositions

Also

Also these Words following,

a-baft	a-cid	a-faph
a-bafh	a-cre	a-ny
a-bide	a-dage	a-noint
a-bate	a-gent	a-gility
a-bode	a-larm	a-lacrity
a-ble	a-lerc	a-fia
a-bove	a-mend	a-merica
a-bufe	a-merce	a-miable
a-bandon	a-midft	a-nalogy
a bominable	a-mong	a-natomy

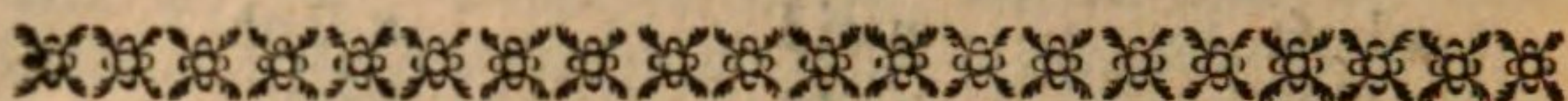
Also these in *an*.

an-chor	an-noy	an-tidote
an-kle	an-vil	an-titype
an-gle	an-other	an-timony
an-ger	an-chovy	an-tichamber
an-guifh	an-gelick	an-timonian
an-nal	an-gular	an-tipathy
an-nex	an-nuity	an-tiquary
an-nul	an-tagonift	an-tiquity
an-fwer	an-tecedent	an-tithesis

Also in *the*, pronounced ftrong.

the-atre	the-odore	the-omachy
the-fis	the-ophilus	the-oretick
the-orem	the-atrical	the-ologick
the-ory	the-ocracy	the-ological
the-obald	the-ology	the-omagical





C H A P. VIII.

Of INTERJECTIONS.

THE INTERJECTION, if it may be called a distinct Part of Speech, (being in fact no other than a surpris'd Judgment or Imagination) is that which serves to express the sudden Motions and Transports of the human Soul, by certain Particles thrown into Discourse, which denote or shew the Passions of the Mind, either as exalted or depressed. They are of several Sorts, viz.

- Of Joy, ha, ha! he! how happy! come, come!
oh how transporting! o brave! well!
- GRIEF, alas! ah me! hoi ho! oh! ah! woe is me!
oh! miserable wretch that I am!
- PAIN, oh God! o heaven! o dear!
- COURAGE, come on, now for it, have at you, chear
up, take heart, bravely done.
- WARNING, have a care! take heed! beware! observe!
mind! be cautious!
- FRIGHT, mercy on us! away, away!
- ADMIRATION or SURPRISE, why sure! you don't say
so! indeed! what a fine! lork a daisy!
i. e. lack a day, see! o strange! hah!
blefs me! &c.
- AVERSION, nasty! fulsome! for shame! away with
it! begone!
- LAUGHTER, ha, ha! eh! he!
- SILENCE, hift! or hush! peace there! mum!
- EXCLAIMING, oh! so, so! you are a fine rascal!
- APPROBATION, bravo! good! exceeding well! again!
once more! well done!

KIND-

KINDNESS, sweet creature! dear angel!
 CONSIDERING, hem! why, as you say! stay!
 DESPISING, pish! shy! shu! tush!
 CALLING, oh! yoho! hip! halloo!
 WISHING, would to God! please God *or* God grant!
 oh! may that time come!
 REBUKING, vile wretch! villain! knave! varlet!
 IRONY, mighty fine to be sure! nothing beats it!
 PITY, ah! alack! alas!
 LAMENTATION, what a misfortune! how very dis-
 graceful!
 IMPRECATION, s'death! pox on't! the devil's in't!
 odds bud! odds my life! zoons!
 CHECKING, hold! softly! not so fast!
Driving or hunting away any poultry or cattle, she! shu!
 aight! whop! beast! gee! ho! coop
 biddy! &c.

*Remarks on Interjections sad or kind,
 Shewing the Passions of the human Mind.*

THE English are remarkable for the steadiness of their Countenance, and exterior Behaviour, on expressing these Interjections, even upon the most interesting subjects, while Foreigners seem to be as extraordinarily agitated; who though they don't use them so much in speaking, yet do they in action, and if we remark them critically, we shall find them making use of several odd Contortions and Grimaces, with sundry Shoulder Shrugs and Nods, that answer the same Purpose; much more sometimes than we should do by all we could say, an Instance of which I once heard, which is, that an Englishman who had dealt largely with a certain Foreigner, but suspecting his Credit, went on 'Change to hear News, and addressing himself to another Foreigner of his Country, desired to know what he thought of his Countryman, and whether he took him to be a *good man*, which on that Spot of Ground has a different Meaning from what it has elsewhere.

The Foreigner understanding him that he meant his Countryman's Credit in the World, of which, as he could not boast much, and not being willing to wound it by ill-natured Words or Reflections, said nothing to the Englishman, but answered him only by a Shrug of the Shoulders, and a strange Contortion of the Muscles of his Face, and turning short upon his Heel, as if to speak to another, left him to interpret the Meaning of it as he should think fit, which not being very favourable to the Debtor, he did not fail immediately to take the necessary Precautions for his Safety. But these Customs, say the Foreigners, ought not to depreciate the Character of any Nation; for though it seem matter of Ridicule among us Englishmen to see them so easily moved and transported at what is done or said, that they cannot contain their Passions within proper Bounds, yet they think they have as great a Right in their Turn to complain of our Tepidity and Coldness, that have Passions not to be stirred or affected with any thing that occurs, which is an Argument amongst them that we have but little Understanding, not to be equally sensible with them of the Impression which such things done or said ought to have upon the human Mind. But however such an Apology may be thought necessary in favour of Foreigners, yet I must say, as an Englishman I am not of their Mind in this Respect, being fully persuaded that it is possible to be equally affected, without the Necessity of breaking forth into loud or violent Exclamations, or mimicking Actions that may be apt to offend the Delicacy of a refin'd Judgment.



|||||

Of Syntax, Transposition, and Ellipses,
Shewing their various Beauties or Eclipses.

SYNTAX comes from the Greek *συν* and *ταξω*, signifying an ordering, changing, placing, disposing or adjusting. In Latin it is called *Constructio* from *con* together, and *structio*, a building, erecting, or putting things in order as they ought to stand, all which import nothing more than a right placing or joining of Words together in a sentence.

Sentences may be divided into Simple and Compound. A simple or single Sentence is that which has but one Verb in it, as, *life is short*.

A Compound Sentence is, when two Sentences are joined together by some Copulative or Tye, in which is included one simple Sentence, as, *life is short*, and another single Sentence after that, as, *art is long*, between which two Sentences a Copulative is put to join them together, thus, *life is short, and art is long*.

The Construction of Words into Sentences may be distinguished into two Kinds; first, that which is natural and regular, and, secondly, that which is customary or figurative. That Sentence may be called regular which is according to the natural Sense and Order of the Words; but customary or figurative is that which is used in the Forms of Speech peculiar to the several Languages that are spoken, as will be shewn hereafter in the English Idioms.

In English, as in Latin, there is an Agreement of the Verb with the Nominative Word, which is, that the Verb be of the same Number and Person as the Substantive is of to which it relates, as, *Peter loves* and *Men love*; where observe, *loves* is of the Singular Number and third Person because *Peter* is so, and *love* is of the Plural because *Men* are so. Now to say *Peter love* and *Men loves* would be false Syntax, so *I are*, *we am*, *they is*, &c. is as false, for we ought to say, *I am*, *we are*, *they are*, &c.

Also

Also observe, that neither the Active nor Passive Participles, used in Composition with Nouns, ever take the Plural Number, to agree with the Plural Noun to which it is joined, as they do in other Languages, for in English we say, *running horses, grazing cattle, skipping lambs, learned men, &c.* not *runnings horses, &c.*

When two Substantives Singular are joined together by a Copulative Conjunction, they speak of more than one, and so being of the Plural Number must have a Plural Verb, as, *Robert and Mary love each other, not loves each other.*

In like Manner, when we pass from the Negative to an Affirmative, it is thus expressed, *he is not ashamed of his actions, and glories in his vices, not and glory in the Plural Number, to agree with actions, but glories in the Singular, to agree with the Personal Pronoun he, who is not ashamed.*

Again, *they are unconcerned at the event, and glory in their folly, not and glories in the Singular, to agree with event, but glory in the Plural, to agree with they, who are unconcerned.*

The Verb can never be properly put in the Singular Number when there are two Substantives, but when the Verb relates to, or affirms of two foregoing Nouns, though they are both of the Singular Number, it must be of the Plural, as, *the king and queen are happy in themselves, not is happy*; wherefore it is a lame Allowance of a certain Author*, that it may be also of the Singular Number in English, since he is at the same time forced to save the Solecism by understanding other Words to make up the Defect, as, *his justice and goodness was great, that is, says he, his justice was great, and his goodness was great.*

When the Noun comprehends many Particulars, the Verb may be put either in the Singular or Plural Number, as, *the Committee has (have) examined the prisoners,* where the Verb *has* is of the Singular Number, because the Substantive *Committee* is so, and the Verb *have* is Plural, because the Substantive includes more than one Person. So also, *the mob is (are) unruly, the convocations*
are

are (is) *debating*, &c. the Verb agreeing sometimes with the Number of the Noun, and sometimes with its Signification, except in these three Words, *People*, *Mankind*, *Cattle*, which require the Verb to be always Plural, as, *People have a Notion that Peace will be proclaimed*, not *has a Notion*, &c. *Mankind differ in Opinion*, not *differs*, &c. *The Catle are grazing in the Meadow*, not *is grazing*, &c.

In order to know what Persons Verbs are of, observe that *I* and *another* is as much as *we*, the first Person Plural; *you* and *another* is as much as *ye*, the second Person Plural; *he*, *she*, or *it*, and *another*, is as much as *they*, the third Person Plural.

The Verb put infinitively, and sometimes a whole Sentence, is counted its Nominative Word, for not only Nouns and Pronouns Substantives, but whatever denotes that which *is* or *does*, or *is done*, is a Nominative Word to the Verb. Thus the Verb put infinitively, that is, with the Preposition *to* before it, often tells what it is which *does* or *suffers*, and therefore is a Nominative Word to the Verb, as, *to play will please*. What will please? *to play*; therefore *to play* is a Nominative Word to the Verb *please*, and so any Sentence that shews what *is*, *does*, or *suffers*, may be as a Nominative Word to the Verb.

If a Verb put infinitively, or a Sentence be as a Nominative Word to a Verb, we usually set such Verb or Sentence after the other Verb, and put the Particle *it* before it, as, *it is an evil thing to lie*, i. e. *to lie is an evil thing*. *It is the Custom for boys to neglect their books*.

So likewise when the Nominative Word, or Substantive to which the Verb relates, is left out or understood, we place the Particle *it* before the Verb, as, *it rains*, *it snows*, *it thunders*, &c. where Cloud or some other Word is understood, and so through all the Impersonal Verbs, for there can be no Verb that signifies *being*, *doing*, or *suffering*, but what refers or has Relation to some Person or Thing that *is*, *does*, or *suffers*.

With regard to the Impersonal Verb, we make use of the Perfect or Past Tense of the Passive Auxiliary Verb, whenever the proper Verb is in that Tense, as,
it

it was I who did it, contrary to the French, who are as remarkable for using the Present Tense with the Perfect or Past Tense in the same Sentence, as, *C'est moi qui le fis*, *it is I who did it*.

The Personal Pronouns *we* and *I*, as Nominative Nouns to the Verb, are sometimes set at a long distance from it, especially in Titles, Publick Acts, and Law Proceedings, as in the three following Examples.

EXAMPLE I.

We George the Third, by the Grace of God of Great-Britain, France, and Ireland, King, Defender of the Faith, *do* command, &c.

EXAMPLE II.

I C. W. Notary Publick, dwelling in London, by lawful Authority duly admitted and sworn, *do* certify, &c.

EXAMPLE III.

His most excellent *Majesty* (or *the King's* most excellent *Majesty*) having taken into his Royal Consideration, that Numbers of his Subjects have exposed themselves to great Penalties and Forfeitures, inflicted upon several Crimes and Offences by the Laws and Statutes of this Realm, out of his merciful Disposition being graciously inclined for the Establishing of the Peace and Quiet of this Kingdom, and the Happiness of all his Subjects, and to free them from the Apprehensions they may justly lie under from a severe Execution of Justice, *has* resolved and determined to pardon, &c.

By this last Example, we may observe that the Mind is in a long and tedious Suspence 'till it gets to the Verb, *has resolved*, which not only shews the ultimate Intention of all this Preamble, but points out who it is that has resolved, namely, *his Majesty*, i. e. *the King*, &c.

The *Present Tense* of the *Indicative Mood* is sometimes used in *History*, *Oratory*, and *Poetry*, to represent an
Action

Action already *past* in a more lively and emphatical Manner, as may be seen in these two Examples.

E X A M P L E I.

The King perceiving the Enemy, *marches* (*marched*) towards him, *draws* (*drew*) up his Army in Order of Battle, *sends* (*sent*) away his Baggage, and *disposes* (*disposed*) all Things for an Engagement.

E X A M P L E II.

Cupid *assembles* (*assembled*) the Nymphs together, and *harangues* (*harangued*) them thus, Telemachus is still in your Power, wherefore let devouring Flames consume the Ship which the rash Mentor has built to favour his Escape. Immediately they *light* (*lit*) torches, *run* (*ran*) towards the sea; they *tremble* (*trembled*) *fill* (*filled*) the Air with dreadful Cries, and *tofs* (*tossed*) about their dishevelled Hair like frantick Bacchanals, and *now* (*then*) it *is* (*was*) that the greedy Flames *devour* (*devoured*) the Ship, which *burns* (*burnt*) the more fiercely, as she *is* (*was*) made of dry wood, daubed over with Rosin, Pitch, &c. while the rolling clouds of smoke, streaked with Flame, *ascend* (*ascended*) the lofty Skies, &c.

Besides the aforementioned Concord or Agreement between the Nominative Case and the Verb, there is another, which is that between the Relative and the Antecedent; therefore in our English Translation of the Lord's Prayer from Latin, viz. *Pater noster qui es in Cœlis*, &c. it should be, *Our Father who art in Heaven*, &c. and not *which art*, &c. as it has been hitherto rendered, and that for the Reasons set forth in my Remarks on Relative Pronouns at p. 147.

Of Transposition.

Transposition is the transplacing of Words and Sentences, or the putting the Words in a Sentence or Sentences out of their natural Order, that is, putting those Words before which should come after, and those after which should come before.

The Substantive is often put out of its Place, especially when *there* or *it* is set before the Verb, as, *There*
was

was a Man, *i. e.* a Man was *there*. It is the Custom, *i. e.* the Custom is. Also Adjectives, especially if a Verb come between the Substantive and Adjective, as, *happy is the Man*, *i. e.* *the Man is happy*. *What Danger soever there be*, *i. e.* *whatsoever Danger there be*.

The *Preposition* is frequently transplaced, as, *Whom do you dine with?* *i. e.* *with whom do you dine?* *What Place do you come from?* *i. e.* *from what Place do you come?*

The Use and Design of thus placing Words out of their natural Order, is to render them more harmonious or agreeable to the Ear, though we may not always transplace all Words in every Sentence as we please, but we must in this, as in all other Things, follow the Use of the best Speakers. One thing may be observed, which is, that the best and clearest Writers have the fewest Transpositions in their Discourses, and that they are more allowable in Poetry than in Prose, because it is there generally sweeter and more agreeable to the Ear. For Example, *Any thing, though never so little, which a Man speaks of himself, in my Opinion, is still too much*: The natural Order is thus, *Any thing is too much in my Opinion which a Man speaks of himself, though ever so little*. So in Blank Verse,

*Yet not the more,
Cease I to wander where the Muses haunt,
Clear Spring, or shady Grove, or sunny Hill,
Smit with the Love of sacred Song; but chief
Thee Sion, and the flow'ry Brooks beneath,
That wash thy hallow'd Feet, and warbling flow,
Nightly I visit, &c.*

The natural Order is this: *Yet smit with the Love of sacred Song, I cease not to wander, &c. but chiefly I nightly visit thee Sion, &c.*

Again,

*Of Man's first Disobedience, and the Fruit
Of that forbidden Tree, whose mortal Taste
Brought*

*Brought Death into the World, and all our Woe,
With Loss of Eden, 'till one greater Man
Restore us, and regain the blissful Seat,
Sing heavenly Muse, &c.* MILTON.

The Order is thus, *Heavenly Muse, sing of Man's first
Disobedience, &c.*

Of Ellipsis.

As Elision is the leaving out a Letter in a Word, so Ellipsis is the leaving out of Words in a Sentence, and though we may not leave out what Words we please, yet such as may be as well understood when omitted as they would be if mentioned, may be left out in a Sentence. There are four Accounts upon which Words may be omitted; first, when a Word has been mentioned just before, and may be supposed to be kept in Mind, then it is often left out, as, *Cæsar came and saw and conquered*, where you need not say, *Cæsar came, Cæsar saw, and Cæsar conquered*. So, *Ye have eaten more than we*, i. e. *than we have eaten*. *This Book is the Master's*, i. e. *the Master's Book*. *Whose horse is this?* *ours*, i. e. *our horse*.

Wherefore in a relative Sentence (having *who*, *which*, or *that* in it) the antecedent or foregoing Word is seldom repeated, as, *I bought the horse which you sold*, i. e. *which horse, &c.*

The Wine is bad *which* you sent me, i. e. *which Wine*. What Words I spoke, *those* I deny, i. e. *those Words*. The Trouble *which* my Friends have been in. The Pains *which* I have been at in procuring it. Is this the Man *whom* you spoke of? This is the Thing *that* I found. Also the Conjunction is often left out in a compound Sentence, as, *I desire (that) you will write for me, &c.*

Secondly, when any Word is to be presently mentioned, if it can be well understood it may be left out in the former Part, as, *I ever did and will love you*, i. e. *I ever did and ever will love you*. Drink you white or red Wine? i. e. *Drink you white Wine or red Wine?*

Wine? The best of the Churches is Paul's, *i. e.* the best of the Churches is Paul's Church, or to put it in its natural Order, Paul's Church is the best Church.

Thirdly, when the Thought is expressed by some other Means, as, Who is he? pointing to a Man you need not ask, Who, or what Man is that Man?

Fourthly, those Words which upon the mentioning of others must needs be supposed to be meant may be left out, as, When you come to Paul's, turn to the left, every body knows you mean Paul's Church and left Hand, therefore these last Words need not be expressed.

The Preposition *to* is often left out, as, Reach me the Book, *i. e.* Reach the Book *to* me. *Thing* and *act* are frequently left out when they may be understood, as, It is hard to travel through the Snow, *i. e.* it is a *hard thing*. It is easy to do it, *i. e.* it is an *easy thing* or *action*.

¶ *Note*, These following Expletives in Italics, which some make use of either through Ignorance or Affectation, to give an Emphasis or Force to the Expression, are quite unnecessary with regard to the Construction or Sense of the Discourse, and are rather counted unpolite, viz. Prithee *now* do. Do it *then*. *Well* come and read. Come *then* make it all up. *From* whence came you? He will ride *you* 100 Miles a Day. I told you *how that* he would meet me. He said *as how* you were come. I told him *as how* you were ill. I am ready *for* to go with you *for* to see my Friend. Come *along* Home, go *along* about your Business. She is virtuous enough *for* to resist Temptation. I came *for* to tell you, he is too wise *for* to do it. Also in Verse.

The Hero came the Battle *for* to see,
But *unto* him appear'd no Enemy.



Of POINTS or PAUSES, used as Intervals in Reading.

THE Method of distinguishing the Sense in a Sentence properly belongs to that Part of Grammar called Syntax, because in a Sentence not only the Structure or Order is to be regarded, but also Distinction of Sound.

The following Stops relating to a due Method of Pronunciation, are so absolutely necessary to the better understanding of what we read, that without a strict Attention to them all things would be confused and liable to infinite Misconstructions; and as Writing is the Image of Speech, it ought to be adapted to all the material Circumstances of it, and consequently must have some Marks to denote these various Manners of Pronunciation.

Table I. Of Points or Stops that regard Pronunciation.

Comma, <i>marked thus</i>	(,)	Grave Accent	(`)
Semicolon	(;)	Acute Accent	(´)
Colon	(:)	Diæresis	(¨)
Period	(.)	Breve	(˘)
Interrogation	(?)	Long	(—)
Admiration	(!)	Apostrophe	(´)
Irony	(↑)	Parenthesis	()

Table II. Of Marks that are used for Distinction in Writing.

Crotchet	[]	Extracted Quotation	(‘)
Brace	{ }	Verbal Quotation	(“ ”)
		Hyphen	(-)
		Ellipsis	(—)
Caret	(^)		

Table III. *Of Marks or Signs used for Notes and References.*

Paragraph	¶	Parallel	
Section	§	Index	☞
Single Dagger	†	Star	*
Double Dagger	‡		

Observations on all the foregoing Points, Marks, and References, used in Reading and Writing.

COMMA, Is a Character whose Form or Figure is not very much unlike the Hebrew (') *Yode*.—It is the same Mark at the Bottom of a Line as the Apostrophé is above it, and is a Note of Respiration or Breathing, used to distinguish Words of the same Kind, for dividing long Sentences into short, and for removing all Ambiguities, as, *The Fruit of the Spirit is Love, Joy, Peace, Gentleness, Goodness, Long-suffering, Faith, Meekness, Temperance*, Gal. v. 22.

It is used as the shortest Pause or Rest in Speech, its Time or Measure being whilst you can tell *one*. In short, though the Comma is one of the junior Points, it has nevertheless the first Place in every Period, and governs the Order of the intermediate ones; that is to say, the Semicolon and Colon. To perfect one's self therefore in placing Comma's right, is the ready Way to fair pointing; but to set down Rules for attaining it would be an endless Labour, since Practice is the best and surest Guide.

SEMICOLON, Is composed of a Comma and full Point, serving to shew the Quantity of the Pause or Rest that it requires, which is whilst we can tell *two*. It serves such Parts of a Period as are to be supported by a Point of more Elevation than a Comma, and less than a Colon, keeping the Parts of an Argument well connected together. In short, it is of great Use to enforce and illustrate what has been advanced by the Comma. The proper Place for this Point is in the Sub-

Subdivision of the Members or Parts of a Sentence; Example, *as the Tree grows, and we do not discern it; or, as the Shadow moves, and we do not perceive it; so Man's Dissolution approaches, &c.*

It is also of great use in distinguishing of Nouns of a contrary Signification, as things sacred and profane. You consider the Importance of Riches; but not of Virtue, &c. Things domestick; Things foreign. It is frequently used in Print as an Abbreviation both in the English and Latin, and in the former it supplies these Letters *uire*, when the Word is abridged, as *Esq;* for *Esquire*; and in the Latin it stands for *ue* when joined to *q*, as in *absq;* *deniq;* for *absque*, *denique*, &c.

COLON, Is a Point prior both to Comma and Semicolon, and shews where the first Part of a Paragraph has been digested by Comma's and Semicolons, for making Observations, Objections, or Enlargements upon it, before the full Point puts a Stop to it; that is, it is used in a Sentence where the Sense is perfect, and has a full Meaning of its own, but yet is unfinished, leaving the Mind in Suspense and Expectation of what follows, as, Before all Things, it behoves a Man to take a true Estimate of himself: for we generally think ourselves able to do more than we can.

It is also generally used before a Comparative Conjunction in a Similitude; Example, As the Ape commonly kills her young ones by too much fondling: so some Parents spoil their Children by too much Indulgence. Let not the Hand be open to receive: and shut when it should give.

Also where the Sentence runs out pretty long, the Colon is made use of. Its Time or Measure is whilst you can tell *three*, and its Shape is two full Points, exactly like the Hebrew Vowel (:) *Sheva*.

It serves in marginal Notes of Scripture, where Figures are used instead of Numerals, in which case the Colon is put betwixt the Chapter and Verse, to distinguish one from the other, in this Manner, viz. Deut. 5:13.

It likewise serves to distinguish Columns in Figure-Work that consists in different small Accounts, viz. 3456:782:285:59, &c.

PERIOD, Is one single Dot or Point, exactly like the Hebrew Vowel (.) *Kbiric*. It is used with us as a full Point, making a complete Stop of itself, and entirely closes the Sentence or Paragraph after which it is set, as, God is the chiefest Good.

Its Time or Measure is whilst you can tell *four*.

In Books of Accounts, full Points serve instead of Rules or Scratches to lead and connect the posted Article with its contingent Valuation; the proper Station for full Points upon this Occasion is to point from the Center, and sometimes at the Bottom of the Letter to that of the Figure; and though ruling or scratching up is often done both in Writing and Print, it falls far short of the Neatness which appears in a Line of Dots; for be their Progression either short or extraordinary long, their equadistance describe such a Connexion as cannot fail to guide the Reader to the contingent Part of the tabular Article, viz. Paid . . . £. 3456.

The Period, or full Point, serves also to shorten or abridge Words, particularly Latin ones, which Language not only best admits of Abbreviation, but even requires them to be used upon several Occasions, to perpetuate the Custom of writing Latin as the former Romans did; for this Reason, Latin Inscriptions upon Coins, Tombs, &c. are generally composed of Words that admit of being abbreviated, and are counted to add to the Grandeur of the Inscription or Epitaph, &c.

INTERROGATION, Is a Note or Sign that needs not to be explained, for the very Appellation tells us that it is a Mark which is used to shew when a Question is proposed, that gives Room for, or demands an Answer, as, *Does he yet doubt it? What is the use of this Book?*

ADMIRATION, Which also serves as a Sign or Note of Exclamation, likewise explains itself, and claims

claims a Place where Surprise, Astonishment, Rapture, and the like sudden Commotions of the Mind are expressed, whether upon lamenting or rejoicing Occasions: This Note is then a Direction for raising the Tone or Voice, and is put after the Interjections, *ah! alas! o! as, ah! it is so, good God! o, the folly of man!* &c. though the last is not always of that force to be attended by the exclamatory Symbol, but is softened by a Comma to enforce what follows, and to make the Admiration more complete.

Exclamations are sometimes mistaken for Interrogations, and therefore care should be taken in examining to which of these two Variations the one or the other inclines. As to Time both of them require a Pause as long as a Period.

IRONY, Shews the Distinction of the Meaning or Intention of any Words when they are to be understood by way of Sarcasm or Scoff, and used in a contrary Sense to that which they naturally signify; and though there be not any Note of Distinction designed for this Turn of Speech in any of our modern Languages, yet that is rather to be attributed from their Deficiency or Imperfection; for if the Force of the Irony consists in the Manner of the Pronunciation, it will plainly follow that there ought to be some Mark or other to distinguish it. It is said that the Germans make use of the above Note of Admiration reversed, whenever they would mark the Irony, as, O good Sir; I like you for that; You are a special good-natured Gentleman, truly; But as this Note thus made, may be apt to be mistaken for an (i) or a Semicolon (;) I would rather advise the Mark of a Dart †, or Dagger ‡, to shew the Distinction, as either of these Marks have a symbolical Meaning, proper to that Turn and Tone of Expression which is always keen and sharp like these Instruments.

ACCENT, Is divided into Grave and Acute. The former is made from the left to the right, and the latter from the right to the left. The English do not
make

make use of them so frequently as the French and other Nations, though they are almost as much wanted among us.

The Acute Accent is employed in Prose, not only to shew the Stress of the Pronunciation by raising the Voice, as the first Syllable *tor*, which takes the Accent, must be louder than *ment*, in *tórmént*, &c. but sometimes it is placed over a Vowel, which otherwise would make a Diphthong, and parts the Word instead of a Dierefsis into two distinct Syllables, Example, *Póet*, *Póém*, *Création*, *Idéa*. But when the Grave Accent is used, it is generally over *e*, and chiefly in Póetry, to prevent its being taken for the silent *e*, which would shorten the Measure of the Verse were the *e* not marked to be pronounced, as might happen in these Lines,

Cithæron, *Dyndymè*, in *Asbes* mourn.
And Mycalè, and proud *Olympus* shine.
Bæotia for her *Dircè* seeks in vain.

The five Vowels marked with Acutes over them, it is not improbable were first contrived to assist the ignorant Monks in reading Church Service, that by this Means they might arrive to a proper and settled Pronunciation in discharge of their sacerdotal Functions, and by thus accenting the Vowels afterwards in printed Books, make others conform to them in giving Words their proper Sound, which, though it seems to be an Institution of a long Time ago, is nevertheless still observed in France in particular, where the Vowels in the Latin Columns of their Common Prayer-Books are accented, for no other Reason than to support Uniformity in pronouncing Latin. This indeed is what our Etymological Writers are endeavouring to do to the English in their Dictionaries, by placing an Accent over, or next to the Vowel which governs the Sound and Pronunciation of a Word; but because Authors differ in this Point, it will perhaps be difficult to accomplish such a Design, unless they themselves first agree to Uniformity in accenting, and afterwards find

find out an Expedient to establish their joint Conclusion, which the French have done most effectually by accenting the Latin Matter in their Mass-Books as the most proper Vehicle to make the Pronunciation of the Roman Church Language more universal. An Instance not unworthy Imitation, were the like attempted in other Nations, particularly ours, which differs widely in Point of Pronunciation from the rest of our Neighbours, and where a Common Prayer accented by a respectable Society, or by some eminent and learned Men, would give a Sanction to a Conformity in accenting, and consequently in pronouncing, which would be of Advantage not only to many of our own Countrymen, but also to Foreigners, and mortify those surly Criticks and Pedants, whose Study it is to make every thing dissertations.

DIERESIS, Is a Point composed of two Parallel Dots or Periods, exactly like the Hebrew Vowel (..) *Tfere*. Its Use is to separate one Vowel from another, and is placed over them, to prevent their being taken for Diphthongs, as it is commonly done in French, as, *Noël*, Christmas, *hair*, to hate, &c. which make two distinct Syllables. But in our English Tongue this necessary Mark is not thought so essential as it really is, for we often write *Idea*, *create*, *Poem*, without any Dierefsis at all; and when we would distinguish the following Words, we do it rather with a Hyphen, thus, *pre-eminence*, *re-instate*, *co-operate*, *co-ordinate*, *co-adjutor*, &c. so that this Point is of little or no use among us.

BREVE, Is a Character that is curved upwards, not much unlike the Greek Ypsilon *v*.

It is generally placed over a Vowel, in order to denote its Sound quick or short, as, *bat*, *fat*, *tap*, &c. and also the Place Reading, a Town in Berkshire, which distinguishes it from Reading, the active Participle of the Verb *to read*, and so of many other Instances of this Sort that might be mentioned.

LONG,

LONG, Is a Mark exactly like the Hyphen, and is contrary in Signification to the above Breve, being placed over Letters in order to lengthen the Sound of Words, which otherwise would make two distinct Syllables, as, *rēad*, *lēad*, *mēad*, &c.

These *Shorts* and *Longs* (being invented to shew the Accent, Sound, and Quantity of Syllables) are chiefly used in classical Dictionaries, and in scanning of Latin Verses after their Syllables have been brought into Feet, and marked with these Signs or Characters, according to the Measure of the Verse.

APOSTROPHE, Is no other than a Comma at the Top of a Word, set above the Line, as the Comma is below it. It may be called in this Respect a Mark or Sign of Abbreviation, because (save its closing a Quotation) whenever it appears it denotes the Ejection of some Letter that suffers itself to be retrenched or cut off by Elision. To this the Vowel *e* yields oftener than any other Letter, not only in Poetry but also in Prose, especially in all such Verbs whose Past Tense or Participle ends in *ed*, according as it may best appear which way this Syllable runs the smoothest.

The Apostrophé sometimes cuts off a Vowel at the Beginning of a Word, as, *'bate*, *'scape*, *'Squire*, and sometimes an entire Syllable, as, *'change*, *'fore*, *'prentice*: But these and many other Abbreviations of this Kind are used chiefly in Plays, Epistolary and humorous Writings.

These Monosyllables *tho'* and *thro'* are oftener shortened by this Mark than set at length.

The Omission of a Letter by the Apostrophé is designedly done to make the Sound of the Word more grateful to the Ear; also in Verse to cut off a Syllable for the Sake of Metre, as, *judg'd* for *judged*, and in Substantives to shew them to be the Genitive Case, as, *The Scholar's Book*, &c.

Before English Law was made more intelligible, and its fulminant Phrases were softened by the legislative Authority, in abolishing the Latin and Gallic Institution, and ordering Law to speak in our national
and

and therefore rational Language, the Apostrophé was of singular Service to puzzle the honest and civil Reader, because by Means of a Mark of Abbreviation, they were at Liberty to shorten or lengthen all such Words as would admit of either. But Latin Law Matter being now obsolete, we shall make no further Observations upon it, lest we be thought to regret the Extirpation of it.

PARENTHESIS, Is used as a Sign of Intercalation. Its Shape is like two Half Moons facing each other, serving to enclose such Parts of a Period as seem to make no Part of the Subject, but yet at the same Time strengthen and raise the Argument, which however would lose nothing of the Sense, were the inclosed Matter taken away; thus for Instance, *Some Heathen Nations* (we read) *adore the Sun.* *Did you but know* (I speak sincerely) *how much I am obliged, &c.* and should be read with a lower Tone of the Voice, as a Thing that comes in by the by.

Some use this Mark wrong when they include (as I think) (as he says, &c.) where it is sufficient to set only a Comma, or at most a Semicolon; but I do not recommend a Comma always to supply the Place of the Parenthesis, which is an Innovation lately introduced, but does not seem evident enough to answer the Purpose of the Writer. We ought likewise to take care that our Parentheses be not too frequent or too long, nor cramm'd one into another, which would obscure and darken the Sense, much less of enclosing a whole Sentence between them, or as much as will make Sense of itself, which would be traversing the Intention of Parentheses.

CROTCHET, Called by some a *Parathesis*, or *Exposition*, is also used as a Sign of Intercalation, for marking such Words as are added by way of Explication of some thing that precedes or goes before, and is usually expressed by enclosing such Words between two angular Lines, as, *A Treatise of* [concerning] *Physick.*

It has Relation to the grammatical Figure called Ellipsis, which admits of omitting some Words in a Sentence. Such Ellipses are frequently seen in Latin School-Books, where the Words to be omitted are put between Crotchets, that Scholars may have a full scope of the Sentence, and at the same Time accustom themselves to elegant Latin; but I think the Parentheses would answer these Purposes entirely as well.

Some Books, instead of using Crotchets upon the like Occasion, distinguish Ellipses by Italicks, provided nothing else is varied in the Text, as in English Bibles, where such Words as are elegant Omissions in the Hebrew are filled up by Words in Italicks.

BRACE, Is a Mark whose Middle is formed like the Caret. It serves to tie several Words together, or one Word to many, as may be seen in the Conjugation of the Verbs; also to couple Lines in a Triplet of Poetry, and is very much used in copying of Musick, to join the Treble and Bass, or two Treble Cliffs together.

CARET, Is composed by a Union of the Acute and Grave Accent, and is placed underneath the Line, denoting that some Letter, Word, or Sentence is left out by Mistake, and being interlined, must be taken in

love

exactly where this Mark points, as, *I ^ you dearly*, &c. This Character is called by some a Circumflex, and is sometimes placed over a Vowel, to denote the Syllable long, as, Euphrâtes; but I think both the Form and Application of it with us is very badly adapted, the first being exactly the above Caret, that has no Manner of Analogy, either in Sound or Shape to the word *circum*, about, which is rather applicable to a Parenthesis; and the second is better expressed by what we call the *Long*, as, Euphrâtes.

The French make use of this Mark much more properly than we do, as, when they would denote a Retrenchment of *s*, Example, *Château*, a Castle, *Châtiment*, Punishment; because with them it still retains

the

the Shape, and in some Sort the Use of the Caret, for these Words were formerly written *Chasteau, Chastiment, &c.*

Extracted Quotation, Is a single Comma inverted, and placed at the Beginning of any Matter, in order to distinguish it from the mean Text, *i. e.* the main Subject. It is continued before each Line 'till the Close of it is signified by a single Apostrophé, which is here a Mark of Silence, intimating that the borrowed Passage from another Author ceases with that Mark.

This Quotation is used only when put before extracted Matter, or when the Substance of a Passage is drawn out to corroborate an Author's Argument.

Verbal Quotation, Is marked by two Comma's inverted, and placed in like Manner as the single one at the Beginning of any quoted Matter, to distinguish it from the mean Text, and so continued before each Line of the Quotation, 'till the Close is signified by two Apostrophés.

It denotes that Passage to be quoted or transcribed from some Author, exactly in his own Words. And as there is a manifest Difference, Care should be taken not to confound this Sort of Quotation with the former.

HYPHEN, Is much the same Mark as what we call the *Long*. It is a Note both of Division and Connection, and of the utmost Authority, considering that it has given Employment not only to a Number of Spelling-Book Authors, but also to others of a higher Degree, who have engaged in the Controversy of Spelling, though none of them have been acknowledged to have carried that important Point so as not to want mending or improving.

The Hyphen, or Mark of Division is used two ways, first to connect the Members or Syllables of Words that are divided at the End of Lines, and second, to join two or three Words together, which then come under the Appellation of Compounds, and consist frequently

of two or more Substantives, as, *bird-cage, pan-cake, pin-cushion, &c.*

ELLIPSIS, Is used when Part of a Word is left out, as, K—g and P——t. It must be as long as the Room the Letters omitted would take up, and no longer.

It is also employed in the Nature of a *Blank*, and is frequently so used and called in Law Precedents, viz. *Articles of Agreement made this — Day of — in the — Year of — in the penal Sum of £. — of lawful Money, &c.* and is then generally above twice as long as a Hyphen. See *Bird's Conveyancer*.

PARAGRAPH, Is a Character that looks not much unlike a Roman q or p reversed. It is used as a Note of Division, comprehending several Sentences under one Head, and was formerly prefixed to such Matter as Authors designed to distinguish from the main Contents of their Works, and which was to give the Reader an Item of some particular Subject. At present Paragraphs are seen only in Bibles, where they shew the Parts into which a Chapter is divided, and where its Contents change. In our Common Prayer-Books they are put before the Matter that directs the Order of the Service, and which is called Rubric, because those Lines were formerly printed in red, otherwise it has been held as a useless Sort, and unfit for a Reference, so long as there are others which have not that antique Look.

SECTION, Is marked in the Form of a double // incorporated into one. It is also a Note of Division, used in subdividing of Chapters or Books into less Parts or Proportions, wherein the particular Arguments are separately treated. But the Sign which is implied by this Word *Section*, is a Sort seldom used, except in Latin Notes, and particularly such as are collected from Foreign Books, which generally abound with Citations.

Single

Single DAGGER, Called by some an Obelisk, and by others a long Cross, is used to refer the Reader to the Bottom or Margin.

This Mark is frequently used in Roman Catholick Church Books, in Prayers of Exorcism, at the Benediction of Bread, Water, Fruit, and upon other Occasions, where the Priest is to make the Sign of the Cross, but is not so common as the Square Cross $+$, which frequently appears in Popes Briefs, in Ordinances and Mandates of Archbishops and Bishops, who place it immediately before the Signature of their Names, tho' I don't think this last is so proper a Symbol for the above-mentioned Purposes as the long Cross, which is a natural and true Representation of the Crucifix; besides, the Square Cross is not reckoned among References of which we are speaking, whereas the single Dagger or long Cross answers several Purposes, for it not only serves instead of a square Cross, but is used in genealogical Tables, &c. where it denotes the Death of a Person, or the Extinction of a Family; but the chief Use of this Mark is (as was said) by way of Reference, where we often find it used in a double Capacity, viz. the right way $\dagger$, and inverted way $\ddagger$.

Double DAGGER, Is a Mark crowded in to make one of the above References.

PARALLEL, Is another Sign, composed of two equal Strokes, which serves for a Reference, and is used either for Side or Bottom Notes. In Dictionaries it commonly denotes a Word obsolete or growing out of Use, as does also the above double Dagger.

INDEX, Is a Hand with the Fore Finger pointing out, and denotes that Passage against which it is placed to be very remarkable. It comes from the Latin *indicare*, to indicate or point forth.

STAR, Called by some an Asterism, as also the above Index, are the chief References which present themselves most readily to the Eye. Its Figure consists of

eight Points. In Roman Church Books the Asterism divides each Verse of a Psalm in two Parts, and shews where the Responses begin, which in our common Prayer-Books is done by putting a Colon between the two Parts of a Verse.

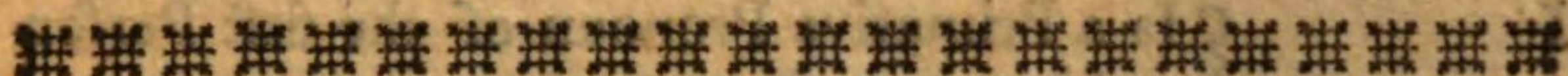
It is also used sometimes to supply the Name of a Person who chuses to pass anonymous.

The Stars also denote an Omission or Hiatus, by the loss of some Part of the original Copy, in which case the Number of Stars is multiplied, according to the Largeness of the Chasms, and not only whole Lines, but sometimes whole Pages are left blank, and marked with Lines of Stars.

In satirizing Persons in Pamphlets and publick Papers, the Star is of great Service, for it is but putting the first Letter of a Person's Name, with some Stars after it, thus, A * * *, and it will tend to characterise, and even libel Persons of any Rank, without Restriction.

Thus have we shewn the usual Symbols that are employed as *Stops* for Pronunciation, *Marks* for Writing, and *References* for Notes; and if more References should be wanting, they might easily be borrowed from the Letters of the Greek Alphabet, whose particular Formation afford great Variety.





Praxis on Grammar in General.

Shewing what Part of Speech every Word is, and why, by Grammatical Construction.

Example, *Good Boys love good Books.*

GOOD { Is an Adjective, because it shews the Manner or Quality of a Thing. See p. 96, and 121.

BOYS { Is a Noun Substantive, because it signifies the thing itself, and is made Plural by adding s. p. 96, 97.

LOVE, { Is a Verb Active, because it signifies Action, and is in the Plural Number, to agree with Boys. p. 154, 172.

GOOD Is an Adjective, for the Reasons above.

BOOKS. Is a Substantive, as before.

WHERE Is an Adverb of Place. See p. 273.

IS { Is a Verb Passive, and the third Person Singular of the Indicative Mood, Present Tense, of the Auxiliary Verb *to be*.

THE Is the limited Article. p. 109, 113.

SCHOOL { A Noun Substantive of the Singular Number.

A Is the general Article. p. 108, 109.

WOMAN Is a Substantive of the Feminine Gender.

OF { Is a Preposition, serving to the Gen. Case. p. 104.

DESERVED { Is a Participle of the Perfect Tense, and Passive Voice. p. 263, 268.

ESTEEM Is a Noun Substantive.

- I { Is a Primative Pronoun of the first Person Singular. *See p. 139, 145.*
- WALK { A Verb Neuter, because the Action does not pass on another Thing, but makes a complete Sense of itself. *See p. 155.*
- IN { Is a Preposition, governing here the Accusative Case. *See p. 329.*
- THE { Is the limited or definite Article, as was said before,
- SHADE, { A Noun Substantive of the Singular Number.
- BECAUSE { Is a Causative Conjunction, shewing the Reason, and joining the Sense. *p. 288, 293.*
- It's { Is an Impersonal of the Auxiliary Verb *be*, and signifies *it is*. *p. 235, 240.*
- COOL { Is a Noun Adjective, made Substantive. *p. 135.*

- WE { A Primative Pronoun of the third Person Plural.
- LOVE { A Verb Active, of the Indicative Mood, Present Tense, and third Person Plural.
- PRANCING { A Participle of the Active Voice. *See p. 263, 267.*
- HORSES { A Noun Substantive of the Plural Number.





Exercises on False Syntax, to be corrected by the true one, consistent with the Rules laid down in my Praxes and Remarks on every Part of Speech.

Lesson I. *On the General Article.*

THE King lends *a* Ear to every distressed Person, and has *a* Eye to the Happiness of his Subjects. She sang *a* Ode, but made *a* odd Noise with her Throat. They put up *a* Image in St. Peter's Church at *a* immense Expence. She had on *a* upper Garment. He had *a* Understanding above his Years. It is above *a* Hour ago since I saw him. He is *a* Heir to *a* Estate of 100l. *an* Year. She is *a* Heiress, and it is *a* Honour to be in her Company. He is *a* honest Man. She was *an* handsome Woman, but *an* Harlot. He was *an* hearty Man, but *an* Hermit. They were *an* happy Generation, *an* healthy People. That makes *an* Union in Musick, like the Horn of *an* Unicorn. He is grown quite *an* Usurer for hoarding up Things. They have *an* uniform Dress, *an* Uniformity of Manners, and *an* University in the Town.

Lesson II. *On Nouns.*

She plays too much at *Dies*. The *Oxes* were slain for a Sacrifice. The *Mouses* were all caught in the Trap. The Dimension was three *Foot* long and two wide. He sets my *Tooths* on Edge. The *Childs* are playing together in the Street. The *Mans* are at work in the Field. The *Womans* are sewing. The *Houses* were burnt. He gives an *Alm* to whosoever comes. Do you see that *Boys* Rudeness. I held by the *Horses* Main. A *Beggars* Song is more chearful than a *Thiefs*. These *Horses* bit this *Horses* Neck. I can put these Needles through this *Needles* Eye. That Swan is *more* whiter

whiter than Snow. She is *more* wiser than he. He is the *most* honestest Man alive, and the *most* fittest Person to do it.

Lesson III. *On Pronouns.*

Me and my Brother are Twins. *Ye* will never be a Scholar, if *ye* do not study more diligently. *Them* send *I* on a needless Errand. Where are the Apples, has *him* eat *they*? I taught *he* his Lesson. *Him* and *me* have Liberty to play. Did you see my Sister? *her* and *me* are to visit my Aunt, and I will buy *she* some Nuts. Do you make *we* a Present of these Oranges? Who made *that* Pen? *me*. Who spilt the Ink? *him*. Who read the Letter? *her*. Who said so? *us*. Who tore the Books? *them*, who but *them*? Let *we* do so too. It was *thee*, o Lord, who created all Things, *thee* alone art worthy of Praise. The Table is wet, *he* must be wiped. The Tree must be prun'd, else *he* will bear no Fruit. This Boy reads well, *it* is a good Child. *This* Bellows will not blow. *That* Books are well bound. *These* Fiddle is not good. *Those* Man drinks sparingly. *This* Boys are very idle. *That* Girls are very frolicksome. It is not so much *these* or *those* Profession among Men that gives us Honour, as the well or ill behaving themselves in *that* several Stations. *Them* have *there* Reasons. *Them* build *there* Houses high in London. *There* Circumstances are good. But what Complaints do *them* not make of *there* Ministers? This is the Man *which* stole the Horse, It was *she* *that* carried the Letter. It was the Chair *who* fell down.

Lesson IV. *On Verbs.*

I is going, and *I* is to stay a Week. *I* rides a very bad Horse, but you *rides* a good one. You *is* always asking Questions. When *I* travels I always *loves* to chat. We *passes* the Time agreeably. When *does* you propose to return? *I* *purposes* to return next Week. *I* feeds my Horse, and *looks* after him myself. *I* trusts not to another, but you *confides* in any one. You *eats*,
drinks,

drinks and *sleeps* well. *Do* my Horse trot well? Horses *is* useful Creatures, they *carries* Men on Journies, and *obeys* the Rein. Will you *by* him some Meat? The Man *ins* at the Blue Boar. A Sluggard and dissolute Person *is* often Companions. Abundance and Plenty *makes* Prodigals dainty. Courtesy and Humility *is* Marks of Gentility. Danger and Adversity *discovers* true Friendship. Envy and Excess *wastes* the Spirits. Ease and Honour *is* seldom Bedfellows. Glory, Honour, Tranquillity, and Praise, *is* purchased by Learning. You and I *writes* often to John, but *receives* no Answer. John and I *reads* better than you. My Father and Mother when living *was* very pious.

Lesson V. *On Participles.*

That Noise was *heard* all over the Church. It *meant* nothing less than a Disturbance. The Words were well *spelled*. The Liquor was *spilled* on the Floor. She *dwelled* in our Alley. The House was *burned* down. The Knife was *grinded* on a Stone. The Boy is finely *grew*. The Book was *binded*. That Dog is well *keep-ed*. The Bow was *bended*. A Fortune soon *spended*. The Ground is much *freezed*. It was a Story well *telled*. A House well *sweeped* is a Credit to the Servant. The Bells were finely *ringed*. There was a Load of *cleaved* Wood came in. The Fact was soon *seed* through. That the Person is well *read* no one doubts. There was the Nest, but the Birds were *flew*. He was both *lead* and *mislead* in this Affair. The Cantata was finely *singed*. The Treasure was *hided* some where. Such a Thing was never yet *knew*. That Die was well *threw*. The Horse was certainly *stoled*. As to that he was quite *foreswared*, and came in a Coat that was ragged and *teared*.

Lesson VI. *On Adverbs.*

Pray who was *their*? *Their* was only the Person and Clerk. *Than* you came away before Night, did you? I *staid*.

I staid *their* 'till *than*. What, and did *never* any one come to relieve you before *than*?

On Comparative Adverbs.

He has eaten more *then* I. John reads better *then* you. He dances better *then* she.

Lesson VII. *On Conjunctions.*

King George is both liberal *or* charitable. I sink deeper *nor* you. You love Peace very much, *or* I *both*. I do not know *and* it be good *nor* bad. He is neither rich *or* poor. Either good Luck *nor* ill Luck will happen. She is not handsome, *and* she pleases me. I believe the Thing true *as* I can't prove it. I will not stir *besides* you will go with me. *And* the King commands I must obey. I don't know *and* it be true I shall be sorry. Robbing would be honour'd *and* it were done with Gallantry. There are four Elements, *so* Earth, Air, Fire and Water. This Merchant has all Sorts of Wares, *so* Cloth, Corn, &c.

Lesson VIII. *On Prepositions.*

I went home *to* Three o'Clock. Is he gone *at* Church? I am much *over* his Resentment. It is *under* him to do a mean Action. That makes no Difference *among* you and I. He lives *further* the Church. He was slain *by* his Enemy, but was first wounded *by* his own Fears. Why don't the Man come *inn*? Where is my Brother, pray let him *inn*? I went *inn* as you came out. What think you *off* me? The like sure never was heard *off*. *Off* all the Girls in our Town, &c. Pray stand *of*. Pray get *of* the Stage, or I'll kick you *of*, says he. I forget the Day it happen'd *upon*. Sure you can tell whether *off* or *upon*. *On* my Honour I cannot. Let him come *upon* I am ready *of* him. He has waited *to* Four o'Clock. He bare gently with me *to* now. I shall stay *to* next Day. Will you come 'till To-morrow. Pray what will all this come *unto*.
I hit

I hit him on his *below* Lip. Place it on the *beneath* Side. He shoots *in* six Yards *off* the Place. He was *in* an Ace *off* being killed. She was *within* a fair way *off* Recovery. They are *without* my Reach.

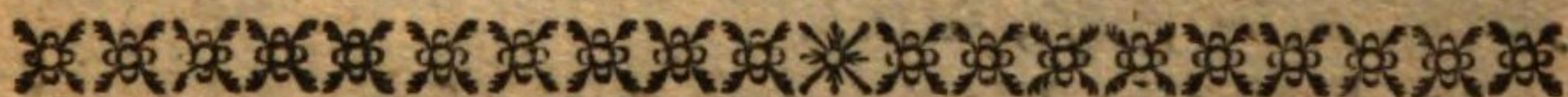
Lesson IX. *On Interjections.*

Alas! What a gallant Action! *o brave,* such Sorrow!
Poh! how extremely fine! *hush!* shout aloud!
Huzza! be silent! *ha ha he!* what a sad thing!

Lesson X. *In Verse.*

Children, like tender Oziers, *takes* the Bow,
 And as *them* first is fashion'd always *grows*,
 For what *us* learns in Youth, to that alone
 In Age *us* is by second Nature prone.

Friends is like Leaves *who* on the Trees *does* grow,
 In *Summers* prosp'rous State much love *them* show;
 But is *thee* in Adversity, *than* they,
 Like Leaves from Trees in Autum, *falls* away.
 Happy is *him* *which* have a Friend indeed,
 But *him* more happier are *which* none do need.



*Of Letters and Words that imply a Likeness to
 the Thing signified.*

IT is observable that in our Native Words there is to be found a very great Likeness or Agreement in the Letters to the Thing signified; as, *the thinner or smaller, the more acute or more gross, softer or stronger, clearer, more obscure,* or more hissing Sounds of the Letters very often imply the like affections in the things signified, and often in the same Word, though but of one Syllable, as may be perceived in the following Examples.

Thus

Thus Words that begin with *str* imply a strong Force or Power in the thing signified, as, *strong* or *strength*, *strow*, *strike*, *stroke*, *streak*, *strake*, *stroke*, i. e. the Marks of the Blow, *stripe*, *strive*, *strife*, *strain*, *struggle*, *strut*, *stretch*, *streight*, *stress*, *string*, *strap*, *stream*, *strand*, *strip*, *stray*, *straggle*, *strange*, *stride*, *straddle*. Perhaps *str* comes from the Latin *strenuous*, stout.

St implies or denotes Strength or Force, but in a less Degree, that is, as much as is needful to preserve what we have got, rather than for getting any thing, as, *stand*, *stag*, *staff*, *stop*, *stifle*, *stick*, *stutter*, *stammer*, *stagger*, *stickle*, *stick*, *stake*, *stock*, *stem*, *sting*, *stink*, *stitch*, *stubble*, *stump*, *stumble*, *stalk*, *step*, *stamp*, *stow*, *stead*, *steady*, *stable*, *stall*, *stool*, *stage*, *stout*, *sturdy*, *steeple*, *standard*, &c. In all which Words, and several others, *st* denotes something firm or fixed; perhaps it is taken from *sto*, to stand.

Thr implies a more violent Motion, as, *throw*, *thrust*, *throng*, *throb*, *through*, *threat*, *thrall*, &c.

Wr implies some Crookedness or Distortion, as, *wry*, *wreath*, *wrest*, *wring*, *wrong*, *wrinch*, *wrench*, *wriggle*, *wrangle*, *wrath*, *wrack*, *wretch*, *wrist*, *wrap*, &c.

Sw insinuates a silent Agitation, or softer Motion of the Body, as, *sway*, *swag*, *swagger*, *swerve*, *swill*, *swing*, *swim*, *swift*, *switch*.

Sm, beginning Word, are much the same, as, *smooth*, *smug*, *smile*, *smirk*, *smite*, *small*, *smell*, *smack*, *smart*.

Cl implies a Sort of adhering, sticking, or cleaving to, as, *cleave*, *clay*, i. e. sticking Earth, *cling*, to stick closely, *climb*, *clamber*, *clammy*, *clasp*, *clip*, *clinch*, *cloak*, *clog*, *close*, *clod*, *clotted*, *clouted*, *clutter*, *cluster*, &c.

Sp implies a Sort of Dissipation or spreading out, particularly with Swiftmess, especially if an *r* be added, as if it came from *spargo* or *separo*, to spread, thus, *spread*, *spring*, *spout*, *split*, *splinter*, *sprinkle*, *spill*, *spurt*, *sputter*, *spatter*, &c.

Sl implies a Sort of silent Falling or Motion, not very discernable, as in *slide*, *slip*, *slippery*, *slime*, *sleight*, *sly*, *slit*, *slow*, *slack*, *slight*, *sling*, *slap*, &c.

So

So the Terminations or Endings of Words in *ash*, as *crash*, *rash*, *gash*, *flash*, *clash*, *slash*, *plash*, *trash*, &c. denote something very sharp and clear; but the Endings in *ush*, as, *crush*, *rush*, *gush*, *flush*, *blush*, *brush*, *hush*, *push*, imply something that's very obscure and silent, yet both these Endings signify a quick and sudden Motion, but which does not end in an Instant, but by degrees, by reason of the continued Sound of *sh*.

So the nasal Tingling of the Termination *ng* and the sharp Vowel *i* in *sling*, *fling*, *ding*, *swing*, *cling*, *sing*, *ting*, *sting*, *wring*, &c. imply a Continuation of very small Motion or Trembling, which vanishes by degrees as musical Sounds do, and not all at once; but a sudden Ending of the Sound is implied by the Termination *nk*, as in *tink*, *wink*, *sink*, *clink*, *drink*, *think*, ending in a mute Consonant; but if *l* be added, as in *single*, *tingle*, *mingle*, *tinkle*, *sprinkle*, *twinkle*, it implies or denotes a frequent Repetition of little Actions.

The same Frequency of Actions, but those not so small or little, is by Reason of the more open and clear Vowel *a*, implied in *jangle*, *tangle*, *spangle*, *mangle*, *wrangle*, *brangle*, *dangle*, &c.

But the obscure *u* implies something more obscure, as, *mumble*, *grumble*, *tumble*, *stumble*, *tumble*, *crumble*, *fumble*, &c. But there is a confused Sort of wallowing or rowling expressed by the Cluster of Consonants *mb*, as, *ramble*, *scramble*, *scamble*, *wamble*, *amble*. But in these last there is something more acute, as, *squeak*, *squall*, *brawl*, *yaul*, *spaul*, *screek*, *shriek*, *shrill*, *sharp*, *strivel*, *whist*, *hurl*, *curl*, *whirl*, *buz*, *bustle*, *spindle*, *dwindle*, *twine*, *twist*, and in great Numbers of others of the same Sounds we may observe a great Likeness to the Things signified, and this is so very frequent and common, that I know of no Language that can compare to the English in this Particular; so that sometimes *that* is emphatically signified in Words of one Syllable (and almost all the original Words of our Language are Monosyllables) which in other Tongues can scarce be explained by many Syllables, or even by a Circumlocution; and most of our native Words are formed or made after

this Manner, and it is thought there were a great many more thus made, before the unnatural Mixture of the French with our Language had thrown them out, and buried them in Oblivion.

There are also many other Words which, as it were, bear Relation to one another, as being derived from the same Stock or Root, though with some Alteration, and have a near Signification with one another, as, *beat, bat, baton, battle, beetle, battledoor, butter, batter*, all which have a kindred Signification, perhaps from the Latin *batuere*.

So likewise *take, touch, tickle, tack, tackle, and, two*, (which comes from the Saxon *twa*) *twain, twice, twelve, twenty, twin, twine, twist, twirl, twig, twitch, twinge, also, between, betwixt, twilight, &c.*

Bl denotes blowing (and perhaps comes from the Latin *flō*, to blow) as *blow, blast, blight, bleat, bleak, bleach, bluster, blab, blurt, bladder, bleb* (a Knot in a Glass) *blaze, blow, blossom, bloom*, and perhaps *blood* and *blush, &c.*

Sn generally denotes or implies as much as *nose*, or Words that come from it, or have some sort of Relation or Reference thereto, as, *snout, sneeze, snore, snort, sneer, snicker, snot, snivel, snuff, snuffle, snarl, snudge*, i. e. to hold your Nose in your Bosom. It comes from the Latin *nasus*, from whence is derived the French word *nez*, and the English *nose*; and *nesse* signifies a Promontory that, like a Nose, runs into the Sea, as is plain from the Names of several of the Promontories on the Sea Coasts of England and Scotland, as *Sheerness, Buttonness, Blackness, Dalness, Skipness, Buchanness, Dungerness, Stromness, Inverness, Borowstonness, Fife-ness, &c.*

The following Praxes are here added, to shew the Beauty of our Language, in the peculiar Force and Expressiveness of a great many single Words.

A certain French Gentleman praising the Happiness of his native Language, which had Words that implied a Likeness to the Thing signified, at the same time finding Fault with the English Tongue as not being
able

able to do the like, he proposed these Verses to Dr. Wallis.

Praxis François.

*Quand un cordier cordant, vult corder un corde ;
Pour sa corde corder, trois cordons il accorde ;
Mais si un des cordons de la corde descorde,
Le cordon descordant fait descorder la corde.*

Which Dr. Wallis thus rendered into English, making use of the pure English Word *twist*, (contrary to the Expectation of the French Gentleman) instead of the French Word *corde*.

First English Praxis.

*When a twister a twisting will twist him a twist,
For the twisting his twist he three times doth intwist.
But if one of the twines of the twist do untwist,
The twine that untwisteth untwisteth the twist.*

Afterwards the Doctor added four Verses more,

Second English Praxis.

*Untwirling the twine that untwisteth between,
He twirls, with his twister, the two in a twine ;
Then twice having twisted the twines of the twine,
He twitcheth the twine he had twined in twain.*

Afterwards he added four more.

Third English Praxis.

*The twain that in twining, before in the twine,
As twins were intwisted, he now doth untwine ;
'Twixt the twain intertwisting a twine more between,
He twirling his twister, makes a twist of the twine.*

Peculiarities.

THERE are peculiar Modes of Speech in every Language, and the English are not without theirs, though the following has been taken Notice of by Foreigners for its Tautology, the Demonstrative Pronoun *that* coming no less than four times together in one Sentence, viz.

I know *that that, that that* Man says is true, &c.

Also we may observe our Active and Passive Participles come alternately together four or five times in one Sentence, as,

The *Sinner* having relented repented being guilty,
 The *Guilty* having appeared escaped being punished,
 The *Witnesses* having come refused being sworn,
 The *Fox* having cunning avoided being taken,
 The *Thief* being taken denied having stolen,
 The *Master* being offended continued chastising.

Also these following Words are spelt alike, both forwards and backwards, viz. *Madam, Hannah, &c.*

Some Words seem to have what the French call a double *entendre*, or two Meanings, viz. *He wants to see her work, and she wants to see him plain, viz.* Also in this old Verse,

*To shed King Harry's Blood,
 Refuse to fear I hold it good.*

TECHNICAL TERMS,

Or special Appellations of Things in common use, whether it be of Quantity or Quality, as they are mechanically distinguished in the several Sorts of Trades and Professions among us, and which are here introduced for the Use of such Foreigners and Natives, whose Business it is to translate properly from one Language to another.

An Ingot of Gold	Chump of Wood
a Wedge of Silver	Pottle of Strawberries
Bar of Iron	Gross of Corks
Piggot { of Lead	Vat of Toys
Sheet {	Last of Corn
Faggot of Steel	Weigh of Cheese
Carat of Diamonds	Quintal of Pilchards
Pack { of Wool	Fodder of Lead
Tod {	Dicker of Hides
Sack of Flower	Dozen of Pelts
Pocket of Hops	Load of { Dung
Cluster of Grapes	{ Timber, &c.
Frail { of Raisins	Piece of { Cotton
Sern {	{ Linen
Carteel of Currants	{ Lawn, &c.
Shumack of Ginger	Pack of Cards
Fufs of Cloves	Peck of Salt
Loaf of { Bread	Whisp { of Hay
{ Sugar	Trufs {
Firkin of Butter	Fathom of Wood
Bale of { Silk	Fardel of Cloths
{ Cotton	Maund of Apples
Bundle { of Paper	Keg of Sturgeon
Ream {	Kit of Salmon
Pair of { Stays	Hogshead of Sugar
{ Breeches	Guile { of Beer
{ Gloves	Butt {
Skain of { Thread	Barrel {
{ Silk	Butt { of Wine
Yard { of Cloth	Pipe {
Ell { Ribbon	Tierce {
Bottom { of Worsted	Bottle {
Ball {	Tun { of Oil
Roll of { Vellum	Jar {
{ Parchment	Betty {
{ Tobacco	Puncheon of Rum
Bolt of Reeds	Anchor of Brandy
Lock of Hair	Chest of { Tea
Shock { of Wheat	{ Florence Wine
Sheeve {	Cavalry, i. e. Horsemen
Clod of Earth	Infantry, i. e. Foot-soldiers

Covey	{	of Partridges	Yoke	of Oxen
Brace	{		Team	of Horses
Leach		of Hares	Flock	{
Nest		of Birds	Lag	{ of Sheep
Litter		of Puppies	Drove	of { Geese
Head		of Cattle		{ Turkeys
Herd		of Swine	Swarm	of Bees.

Particular Names or Appellations of some Parts of Animals,

Mens Hands		Boar's Tusk
Dogs Feet		Dog's Teeth
Horses Hoofs		Mens Hair
Lion's	{	Horse's {
Bear's	{ Paws	Lion's { Mane
Eagle's	{	Hogs Bristles
Cat's	{ Talons	Fishes Fins
Lobster's Claws		Cocks Spurs
Dog's Mouth		Deers Antlers
Hog's Snout		Bulls {
Bird's	{ Bill	Cows { Horns
	{ Beak	Boar's Head
Elephant's Trunk		Jowl of Salmon

Note, The Names of the distinct Sounds, and Properties peculiar to those Sort of Animals, may be seen in my Remarks on the Active Participles, at p. 267.

English Idioms Explained.

Note, Besides the literal Sense of Words there is a figurative one used in common Discourse, peculiar to the Language of every Nation, as these following are to the English.

to make { friends, i. e. to reconcile
 { mouths, i. e. to writhe the face into odd shapes
 { merry, i. e. to be joyful

sport, i. e. to divert or entertain
way, i. e. to give place
good, i. e. to supply or redress
lamentation, i. e. to wail, weep, moan
amends, i. e. to satisfy, repay, or reward
account, i. e. to intend or resolve, also to value or appraise any thing
a leg, i. e. to bow, dance, &c.
a bed, i. e. to lay it smooth
a mock, i. e. to ridicule
a present, i. e. to give away gratis
to make a doubt, i. e. to be very scrupulous
a puff, i. e. to deceive by outside shew, also to brag, bounce, &c.
a point, i. e. an obligation or duty
a conscience, i. e. to be conscientious
an end, i. e. to finish or conclude
an offer, i. e. to propose
an overture, i. e. to disclose or open the matter by way of proposal
it out, i. e. to explain it
something of it, i. e. to succeed
nothing of it, i. e. to fail of success

Also thus,

I will *make* you do it, *i. e.* constrain or oblige you
 He *made* as tho' he wept, *i. e.* he feigned
 I won't *make* you have anger, *i. e.* not be the cause
 What did you *make* of last year's crop, *i. e.* how much
 sell it for?
 They *make* a lame hand on't, *i. e.* do it very badly
 He *cracks* of his exploits, *i. e.* boasts or brags of them
 He is *able* to read and write, *i. e.* he can read
 He was *not able* to speak to him, *i. e.* he had no opportunity or could not get access
 None is *able* to come near him, *i. e.* none can for skill, judgment, &c.
 He gives more than he is *able*, *i. e.* than he can afford
 He deals *above board*, *i. e.* fairly, plain, honest, without deceit

He

He works *above* his strength, *i. e.* more than he is able
 He does things *above* his Years, *i. e.* more than might
 be expected for one so young.

I have no money *about* me, *i. e.* not with me *or* in my
 pocket

He came to me *about* that business, *i. e.* concerning, &c.
According to his mind, *i. e.* to his liking.

According to the present rate, *i. e.* at the present price

He acts *according* to reason, *i. e.* reasonably.

He goes *according* to the times, *i. e.* he temporises

I spend *according* to my fortune, *i. e.* in proportion

I have had *an account* of that, *i. e.* heard it

I shall do it on your *account*, *i. e.* for your sake.

He makes *account* to go soon, *i. e.* he intends it

Upon what *account* does he demand it, *i. e.* on what
 ground or reason

You are more *afraid* than hurt, *i. e.* have more fear

He *aims* at my destruction, *i. e.* contrives or designs it

He is *undone* to all Intents, *i. e.* is lost or ruined

He is *all* in *all* with him, *i. e.* a great favourite

His *all* is at stake, *i. e.* his whole fortune

But take this *along* with you, *i. e.* remember or take
 notice

Any thing will go *down* with him, *i. e.* will do *or* be
 agreeable

I have been a *father* to him, *i. e.* have assisted him

He was hard *at* it, *i. e.* at work

I'll be *at* him presently, *i. e.* importune or correct, &c.

He is *at odds* with him, *i. e.* disagrees.

He keeps *bad* hours, *i. e.* unseasonable.

I first brought him *acquainted* with her, *i. e.* first inform'd
or told him of her

I am *hard* of hearing, *i. e.* don't hear quickly

He is *hard* of belief, *i. e.* incredulous

You have a *hard* heart, *i. e.* a cruel one

What shall I be the *better* for that, ? *i. e.* what shall I
 gain by it ?

He cut him *short*, *i. e.* interrupted him in speech

He *drives* all before him, *i. e.* succeeds in every thing

He

He will *face me* out in a lie, *i. e.* support or maintain it
I will go *as far* as any man, *i. e.* will contribute, bid, endeavour

He is a man of *good* parts, *i. e.* of great abilities
I have brought that affair to *bear*, *i. e.* accomplished it
But when *all* comes to *all*, *i. e.* the upshot

To take an account, *i. e.* to make a memorandum
You *take* me, don't you? *i. e.* you understand me
He *takes* things surprisngly quick, *i. e.* he comprehends, &c.

He *takes* his learning admirably, *i. e.* soon understands
Consider what you intend to *do*, *i. e.* perform
Have *done* thy charm, thou hateful wither'd hag, *i. e.* finish

I have *done* your job, *i. e.* finished it
Pray how *does* good Mrs. Ann? *i. e.* how fares she as to health

Do as you please, *i. e.* act as you will
He was *drawn* into a scrape, *i. e.* induced or inveigled to do wrong.

He has *knock'd* all on the head, *i. e.* spoilt all
He *ferreted* him out of his Hole, *i. e.* drove or hunted him out

He did all he could to *work* him out of his place or estate, *i. e.* to do it by artifice

To *dragoon* him out of it, *i. e.* to obtain it by force
To *worm* himself into favour, *i. e.* to use cunning or stratagem

She is past *puppy-love*, *i. e.* play and dalliance
She *eggs* or *spurs* him on, *i. e.* urges or excites him
They *wherrit* or *worry* me so often about it, *i. e.* importune me

He *stands* to what he said, *i. e.* is resolved
Stand to that whatever you do, *i. e.* keep always in that mind or tone

He *flies off* from his bargain, *i. e.* will not agree to it
You *eke out* your pittance to admiration, *i. e.* make it hold out

You have a *clear* understanding } *i. e.* a good one
She has a *clear* reputation
He is *clear* of that disease, *i. e.* not infected

I have

I have a *clear* conscience, *i. e.* free from guilt

You have a *clear* estate, *i. e.* unincumbered

He made *way* for his master, *i. e.* gave place to him

The ship made *way*, *i. e.* sailed

He *arrived* at a peerage

They *arrived* at happiness } *i. e.* obtained them

She *arrived* at a place

The *ground* of his work was his own invention, *i. e.* the original

The *ground* of his opinion was false, *i. e.* the original

She *wanton'd* in her cruelty, *i. e.* was profusely cruel

In all thy actions, whether grave or *mellow*, *i. e.* fuddled

He is a *bite*, *i. e.* a great cheat.

Addison.

Sappho can tell you how the man was bit. *Addison.*

What *room* have you to think it? *i. e.* what reason

What *ground* does he go upon? *i. e.* what motive or authority

He is a *good* man, *i. e.* a person of credit

He is an *able* man, *i. e.* rich

He *builds* much upon it, *i. e.* he absolutely expects it

He *aim'd* at me, *i. e.* he meant me

He is very much *cast down*, *i. e.* his spirits fail him

Of English Similitudes.

I HAVE remarked that formerly we abounded very much with well adapted Similies, that gave a great deal of Life and Vigour to our Discourse; such was also the happy Genius of *Homer*, *Virgil*, *Milton*, &c. but in these latter times we are either not so fruitful of Invention, or else do not think them so necessary as they really are; yet it seems to be very shameful in some Persons, who are so extremely barren of Thought, that when they begin a Simile they don't know properly how to end it; for I have remarked, with no small Confusion, that although some People finish their Comparisons very truly, yet at the same time not very skillfully,

skillfully, by saying of a Subject, *it is like they don't know what*, whilst others say, *it is like any thing*, i. e. *nothing at all*. So that here the Beauty of the Discourse, which should always appear in the Conclusion, is entirely lost; but if, when they would make a Similitude, they took care to shew the inherent Properties of the Things which they would compare, they certainly must succeed better, as in these Examples following and the like.

Like snow that melts away on the ground as it falls, i. e. words

Like a candle which lights others, and burns out itself, i. e. an author, or

Like a dog in a wheel that toils to roast meat for others eating, i. e. an author

Like gallipots in a doctor's shop that have remedies without, but poison within, i. e. invective satires

Like a bucket at the bottom of a deep well, he must labour hard that will draw it up, i. e. truth

Like diamonds in the bowels of the earth, he must dig deep who intends to be rich, i. e. in learning

Like a child who is puzzled with a fescue on his horn-book, i. e. dull students

Like a common jilt, who first flatters then shuns her admirers, i. e. fortune

Like the dog in the manger that will neither eat hay himself, nor let the horse eat it, i. e. the avaritious

Like the tide which has its ebb and flowings, i. e. a gamester

Like the swan, who has black feet under white wings, i. e. deceit, or

Like the shirt of Hercules sent to him as a token of love, but impregnated with poison, by which he was destroyed, i. e. deceit

Like untiling my own house to break my neighbours windows, i. e. going to law

Like the great shirk which devours the small fry, i. e. the power of the rich to the poor

Like

Like the ivy round the oak tree never afunder, *i. e.* friends

Like a cypher which added to a figure advances the sum, but alone signifies nothing, *i. e.* a single or unmarried person

Like two fragrant flowers bound up in one nosegay both tend to augment its sweetness, *i. e.* matrimony

Like locks and keys that rather break than open unless the wards be answerable, *i. e.* matrimony

Like the master of an inn there's knocking and call in for him in every room, *i. e.* a husband

Like commending fasting when the belly's full, *i. e.* praising continency

Like the palsy of any particular member which deprives the whole body of its vigor and activity, *i. e.* a miser

Like old swords that canker and eat themselves up in their own rust, *i. e.* the envious

Like a stream that follows the several inclinations of the ground it runs on, *i. e.* the ignorant and thoughtless

Like a taper or candle fallen into the socket, *i. e.* an old or decayed person

Like the spider converting all to poison, *i. e.* snarling criticks

Like a looking-glass which casts reflections but tells the truth, *i. e.* a free inquirer

Like a good parent who privately corrects the fault for the child's good, *i. e.* a friendly admonisher

Like the separate rays of light on passing through the convex glass to the same focus, *i. e.* joint approbation

Like a tree loaden with fruit, which so long as there is any remaining, people will be crowding round it, but when stript of all, they leave it and go to another, *i. e.* a forsaken spendthrift

Like a cock and hen who both scrape together to pick up something for their little chickens, *i. e.* an industrious husband and wife

Like the sun and moon, when the greater light goes down,

down, the lesser gets up, *i. e.* the wife acting in the husband's absence.

Like as King Pharaoh said to Joseph, so should the husband say to his wife.—See Gen. chap. 41.

Of GALICISMS.

THE following and numerous other French words are now constantly and publickly introduced in the English Language:

The *Grand*, *i. e.* the President of any Lodge, Chapter, or Society is so called.

The *Canaille*, *i. e.* the Mob or common people.

The *first Tome*, *i. e.* the first Volume.

Adieu, *i. e.* good b'y', or God be with you.

Alamode, *i. e.* in the fashion.

En passant, *i. e.* by the by, or cursorily.

Encore, *i. e.* again once more.

Petitesse, *i. e.* trifle, meanness, slenderness, shallowness, &c.

To *succumb*, *i. e.* yield, submit, &c.

Rendez-vous, *i. e.* the place of assignation, or meeting.

To *reconnoitre* the enemy, *i. e.* to view, review, examine, or discover.

He is a great *Connoisseur*, *i. e.* a learned or skilful Person.

To *chagrine*, *i. e.* trouble, or vex.

He was sadly *chagrined*, *i. e.* very uneasy at it.

St. *James's* and its *environs*, *i. e.* places adjacent.

To give one a *carte blanche*, *i. e.* a free and unlimited power.

The King granted his *conge d'elire*, *i. e.* his leave to elect.

Sent him a *lettre de cachet*, *i. e.* his credential sealed.

That was by *parole* agreement, *i. e.* by word of mouth.

A *chose* in action, *i. e.* a thing or cause depending, or where an action may lay.

She is under *coverture*, *i. e.* a married woman.

To make an *eclaircissement*, *i. e.* come to an explanation.

To pay his *devoirs*, *i. e.* his duty, or to make his acknowledgment or submission.

People are divided amongst themselves in point of *dé-voir* and *interest*, *i. e.* duty and interest.

To give it in *detail*, *i. e.* to tell the particulars.

He gave it him as a *doceur*, *i. e.* a sweetning reward or encouragement.

He received a *doceur*, *i. e.* a bribe.

Etre en face, to be in face, *i. e.* to be dressed about the head, or have the face set off to advantage.

The officer was not to quit his *emplacement*, *i. e.* not to leave his post.

The enemy retires *pas à pas*, *i. e.* step by step.

By such *manœuvres*, *i. e.* exploits or actions, or dispositions to action.

And what may seem yet more *bizarre*, *i. e.* more whimsical.

They held a *tête à tête conversation*, *i. e.* a private or familiar discourse, as we say in English, laying their heads together.

He keeps his *fille de joie*, *i. e.* mistress or concubine.

She has a certain *je ne sçai quoi* that's very engaging, *i. e.* something inexpressibly agreeable.

It was his *coup d'essai*, *i. e.* his first essay or trial.

It was a *coup de maître*, *i. e.* masterly stroke.

It was a *coup de main*, *i. e.* a bold push.

To give him a *coup de grace*, *i. e.* the finishing stroke or rising blow.

To give him a *coup d'épée*, *i. e.* a thrust with the sword.

To make a grand *eclat*, *i. e.* a great deal to do, a great noise in the world.

There is no *l'argent*, *i. e.* no money.

He has taken this in *lieu* of that, *i. e.* in the room or stead of it.

Perhaps he may take *ombrage* at it, *i. e.* be displeased at it.

A mere *bagatelle*, *i. e.* a trifle.

They made such terrible *carnage*, *i. e.* havock, slaughter, or massacre.

She is excellent in her *menage*, *i. e.* household government.

It has a *double entendre*, *i. e.* a double meaning.

To be conversant in the *Belles Lettres*, *i. e.* the Sciences.

A *bel esprit*, *i. e.* a wit or virtuoso.

He is all *à mort*, *i. e.* looks sad or is cast down.

That is his *dernier resort*, *i. e.* his last resource or refuge.

Make my *baise-mains*, *i. e.* compliments or respects.

A fine *parterre*, *i. e.* the level part of a flower garden.

He is on the *fauxbourg*, *i. e.* the forborough, such as that at Reading.

By a kind of *jeu de mots*, *i. e.* quibble or play on words by way of pun or equivocation.

Who would be his *dupe*, *i. e.* his bubble.

He made the *tour* of France, *i. e.* a journey through France.

He rides in his $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Phaeton}, \\ \textit{Landeau}, \\ \textit{Dungee}, \\ \textit{Vis à vis}, \end{array} \right\}$ *i. e.* chaises, coaches, or carriages, so called.

He is a judge of the *police*, *i. e.* justice of peace.

When the affair is brought on the *tapis*, *i. e.* is proposed for consideration.

On the *revers*, *i. e.* the opposite side of the coin or medal.

That was done in *basse relief*, *i. e.* was but little raised.

That was very *à propos*, *i. e.* well tim'd or to the purpose.

He is so very *adroit*, *i. e.* handy or ingenious.

So *cavalier* in his deportment, *i. e.* so genteel or gentlemanlike in his address.

The *mâitre à musique*, *i. e.* the musick master.

The *mâitre à danser*, *i. e.* the dancing master, teaches

The *Gaillarde*, *i. e.* the galliard step,

Courant, *i. e.* the courant step,

Six sons, *i. e.* the jump or first step in the rigadoon,

Contretems, *i. e.* the hop,

Balance, *i. e.* the ballance,

Bourree, *i. e.* the boree,

Coupé, *i. e.* the coupee, &c.

Entre nous, *i. e.* between us.

They beat the *Chamade*, *i. e.* the drums beat up for a parley.

But now comes on the *Denouement*, *i. e.* the untying or unravelling of the matter.

Bonnes graces, *i. e.* favours, also benevolence.

Of ENGLISH PROPER NAMES.

NAMES were first imposed on men for distinction's sake, first by the *Jews* at their circumcision, then by the *Romans* on the ninth day after their birth, and by *Christians* at their baptism; of such signification for the most part as might denote the future good hope, or good wishes of parents towards their children.

The English names at baptism are generally either Saxon or Norman, as *Robert, Richard, Henry, William, Edward, Edmund, Edwin, Gilbert, Walter, Leonard, &c.* or else (especially in latter ages) out of the Bible, as *Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, &c.* or the New Testament, as *John, Thomas, James, &c.* or sometimes of the mother's surname, especially if she has been an heiress, or of superior birth or quality to her husband; and of late years two Christian names borrowed from the custom of other countries, as *William Henry, Mary Anne, &c.*

Names superadded to the Christian names, we call *Sur-names*, from the French *Sur-noms*. The Hebrews, the Greeks, and most other nations, had no Surnames fixed to their families, as we have now-a-days, but counted, thus for example among the Hebrews, *Melchi Ben Addi, Addi Ben Casani, &c.* so the Britons, *Hugh ap Owen, Owen ap Rice, Rice ap Richard, &c.* so the Irish, *O Brion, O Hara, O Neal, &c.* and the Scotch, *Mac Donald, Mac Namara, Mac Pherson, &c.* As Christian names were first given for distinction of persons, so Surnames for distinction of families, &c. About the year 1000, the French nation began to take Surnames with *de* prefixt of a place, and *le* prefixt for some other qualifications as at this day is their usual manner. The English also took to themselves Surnames, but not generally among the common people, 'till after the reign of Edward the first. Great offices of honour have brought divers surnames, *Edward Fitz Theobald*, being long ago made Butler of Ireland, the Duke of *Ormond* and his race, descending from him, took the surname of *Butler*; so *John Count Tankerville*, of Normandy, being made Chamberlain to the King of England, his descendants still

still bear the same coat of arms, by the name of *Chamberlain*. At first, for Surnames, the English gentry took the name of their birth-place, or habitation, as *Thomas of Aston*, or *East-town*; *John of Sutton*, or *South-town*; *Henry of Wotton*, or *Wood-town*; and as they altered their habitation, so they altered their Surname, afterwards when they became Lords of places, they called themselves *Thomas Aston of Aston*, *John Sutton of Sutton*, *Henry Wotton of Wotton*.

The Saxon common people (as the Dutch, Germans, Danes and Swedes do to this day) for Surnames add their father's Christian name with *son* at the end thereof, which is still retained among us, as *Thomas Johnson*, *Robert Richardson*, and sometimes their mother's name in like manner, as *Bettison*, *Nelson*, *Margetson*, &c. they also often took their father's Nick name, or abbreviation, as *Gib*, the nick name or abbreviation for *Gilbert*; *Hob*, of *Robert*; *Nick*, of *Nicholas*; *Bat*, of *Bartholomew*; *Sam*, of *Samuel*; *Hodge*, of *Roger*; *Sander*, of *Alexander*; and thence also come *Gibson*, *Hobson*, *Nickson*, *Batson*, *Samson*, *Hodson*, and *Sanderson*, &c. Many were also surnamed from their trade, as *Smith*, *Carpenter*, *Taylor*, *Weaver*, &c. or from their offices, as *Porter*, *Steward*, *Shepherd*, *Carter*, &c. or from the place of abode, as *Underwood*, *Underhill*, *Atwood*, *Atwell*, *Athill*, which last are shrunk into *Wood*, *Wells*, *Hill*; or from their colour or complexion, as *Fairfax*, i. e. *Fairlocks*; *Pigot*, i. e. *speckled*; *Blunt* or *Blund*, i. e. *flaxen hair*. So from Birds, as *Wren*, *Finch*, *Woodcock*, *Swallow*, *Raven*, &c. So from Beasts, as *Lamb*, *Fox*, *Bullock*, *Lion*, &c. From Colours, as *White*, *Black*, *Brown*, *Red*, *Green*. From the Winds, as *East*, *West*, *North*, *South*. And sometimes from Saints, as *St. John*, *St. George*, *St. Leger*.

The Normans, for about 200 years after the conquest, took for Surnames their fathers Christian name with *fitz* or *filz* prefixed, which signifies *son*, as *Robert fitz William*, *George fitz Gerald*, *Henry fitz Adams*, *Thomas fitz Roy*, which is the same as *Williamson*, *Gerardson*, *Adamson*, *Royson*.

The Britains or Welch did not take Surnames 'till of late years,^a and that for the most part only by leaving out *a* in *ap*, and annexing *p* to their fathers Christian name, as instead of *Evan ap Rice*, it is now *Evan Price*; so instead of *ap Richard*, it is *Prichard*; and instead of *ap Howel*, it is *Powel*; and instead of *ap Hugh*, it is *Pugh*, &c.

But now we are upon personal names, it may not be amiss perhaps to take notice here of one thing concerning them, by way of hint, that particularly demands our attention, which is, that in England the woman drops her father's name the moment she is married, and is ever after called by that of her husband; so that if there were any occasion to make use of her maiden name, as in law, title-deeds, signatures, &c. (which frequently happens amongst people of property) they are obliged, for distinction sake, to mention it by way of circumlocution, as, suppose her name was *Mary Price*, and her husband's name *Williams*, we must then (I say, on some certain occasions) be obliged to say *Mary Williams*, formerly *Price*, or born *Price*; whereas if we admitted her to use her maiden name jointly with her husband's, nothing would be more easy and natural, and in my opinion useful, than to stile herself thus, *Mary Price Williams*, which would at once shew her own name, her father's name, and her husband's name; but how far this innovation might affect legislative authority, I will not presume to determine, if it should not, it would not be unpleasing perhaps to both families in case of marriage, if this method were lawfully adopted.



A Comparative View of the ENGLISH LANGUAGE, both *ancient* and *modern*.

Those who are curious to know what analogy or agreement there is between the ancient and modern diction or stile of our language, and to investigate the vast changes and alterations in it by fluxion of time, should first observe, that the English tongue, which is now spoken, is not that ancient British tongue that the first Britons formerly used, but a quite different one, brought here by strangers from foreign parts, such as the Gothick, Teutonick, Danish, Norman and Saxon Dialects, as may be seen hereafter, with the distinct periods of time when in use among us.

ENGLISH <i>in the Year 900</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in the Year 900</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
ure	our	beo me	by me
fader	father	freondlice	friendly
wilk	which	ic taehte	I teach
fic	fuch	Engliscen	English
thin	thine	gewriten	writing
willa	will	eower	your
daeg	day	aet ham	at home
inlead	unlead	med eow	with you
ne led	lead not	forthan	for then, <i>i. e.</i>
forgif	forgive		because
ifele	evil	fwutelice	foothingly
heofnas	heavens	saegth	saith
cume	come	hit se alefd	it be allow'd
hlaf	loaf	min	my
gyltas	guilt	maesse	mass
and	or	preestan	priests
gyltendum	trespasses	wifigen	wives
tham	them	thysen	this
fwa		ic wille	I will
and	so	yeet aeles	that each
fwe		aester	after
thu	thou	aenig	any
hegeft	highest	wrang	wrong
fi hit fwa	be it so	God eoy	God you hold
on eorthan	in earth	heald	<i>i. e.</i> God
gret	greet		keep you.

ENGLISH	ENGLISH	ENGLISH	ENGLISH
<i>in 1066, from the Charter of Will. the Conqueror.</i>	<i>in 1763.</i>	<i>in 1066.</i>	<i>in 1763.</i>
Williem	William	binnen	within
bisceop	bishop	Frencisce	French
portgreve	Lord Mayor	Englisce	English
burghwarn	burgesses	friendlice	friendly
ealle	all	get weeran	ye were
		aenis	any
		daege	days

LORD'S PRAYER, *in the Reign of HENRY II.*
in the Year 1154.

Ure fadyr in heaven rich,
Thy name be halyed ever liche,
Thou bring us thy michell blisse,
Als hit in heaven y-doe
Evar in yearth been it also.
That holy bread that lasteth ay,
Thou send it us this ilk day.
Forgive ous all that we have don,
As we forgivet uch other mon.
Ne let us fall into no foundling,
Ac shield us froe the fowle thing. *Amen.*

LORD'S PRAYER, *in the Reign of HENRY III.*
in the Year 1216.

Fadir that art in heaven blisse,
Thin helege nam it wurth the blifs
In heaven and in erdh also,
So shall it bin full well Ic tro.
Gif us all bread on this day,
And forgif us ure sinnes,
As we do ure wider winnes.
Let us not in fondling fall,
Oac fro evil thu syld us all. *Amen.*

ENGLISH <i>in the Reign of Richard II. 1377</i>	ENGLISH <i>in the Reign of Geo. III. 1763.</i>
al	all
is	his
yates	gates
cluped	called
yout	yet
ftout	ftood

ENGLISH <i>in the Year 1385.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in the Year 1763.</i>
meny	many
maner	manner
dyvers	divers
longages	languages
speche	speech
medled	mixed
Walfche	Welch
flemynge	flemmings
Saxonliche	Saxonish
Englifce	English
nothelefs	unless
myddle	middle
mellynge	mingling
chiterynge	chattering
begynnynge	beginning
bycaufe	because
oon	one
tweie	two
thre	three
fyve	five
nyne	nine
thynges	things
eyghtenthe	eighteenth
fom	some
fcole	fchool
Engelond	England
Frenfche	French
tyme	time
uplondiffche	outlandish

ENGLISH <i>in 1377.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
ther	there
theruore	therefore
is o name	his own name
I wis	I think
thulk	that
*ded	dead

ENGLISH <i>in 1385.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
laffe	less
hem	them
woned to	wanted or us'd
doo	to do
na more	no more
here	their
ilond	island
cominge	coming
foun	found
arigt	aright
undir	under
reeme	realm
hit is greet	it is great
fowninge	founding
parteners	partners
bettre	better
I trow	I think
alwey	alway
far cuntry	for country
torned	turned
nedes	needs
thys	this
fire	fir or father
Avril	April
thoaked	thanked
Thorfsday	Thursday
underftend	underftand
fpecialliche	efpecially
fcarceliche	fcarcely
	likne

ENGLISH <i>in 1385.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
likne	liken
gentilman	gentleman
moch	much
maifter	master
manere	manner
techynge	teaching
kyng	king
alle	all
grammere	grammar
*wel	well
*peple	people
*lerned	learned
*rokked	rocked
*fpeketh	speaketh

ENGLISH <i>in 1385.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
strongliche	strongly
unfchape	} unshaped <i>or</i> unpolished
schulle paffe	
the fee	the sea
travaille	travel
*doun	down
*toun	town
*bouers	bowers
*tunge	tongue
*yere	year
*eft	east
*deled	dealed

ENGLISH <i>in 1391.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
lytel	little
Lowys	Lewis
confydre	confider
fonne	fon
thine	thine
abylyte	ability
hym	him
nombres	numbers
moche	much
wol	will
wandir	wonder
wher	where
whych	which
Oxenforde	Oxford
Gode	God
perfourme	perform
perfetely	perfectly
proporcion	proportion
neuertheles	nevertheless
bokes	books
dyd	did
frownynge	frowning

ENGLISH <i>in 1391.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
comen	common
kynderyd	kindred
Aristotel	Aristotle
feme swete	seem sweet
mufys	muses
beynge	being
rebukyd	rebuked
buffyng	blushing
fhamfast- nes	} fhamefac'd- nefs
loking	
pryvylye	privily
ells foch	else fuch
ones trewe	once true
conne	can
everiche	every one
werke	work
myne engin	my own
fwerde	sword
the	thee
partye	party
praetyke	practice
	harlottes

ENGLISH <i>in 1391.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
harloties	harlots
countenaunce	countenance
com doo	come do
fycke	fick
fruytes	fruits
commo- dytyes	} commodities
pryckynge	
heuynes	heaviness
*wel	well
*yere	year
*tunge	tongue
*dores	doors
*herde	heard

ENGLISH <i>from Chaucer, in the Year 1400.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
fely	filly
halles	halls
bernes	barns
deiries	daries
shepens	sheep pens
honde	hand
fterte	start
coll the coke	call the cook
hogges	hog
dogges	dog
duckes	ducks
aferde	afraid
daunfed	danced
herte	heart
eke	also
grene mede	green mead
mo charite	more charity
praiers	prayers
freres	} friars, or bre- thren
mene while	
	mean while

ENGLISH <i>in 1391.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
fmale	small
calculed	calculated
portatife	portable
astrologien	astrologer
*teche	teach
*lerne	learn
*frende	friend
*pecis	pieces
*treyse	treatise
*holosome	wholesome
*besyness	business
*reherce	rehearse
*nere	near
*langage	language

ENGLISH <i>in 1400.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
doutous	dubious
felven	self
bordure	border
betwene	between
upperest	uppermost
natheless	nevertheless
contem- platife	} contemplative
wierdes	
icleped	words
icledped	eclipsed
commaunded	commanded
faie	say
chaunged	changed
decevable	deceivable
chere	} cheer, or ban- quet
ungreable	
dwellynges	disagreeable
stode away	dwellings
stode away	stood away
degre	degree
wefeful	wilful
blis	bliss

I faugh

ENGLISH <i>in the Year 1400</i>	ENGLISH <i>in the Year 1763</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1400.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1400.</i>
I faugh	I saw	fauf	safe
thynges	things	nede	need
ftondyng	standing	hald	hold
femblaunt	semblance	miht	might
eyen	eyes	iffe	is
brennyng	brightning	heli trauthe	holy truth
seyng	seeing	one inne	} one in three
menne	men	thrinesse	
grete	great	werld	world
thrinnesse	} three in one	livand	living
in onnesse		manhede	manhood
wurchip	worship	thof	tho' or altho'
wilk	which	thurght	through
hode	head or person	menginge	mingling
niht	night	onheda	unity
ai	ever	til helle	to hell
ailaſtand	everlaſting	thred dai	third day
almihtand	almighty	ras from	} roſe from the
als, fal, bot, as, ſhall, but		dede	
heli feſtnes	holy feaſts	yhit	yet
o fadir	one father	ate whos	} at whoſe com-
he ther	is there	come	
noht thre	} not three fa-	thaire	their
fadres		thare	there
even mette	} even met,	awendedes	own deeds
	} i. e.	haſdown	have done
	} coequal	trewlic	truly
fleſhede	} fleſhy, i. e.	faſtlic	ſtedfaſtly
		ſal	ſhall
trowe it	} believe it	lif	life
trewly			

LORD'S PRAYER, *in the Reign of HENRY VI.*
in the Year 1422.

Our Fadir that art in heavens, halewid be thi name,
thi kingdom come, to thee be thi will don, in eerthe
as in hevene, give to us this day oure breed, over
othre

othre substanc, and forgive to us oure dettis, as we forgiven our dettouris, and lede us not into temptation, but delivere us from ivel. *Amen.*

N. B. This appears to be extracted from a large manuscript vellum Bible, in the Oxford library, said to have been the King's, who gave it to the Carthusians in London.

ENGLISH	ENGLISH
<i>from Sir John Gower, Chaucer's Disciple.</i>	<i>in 1763.</i>

nowe	now
londes	lands
defaute	default
whiche	which
litell peine	little pain
errour	error
wolde	would
fundrye	fundry
auise	advise
us selues	ourselves
plenarly	fully

ENGLISH	ENGLISH
<i>from Colvile.</i>	<i>in 1763.</i>

pleasaunte	pleasant
tyme	time
fele	feel
yffuing	issuing
floryshinge	flourishing
unloked	unlooked
euyls	evils
dyd	did
commaund	command
mannes	man's
refusythe	refuseth
howre	hour
whyles	whilst

ENGLISH	ENGLISH
<i>from Colvile.</i>	<i>in 1763.</i>

darkyd	darkened
hoer heares	hoary hairs
glysteryng	glittering
beawtye	beauty
hadde fyghte	had fight
perfyte	perfect
nyghe	nigh
fene	seen
Greke	Greek
actyf	active
everiche manne of hem	} every man of them

ENGLISH
<i>from Sir Thomas More.</i>

myne	mine
doughter	daughter
beseche	beseech
hym	him
mery myndes	merry minds
hys pore	his poor
fayre wyues	fair wives
loke	look
entre	enter
Dauy the dycer	} Davy the dice-player

ENGLISH
*from Skelton,
 cotemporary with
 Sir Thomas, in 1763.
 and Poet Laureat
 to Henry VII.*

whan	when
vyrgyne	virgin
radyanthe	radiant
mutabylyte	mutability
smyllynge	smiling
callynge	calling
folly	folly
dres	dress
auctoryte	authority
trouth	truth
vyce	vice
wryte	write
ferther	further
connynge	cunning
myfs	miss
fotinge	footing
flepe	sleep
flumbrynge	flumbring
enforſed	obliged
I ne wyſte	I knew not
ſentencyouſly	ſententiouſly

*from the Earl
 of Surry.*

cladde	clad
fomer	summer
flynges	flings
hys flete	his fleet
deſyre	deſire
fprynges	ſprings
hyre	hire
traynes	trains
fpronge	ſprung
chekes	cheeks

*from the Earl
 of Surry. in 1763.*

decyte	deceit
fyre	fire
weyght	weight
depe	deep
befeke	befeech

*from Sir John
 Mandeville.*

fchip	ſhip
fchipmen	ſailors
fchippynge	ſhipping
perceyve	perceive
ſhewethe	ſheweth
preven	prove
rownd	round
fchappe	ſhape
in o contree	in our country
ſotyle wyt	ſubtle wit
zif fchippes	as if ſhips
aſtre	after
undre	under
ſeyn	ſeen
forthere	further
ſterres	ſtars
fcholde	ſhould
alle aboute	all about
fynde	find
londes	lands
yles	iſles
myddes	miſt
fchadwe	ſhadow
pfautre	pfalter
thidre	thither
envirowne	environ
alle	all
conduyt	conduct
envyronynge	environing

cownted

ENGLISH <i>from Sir John Mandeville.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
cownted	counted
feysons	seasons
ploughe	plow
knouleche	knowledge
thens	thence
whens	whence
toke outhur	took either
mowe falle	may fall
duelle	dwelt
opynyoun	opinion
thanne lat	then let
coftyng	coasting
noght	not
dede	deed
mawgree	maugre
ony gret	any great
unmevable	immovable
theise putte hem	
<i>these put them</i>	
preye redres	
<i>pray redress</i>	
ne meeven nevere	
<i>they never more</i>	
seyd zeu befor	
<i>said so before</i>	
thei that ben theire	
<i>they that have been there</i>	
goynge always	
<i>going always</i>	
grettere resoun	
<i>greater reason</i>	
bettere undirstondynge	
<i>better understanding</i>	
cowde redye perfytely	
<i>could read perfectly</i>	
hire salvacoun	
<i>their salvation</i>	

ENGLISH <i>from Sir John Mandeville.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
non evelle	no evil
contenynge	containing
wole preyen	will pray
woychipe	worship God
God with-	without
outen qua-	quality
litee	
withouten	without
quanytee	quantity
*cittees	cities
*borrows	boroughs
*beme	beam
*streme	stream
*hed	head
*rede	read
*fendes	feinds
*clere	clear
*heven	heaven
*thred	thread
*perced	pierced
*hie	high
*hyer	higher
*hieft	highest
*touers	towers
*delitable	delightable
*ditees	ditties
*drerie	dreary
*deth	death
*yere	year
*miht	might
*doute	doubt
*welthe	wealth
*deffe	deaf
*speke	speak
*helthe	health
*redy	ready
*desyer	desire

ENGLISH
from Sir John
Mandeville.
in 1763.

*wurship	worship
*plefantly	pleasantly
*erthe	earth
*hete	heat
*begile	beguile
*layfure	leisure
*eche	each
*dedly	deadly
*fethers	feathers
*nere	near
*heven	heaven
*quik	quick
*fute	suit
*herd	heard
*kall	call
*fulli	fully
*foreyn	foreign

ENGLISH
from Fortescue,
chief Justice
of the
common Pleas,
in the Reign
of Henry VII.

hit	it
peraventure	peradventure
marvelid	marvelled
fythen thes	since this
egall	equal
dowte	doubt
cal twoo	call two
fcle	flay
therfor	therefore
wherfor	wherefore
denyyd	denied
realmys	realms
reynith	reigneth

ENGLISH
from Fortescue.
in 1763.

feliship	fellowship
unyed	united
politike	politick
heed	head
minystrid	minister'd
boke	book
chaungeth	changeth
Afrike	Africa
fewerly	severely
therby	thereby
oning of	} uniting of
themself	
me femyth	} it seems to
it ys	
shewyd	} me it is
opinly	
ynough	} openly e-
*beste	
*benethe	beast
*apperethe	beneath
*reproche	appeareth
	reproach.

ENGLISH
in 1503.

frayle	frail
lyue	live
loke	look
quene	queen
rychesse	riches
wotte	know
straunge	strange
rekenyng	reckoning
wyt	wit
gere	geer
holpe	helped
ly	lay
delice	delight
brytill	brittle
	fondry

ENGLISH <i>in 1503.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1503.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
fondry wyfe	several ways	*erth	earth
wer castels	were castles	*bred	bread
peasable	peaceable	*welth	wealth
greued	grieved	*fere	fear
chere	chere	*deth	death
no nother	none other	*dere	dear
wepe fer- vaunts	} weep fer- vants	*adew	adieu
everych one		*yere	year
hew	hue	*byld	build
verely	verily	*resyne	resign
*heven	heaven	*nye	nigh
		*vanitee	vanity

A Translation of the Lord's Prayer from Thomas Matthews, which was printed in the Year 1537.

O oure Father which arte in *heven*, hallowed be thy name, let thy *kingdome* come, thy will be *fulfild* as well in *erth* as in *heven*, geve us this *daye* oure *dayly bred*, and *forgewe* us our *treaspases* even as we *forgewe* our *trespacers*; and lead us not into *temptacion*, but deliver us from *evyl*. Amen.

The LORD'S PRAYER, in the Reign of King GEORGE III. in the Year 1763.

Our Father, who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name; thy kingdom come; thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven; give us this day our daily bread; and forgive us our trespasses, as we forgive them that trespass against us; and lead us not into temptation; but deliver us from evil: for thine is the kingdom, the power, and the glory, for ever and ever. Amen.

ENGLISH <i>from Barclay, in 1550.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
spede	speed
grutche	grudge
quaynt	acquaint
doubtles	doubtless
beleue	belief
remeue	remove
fooles	fools
mowes	mouths
catiues	caitifs
eschue	eschew
fayne	fain
mekely	meekly
diffame	defame
retourne	return
payne	pain
auauncement	advancement
Inde	India
Abigayl	Abigail
discrete	discreet
Helyseus	Elijah
moſte	molt
foly	folly
punition	punishment
*frende	friend
*clenlynes	cleanliness

*from Dr. Wilson,
celebrated for
politeness of Stile,
in 1553.*

apte	apt
orderinge	ordering
comelye voice	} comely voice
bothe	
countenaunce	countenance
accordynge	according
worthines	worthiness

ENGLISH <i>in 1553.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
woordes	words
ſpeache	speech
vſe	use
tellynge	telling
aſſemblic	assembly
ſwete	sweet
foundynge	founding
deintie	dainty
oratur	orator
demaunded	demanded
vtteraunce	utterance
apparaunce	appearance
doe lykwyſe	do likewise
aunſwere	answer
marueiled	marvelled
much	much
*ſhal	shall
*redde	réadd
*delite	delight

*from Garwin
Douglas, biſhop
of Dunkel,
in 1623.*

ſic	ſuch
ſen	ſince
ſuld	ſhould
ſal	ſhall
childiſ	childiſh
ſweyand	ſweying
matteriſ	matters
diſcrive	deſcribe
murther	murder
nevir	never
thens	thence
weil	while
doith	doth
I wyl	I will

ENGLISH <i>in 1623.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
derek	direct
passit	passed
goddis gloir	god's glory
eftir deith	after death
hevinly	heavenly
lycht	light
gud readeris	good readers
ze writaris al	ye writers all
beseik	befeech
zou	you
ze nouth	ye neither
magil	mangle
my wordis	my words
*clene	clean
*wate	wait
*welth	wealth

*from Edmund
Spencer, in 1653.*

abie	abide
albee	albeit
alegge	allay
als	as, alas
askaunce	a squint
astert	startle
aye	always
affray	affright
avayle	avail
alsoone	as soon
advauce	advance
approachen	approach
anon	by and by
bale	grief
besprent	besprinkled
bevie	a company
betight	betide
brade	broad
buxome	plyable

ENGLISH <i>in 1653.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
bowre	bower
braunch	branch
bloudy	bloody
bragly	bravely
blift	blest
bewray	blab
beforne	before
brent	burnt
byrdes	birds
huddes	buds
burdenous	burthenfome
beseem	become
chaffred	fold
conne	learn
couth	could
corbe	curved
cruddle	curdle
chanct	chanc'd
choyse	choice
coupe	coop
convenable	fuitable
cragg	neck
cuppe	cup
dempt	deem'd
derring	daring
drent	drown'd
devoire	duty
demaund	demand
dimme	dim
displast	displac'd
dogges	dogs
eld	old, age
empayre	impair
emprise	enterprise
encheafon	occasion
eft	oft or often
eke	also

ENGLISH <i>in 1653.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1653.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
ene	one	lift	will
eftsoons	oftentimes	lust	like
earft	juft now	liker	likelier
emong	among	lore	learning
falfer	dissembler	meddled	mingled
flowre	flower	meiny	many
fay	faith	melling	mingling
franke	free	meint	mixt
flouds	floods	mifs	flip
for thy	for this	mickle	much
foeman	enemy	morrel	moral
frowy	froufy	marde	marr'd
foresaid	forbidden	miswent	gone aftray
forewent	gone before	misgone	gone wrong
gin	begin	miscreance	misbelief <i>also</i> dispraise
gan	began		
gang	go	mo	more
glitterand	glittering	mote	mought
girlonds	garlands	newell	novel
gotte	got	ne	nor, not
glaunce	glance	nas	has not
han	have	nil	will not
hem	them	nould	would not
her	their	nigheth	draws nigh
heame	home	nethelss	nevertheless
heyre	heir	overhaile	hall over
hond	hand	overwent	overgone
heedy	heedful	obeyfance	obedience
hoont	hunt	piers	peers
hent	held	pearfe	pierce
jovifaunce	joy, mirth	pouffe	pulse
ken	know	priefe	proof
knave	usher	peregall	peer equal
kirk	church	plain'd	complain'd
laddle	lad	quaint	ftange
laefie	lazy	rife	frequent
leefe	loofe	rifely	frequently

ENGLISH in 1653.	ENGLISH in 1763.	ENGLISH in 1563.	ENGLISH in 1763.
rowm	room	woolfe	wolf
ritch	rich	wondren	wondered
renne	ran	weasand	throat
ribaudrie	ribaldry	warfe	worfe
fithe	since	wilineffe	craft
fike	fuch	wayle	bewail
fithence	since	whilome	heretofore
fnebb	fneub	wrie	awry
fpide	spied	wot	think
feely	filly	woontst	wontest
ftoup	stoop	wonned	dwelt
ftond	stand	wonted	used
ftarre	star	yclad	clothed
flue	flew	ybrent	burnt
fhunne	fhun	yore	long ago
fhepheards	shepherds	ylike	like
thilk	this	ygirt	begirt
tinct	colour'd	yhit	yet
tottie	tottering	yif	if
tway	twain	yftablisht	established
then	than	ynough	enough
toppe	top	youngth	youthful
troublous	troublesome	youngling	yunker
themfelfe	themselves	*blere	blar
uncouth	unknown	*fmere	fmear
unkembed	uncombed	*herfe	hearfe
unkempt		*reherfe	rehearfe
unkent	unknown	*led	lead
uprift	uprifen	*fpred	spread
unjointed	disjointed	*fted	stead
unrest	disquiet	*infted	instead
wae	woe	*pitty	pity
warke	work	*drerie	dreary
wake	awake	*Rine	Rhine
wittles	blameless	*fpide	spied
weld	weild	*feend	feind
wailful	moanful	*hart	heart

*breft

ENGLISH <i>in 1653.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1653.</i>	ENGLISH <i>in 1763.</i>
*breſt	breast	*dreery	dreary
*dreme	dream	*deth	death
*peece	piece	*gotes	goats
*ment	meant	*throtes	throats
*dore	door	*ſhal	shall
*groned	groaned	*mone	moan
*flore	floor	*bruze	bruised
*nie	nigh	*ſpred	spread
*tel	tell	*ſpeke	speak
*coſte	coast	*yeeld	yield
*fleer	fear		

Note, The first and most natural alterations of our language, to the present form, may probably be supposed, was by docking such verbs as formerly ended with a superfluous letter or syllable, such as these in Spencer's Eclogues,

<i>a</i>	delighten	<i>l</i>	
aboven	<i>e</i>	leten	rulen
<i>b</i>	enduren	leaden	robben
beaten	enditen	liven	reapen
bringen	<i>f</i>	liken	regarden
ben	fetchen	looken	<i>s</i>
bearen	fallen	<i>m</i>	fitten
broughten	flocken	maken	fingen
<i>c</i>	founden	masken	sporten
comen	forbearen	meeten	stroven
caren	forſtallen	<i>o</i>	speeden
craven	<i>b</i>	overthrowen	spreaden
caſten	hangen	<i>p</i>	ſhoulden
chatten	haſten	paſſen	ſleepen
climben	helpen	parten	ſtretchen
cryen	holden	playen	ſearchen
comforten	heapen	prayen	ſayen
<i>d</i>	hadden	proven	ſtrayen
doen	<i>k</i>	<i>q</i>	ſhapen
deemen	knowen	quitten	ſhooten
			thinken

<i>i</i>	<i>u</i>	waxen	<i>y</i>
thinken	usen	waften	yellen
treaden	<i>w</i>	woulden	yoken, &c.
tellen	weren		

Several words, which we now write with *i* and *y*, were formerly by the Anglo-Saxons written with *g*; and, on the contrary, many words which are now written with *g*, were formerly written with *y*.

<i>Anglo-Saxon.</i>	<i>Modern English.</i>
ayen	agen
ayayne	again
ayenft	againft
yeven	given
yate	gate, &c.

Also many words, which we now write with *y* and *g*, were by them formerly written with *z*.

<i>Anglo-Saxon.</i>	<i>Modern English.</i>
azenft	againft
bezonde	beyond
forzeve	forgive
zong	young
zounkeris	younkers
zeer	year
zou	you
ze	ye, &c.

The following is taken from the 28th and 29th Stanzas of the ninth Canto of Spencer's Fairy-Queen, concerning dispair, for which Sir Philip Sydney gave him 200 Pounds.

“ From whom returning sad and comfortless,
 “ As on the way together we did fare,
 “ We met that villain, (God from him me blefs)
 “ That cursed wight, from whom I fcap't while're,

“ A

“ A man of hell, that calls himself DISPAIR;
 “ Who first us greets, and after fair *areeds*
 “ Of tydings strange, and of adventures rare,
 “ So creeping close, as snake in hidden weeds,
 “ Inquireth of our states, and of our knightly deeds;
 “ Which when he knew, and felt our feeble hearts,
 “ Embost with bale, and bitter *byting* grief,
 “ Which love had launced with his deadly darts,
 “ With wounding words and terms of foul *reprief*,
 “ He pluckt from us all hope of due relief,
 “ That *earst* us held in love of lingring life
 “ The hopeles *hartless* gan the cunning thief,
 “ Perfwade to die to stint all further strife,
 “ To me he lent this rope, to him a rusty knife,
 “ With which sad instrument of hasty death,
 “ That woful lover loathing *lenger* light,
 “ A wide way made to let forth living breath,
 “ But I more fearful or more lucky wight,
 “ Dismay’d with that deformed dismal fight,
 “ Fled fast away, half dead with dying fear, &c.

I might here proceed to give more examples of this sort from *Shakespear*, *Ben Johnson*, *Lord Bacon*, *Milton*, *Waller*, *Cowley*, &c. but as they would be too numerous, I rather chuse to refer to them.

Note, Notwithstanding that the gradual progress of our language (from its first rudeness to its present elegance) abundantly appears from the foregoing examples of Old English, I am far from thinking we have yet arrived to its utmost perfection, because, upon a critical review, we may perceive a certain deviation or departing from its natural analogy in numbers of old words, (such as those marked with a Star) which irregularity in our present orthography is perhaps sometimes occasioned by a too nice adherence to Etymology; all which I hope sufficiently justify the several exemplifications I have already made of such words as still retain redundant letters, that is, such as are not pronounced, and which consequently are of little or no use at all in our language. See p. 30 to 38.

A Comparative View of the *Scotch* and *Eng- lish* Tongues.

<i>Scotch</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Scotch</i>	<i>English</i>
a'	all	claife	} cloaths
abeit	albeit	claiths	
aff	off	cogg	cag, or cask
aftern	often	<i>d</i>	<i>d</i>
aik	oak	dinna	do not
ain	own	doole	dole
alane	alone	dwining	dwindling
amaist	almost	deleyte	delight
ane	one	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>
anither	another	eard	earth
awa	away	een	eyes
auld	old	<i>f</i>	<i>f</i>
ay	ever	fa'	fall
<i>b</i>	<i>b</i>	fae	foe
baith	both	fowk	folk
bane	bone	fand	found
bawm	balm	faufe	false
bauk	baulk	faut	fault
blaw	blow	fit	foot
bleeze	blaze	frae	from
bougil	bewgle	fu'	full
bennison	blessing	fow	fuddled
bountish	bounty	flighteren	fluttering
braid	broad	<i>g</i>	
burnist	burnished	gae	} go
braw	brave	gang	
<i>c</i>	<i>c</i>	gane	gone
ca'	call	gawn	going
clead	clad	gade	went
	<i>or</i>	gawd	goad
canna	cloathed	gie	give
	cannot	genty	genteel
cauld	cold	gif	} if
caule	cooler	gin	

N n

graip

<i>Scotch</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Scotch</i>	<i>English</i>
graip	grobe	nees	nose
<i>b</i>		neist	next
ha'	hall	naithing	nothing
hae	have	nowther	neither
haf	half	na-fay	} no say, or denial
hale	whole		
haly	holy		
hame	home	<i>o</i>	
<i>i</i>		ony	any
ill-fard	ill-favoured	owfen	oxen
ilka	each <i>or</i> every	<i>p</i>	
irk	irksome	pat	put
ife	I shall	pickle	a small share
ither	other	pine	pain
<i>k</i>		plet	pleat
kame	comb	poortith	poverty
ken	know	prive	prove
kurchie	handkerchief	<i>q</i>	
kist	chest	quo'	quoth
<i>l</i>		<i>r</i>	
lang	long	reave	bereave
laith	loth	rair	rear
law	low	rafhes	rufhes
loos	loves	runkled	wrinkled
lassie	lafs	rin	run
luck	} chance } happen	<i>s</i>	
<i>m</i>		fae	fo
mair	more	faft	soft
maist	moft	fair	fore
mane	moan	fairer	forer
maun	muft	fawt	falt
muckle	much	feim	feem
mou	mouth	fell	felf
mony	many	fhanna	fhall not
<i>n</i>		fimmer	fummer
na	} no none	fhoo	fhoe
nae		fhoon	fhoes
nane		fic	} fuch
		fick	

<i>Scotch</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Scotch</i>	<i>English</i>
fin or fyne	fince	twafald	two-fold
finfyne	fince that time	w	
fma'	small	wad	wou'd
flee	fly	upo'	upon
faul	foul	wordy	worthy
fnaw	fnow	walop	gallop
fay'n	faying	waken	wake
ftown	ftollen	wame	womb
fodden	boil'd	warld	world
fpake	spoke	waws	walls
ftane	stone	wawk	walk
ftarns	stars	weirs	wars
ftrae	straw	wha	who
ftreek	stretch	whilk	which
fyne	then	whinging	whining
fawfy	faucy	won	dwel
		wat	wet
together	together	winfome	handsome
tae	to	wift	known
taiken	taking	woo	wool
tauk	talk	wylie	cunning
thae	those	wi'	with
theyfe	they fhall	y	
trow	believe	yefteen	yefter night
		ye fe	ye fhall



*A Comparative View of the antient British or
Welsh, and English Tongues.*

<i>Welsh</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Welsh</i>	<i>English</i>
abad	abbot	crêd	creed
abſen	abſence	creawdr	creator
accen	accent	creadur	creature
addurno	to adorn	cut	kite
alai	alley	cwarel	quarrey
anchres	anchoresſ	croes	croſs
arch	ark	Dîs	dye
aſur	azure	deſtrywio	deſtroy
awr	hour	digrain	digreſs
Baban	baby	dolur	dolour
baril	barrel	dager	dagger
baſtardd	baſtard	diafol	devil
bardd	bard	draig	dragon
bilain	} villain or vil- lager	Ebril	April
bicre	bickering	Ebraeg	Hebrew
bod	abode	effaith	effect
boltt	bolt	effeithiol	effectual
Brython	Britons	egr	eager, i.e. ſour
bord	} board or table	enneinio	to anoint
brûd	bruit	emendio	amend
bôſt	boasting	eſguſ	excuse
briw	bruise	eſponi	expound
cappel	chappel	eſtyn	extend
calan	kalends	Ffair	fair
caplan	chaplain	ffald	fold for cattle
capten	captain	fferm	farm
carl	churl	ffêſt	faſt
caſul	caſtock	ffi	ſie
caban	cabbin	fforch	fork
elamp	clump	fforeſt	foreſt
criſiallt	cryſtal	fforffed	forfeit
cnill	knell	ffortune	fortune
côr	choir	ffrio	fry
		ffuſtion	fuſtian
		Giol	gaol
			goneſt

<i>Welsh</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Welsh</i>	<i>English</i>
goneft	honest	Lladinydd	Latinist
gradd	degree	Llundain	London
grân	grain of cloth	llaes	loose
grâs	grace	llafur	labour
grawn	grain	Maer	mayor
gronan	to groan	macerell	mackrel
gwaran- trwydd	} warranty	mau	mine
goldmair	marigold	maenor	manor
graddol	gradual	mêdd	mead
glythni	gluttony	mai	may
glân	gleon or clean	mesur	measure
gardd	garden	meistr	master
grut	grit or gravel	môdd	mode
gwinegr	vinegar	mûl	mule
gwin	wine	myrdd	miriad
gwâg	vague	na or ni	not
gwawl	wall	ngyddiaeth	negative
gwieced	wicket	nigromawns	necromancy
gwint	wind	nattur	nature
Hagr	haggard	nîth	niece
hafn	heaven	nôd	now
hoeden	hoyden	Oed	old
hyfon	} high found i. e. loud	oll	all
Ie	yea or yes	oneft	honest
ieuange	young	ongl	angle
Jo	Job	orgraph	orthography
iarll	earl	offeren	offering
isop	hyssop	onestrwydd	honesty
juddew	Jew	osgo	askew, awry
Lefain	leaven	Pab	pope
lythr	letter	palas	palace
lifrai	livery	pâr	pair
llin	line	paradwys	paradise
lôn	lane	passio	pass
lledr	leather	pawl	pole
Lladin	Latin	peren	appear
llocuft	locust	pentty	penthouse
		pirgrin	pilgrim
		perfaith	perfect

<i>Welsh</i>	<i>English</i>
perygl	peril
peryglus	perilous
person	parson
personol	personal
pib	pipe
pîb	pip
petris	partridge
piff	puff
piser	pitcher
piso	piss
pobl	people
plyg	pleat
poen	pain
porthor	porter
pottes	pottage
praid	prey
prawf	proof
presen	presence
prîs	price
prol	prologue
prûd	prudence
punt	pound sterl.
puntr or puntur	} painter
pûr	
puro	purify
pybl	people
Rhôs	rose
rhôst	roasted
rhûdd	ruddy
rhuddein	redde
Sach	sack
fachlen	sackcloth
fant	saint
farnctaid	sanctified
fafr	favour

<i>Welsh</i>	<i>English</i>
fêl	feal
feler	cellar
fillaf	syllable
fiambr	chamber
ficer	secure
fimmant	cement
fyml	simple
fimnai	chimney
sofl	stubble
folas	solace
fûr	four
Suddas	Judas
furni	furness
fygn	} a sign in the zodiack
yfprid	
yfprydol	spiritual
tyftio	attest, testify
tâd	dad, father
tymer	temper
tafarn	tavern
tryfor	treasure
tal	tall
tafg	task
topp	top
templ	temple
trafael	travel
trybedd	trevet
tri	three
têth	teat, dug
tunnell	tun
un	one
uno	unite
undod	unity
uffernol	infernal

To those who understand the FOREIGN Languages.

Note, Before I conclude my Grammar, it may be proper, for the advantage and amusement of those who understand either *Latin, Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, or Dutch,* to give some rules and examples of each, in order to shew the great affinity there is between the *English* Tongue and these Languages, from whence many words in ours may be formed with very little variation.

LATIN *words* ENGLISH
ending in us. words

authenticus	authetick
acutus	acute
abscessus	abscess
*activus	active
*amorosus	amorous
*antidotus	antidote
*circulus	circle
*candidus	candid
clericus	clerk
diaconus	deacon
*divinus	divine
*destitutus	destitute
divisus	divided
*definitivus	definitive
deductus	deduct
definitus	defined
*electus	elect
eternus	eternal
*exactus	exact
extraneus	strange
fructus	fruit
*honestus	honest
*humidus	humid
*ingeniosus	ingenious
jocus	joke
jocosus	jocose
laxus	slack or loose

LATIN *in us.* ENGLISH

laudatus	praised
meridianus	meridian
mutus	mute
opportunus	opportune
*obscurus	obscure
obscœnus	obscene
*purus	pure
*prolixus	prolix
planus	plain
putridus	putrid
periculosus	perilous
practicus	practical
*remissus	remiss
rigidus	rigid
rotundus	round
*sincerus	sincere
status	state
sensus	sense
securus	secure
synodus	synod
spiritus	spirit
splendidus	splendid
scholasticus	scholastick
terrenus	terrene
thesaurus	treasure
virtus	virtue
ventus	wind
verbosus	verbose

augmentum

LATIN *nouns* ENGLISH
in um. *nouns.*

*argumentum argument
 certum certain
 debitum debt
 *edictum edict
 elementum element
 *exemplum example
 gaudium gaiety
 *instrumentum instrument
 *momentum moment
 *monasterium monastery
 metallum metal
 *ornamentum ornament
 palatium palace
 *signum sign
 sigillum seal

stabulum stable
 scandalum scandal
 *sanctuarium sanctuary

LAT. *Supines* ENG. *Particip.*

afflictum afflicted
 collectum collected
 consecratum consecrated
 depositum deposited
 dispositum disposed
 demonstratum demonstrated
 *exemptum exempted
 *infusum infused
 *mixtum mixed
 rejectum rejected
 suppressum suppressed
 supplicatum supplicated

Note, Those words marked with a Star, by changing the last syllable *us* and *um* of the *Latin* into *o*, become entire *Spanish*.

Latin in udo. *Eng. & French*

attitudo attitude
 *altitudo altitude
 amplitudo amplitude
 *beatitudo beatitude
 fortitudo fortitude
 *gratitudo gratitude
 habitudo habitude
 *latitudo latitude
 *longitudo longitude

Latin in udo. *Eng. & French*

*multitudo multitude
 obtrudo obtrude
 plenitudo plenitude
 rectitudo rectitude
 *solicitudo solicitude
 *similitudo similitude
 solitudo solitude
 servitudo servitude
 turpitude turpitude

Note, Those of the above words marked with a Star, by striking off *o* from the *Latin*, likewise become entire *Spanish*.

The following words, by cutting off is the last Syllable of the Latin, become both English and Spanish, differing in nothing but the pronunciation.

actualis
 animalis
 carnalis
 corporalis
 criminalis

formalis
 generalis
 genitilis
 hospitalis
 imperialis

infernalis
 legalis
 prodigalis
 perpetualis
 pontificalis

principalis
 liberalis
 punctualis
 naturalis
 moralis

In

Note, In most of the following Words, which bear a great Similitude to each other, you cut off the last Syl-
lable of the Latin, which is *tas*, and join *dad* in its Room, and they are Spanish; but take off only *s* from the
Latin, and they are Italian; then change *a*, the last Letter of the Italian, into *e*, and they are French; and if
you turn the last Letter of the French, into *y*, they are entirely English.

LATIN in <i>TAS</i>	SPANISH in <i>DAD</i>	ITALIAN in <i>TA</i>	FRENCH in <i>TE</i>	ENGLISH in <i>TY</i>
authoritas	†autoridad	†autorità	†autorité	authority
agilitas	agilidad	agilità	agilité	agility
abilitas	abilidad	abilità	†habilité	ability
affinitas	†afinidad	affinità	affinité	affinity
affabilitas	†afabilidad	affabilità	affabilité	affability
adversitas	adversidad	†avversità	adversité	adversity
ambiguitas	*dudoso	ambiguità	ambiguité	ambiguity
assiduitas	*continuidad	assiduità	assiduité	assiduity
benignitas	benignidad	benignità	benignité	benignity
capacitas	capacidad	capacità	capacité	capacity
communitas	communidad	communità	†communauté	community
congruitas	congruidad	congruità	congruité	congruity
consanguinitas	consanguinidad	consanguinità	consanguinité	consanguinity
civitas	*ciudad	cività or città	†cité	city

A Complete ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

<i>LATIN in TAS</i>	<i>SPANISH in DAD</i>	<i>ITALIAN in TA</i>	<i>FRENCH in TE</i>	<i>ENGLISH in TY</i>
civilitas	civilidad	civilità	civilité	civility
chastitas	+castidad	+castità	+chasteté	chastity
calamitas	calamidad	calamità	calamité	calamity
carnalitas	carnalidad	carnalità	*charnelle	carnality
cruditas	*crudeza	crudità	crudité	crudity
crudelitas	+crudelidad	crudelità	*cruauté	cruelty
credulitas	credulidad	credulità	credulité	credulity
conformitas	conformidad	conformità	conformité	conformity
dignitas	dignidad	dignità	dignité	dignity
deformitas	deformidad	deformità	deformité	deformity
difficultas	+difficultad	difficultà	difficulté	difficulty
debilitas	debilidad	debilità	debilitéé	debility
diversitas	diversidad	diversità	diversité	diversity
divinitas	divinidad	divinità	divinité	divinity
entitas	entidad	entità	entité	entity
extremitas	extremidad	extremità	extrémité	extremity
equitas	equidad	equità	équité	equity
ebrietas	*borrachera	ebrietà	ebriété	ebriety
æternitas	eternidad	eternità	éternité	eternity

A Complete ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

LATIN	SPANISH	ITALIAN	FRENCH	ENGLISH
æqualitas	+igualdad	equalità	+égalité	equality
facultas	+facultad	facultà	faculté	faculty
fertilitas	fertilidad	fertilità	fertilité	fertility
fragilitas	fragilidad	fragilità	fragilité	fragility
fidelitas	fidelidad	fidelità	fidélité	fidelity
	{ lealtad	lealta	*loyauté	loyalty
formalitas	formalidad	formalità	formalité	formality
facilitas	facilidad	facilità	facilité	facility
felicitas	felicidad	felicità	félicité	felicity
ferocitas	ferocidad	ferocità	ferocité	ferocity
fecunditas	+fecundad	+fecondità	+fecondité	fecundity
flexibilitas	flexibilidad	flexibilità	flexibilité	flexibility
generalitas	generalidad	generalità	généralité	generality
generositas	generosidad	generosità	générosité	generosity
gentilitas	*gentileza	*gentilezza	gentilité	gentility
gratuitas	*bondad	gratuità	gratuité	gratuity
honestas	honestidad	onestà	+honetété	honesty
humilitas	+humildad	+umilità	humilité	humility
humanitas	+humandad	+umanità	humanité	humanity

A Complete ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

LATIN	SPANISH	ITALIAN	FRENCH	ENGLISH
humiditas	+humidad	+umidità	humidité	humidity
hospitalitas	hospitalidad	+ospitalità	hospitalité	hospitality
immunitas	immunidad	immunità	immunité	immunity
impunitas	impunidad	impunità	impunité	impunity
importunitas	importunidad	importunità	importunité	importunity
imbecillitas	+imbecilidad	imbecillità	imbecillité	imbecillity
immesitas	immesidad	immesità	immesité	immesity
infirmas	+infirmidad	infirmità	infirmité	infirmity
infinitas	infinidad	infinità	infinité	infinity
*iniquitas	*parcialidad	partialità	partialité	partiality
integritas	integridad	integrità	intégrité	integrity
libertas	liberdad	libertà	liberté	liberty
liberalitas	liberalidad	liberalità	liberalité	liberality
legalitas	legalidad	legalità	légalité	legality
moralitas	moralidad	moralità	moralité	morality
mortalitas	mortalidad	mortalità	mortalité	mortality
minoritas	minoridad	minorità	minorité	minority
malignitas	malignidad	malignità	malignité	malignity
maturitas	*madureza	maturità	maturité	maturity

A Complete ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

421

LATIN	SPANISH	ITALIAN	FRENCH	ENGLISH
mutabilitas	mutabilidad	mutabilità	mutabilité	mutability
magnanimitas	magnanimidad	magnanimità	magnanimité	magnanimity
majestas	majestad	maestà	majesté	majesty
nobilitas	*nobleza	nobilità	*noblesse	nobility
nativitas	natividad	natività	nativité	nativity
necessitas	necesidad	necessità	nécessité	necessity
obscuritas	†tescuridad	obscurità	obscurité	obscurity
obliquitas	*tuerto	obliquità	obliquité	obliquity
paritas	paridad	parità	parité	parity
pietas	piedad	pietà	piété	piety
puritas	puridad	purità	purité	purity
probitas	*honor	probità	probité	probity
prosperitas	prosperidad	prosperità	prosperité	prosperity
posteritas	posteridad	posterità	posterité	posterity
proprietas	propriedad	proprietà	propriété	propriety
probabilitas	probabilidad	probabilità	probabilité	probability
possibilitas	possibilidad	possibilità	possibilité	possibility
prodigalitas	prodigalidad	prodigalità	prodigalité	prodigality
				perspicuitas

A Complete ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

LATIN	SPANISH	ITALIAN	FRENCH	ENGLISH
perpetuitas	perpetuidad	perpetuità	perpetuité	perpetuity
perplexitas	perplexidad	perplexità	perplexité	perplexity
proximitas	proxidad	+proximità	proximité	proximity
proximitas	proximidad	+proximità	proximité	proximity
principalitas	*principado	principalità	principalité	principality
profunditas	profundidad	profundità	*profondeur	profundity
punctualitas	+puntualidad	+pontualità	+ponctualité	punctuality
pufillanimitas	+pufillanimidad	pufillanimità	pufillanimité	pufillanimity
qualitas	+calidad	qualità	qualité	quality
quantitas	+cantidad	quantità	quantité	quantity
sinceritas	sinceridad	sincerità	sincerité	sincerity
securitas	+seguridad	securità	securité	security
focietas	fociedad	focietà	focieté	society
fobrietas	fobriedad	fobrietà	fobriété	fobriety
soliditas	+solidad	solidità	solidité	solidity
solemnitas	solemnidad	+solennità	+solennité	solemnity
sterilitas	sterilidad	sterilità	sterilitéé	sterility
stabilitas	stabilidad	stabilità	stabilité	stability
serenitas	serenidad	serenità	serenité	serenity

LATIN	SPANISH	ITALIAN	FRENCH	ENGLISH
timiditas	†timidad	timidità	timidité	timidity
timeritas	timeridad	timerità	timerité	timerity
tenacitas	tenacidad	tenacità	tenacité	tenacity
trinitas	trinidad	trinità	trinité	trinity
tranquillitas	tranquilidad	tranquillità	tranquillité	tranquillity
unitas	unidad	unità	unité	unity
utilitas	utilidad	utilità	utilité	utility
unanimitas	*concordia	unanimità	unanimité	unanimity
uniformitas	uniformidad	uniformità	uniformité	uniformity
universitas	*academia	università	université	university
universalitas	universalidad	universalità	universalité	universality
vanitas	vanidad	vanità	vanité	vanity
veritas	†verdad	verità	verité	verity
virginitas	virginidad	virginità	virginité	virginity
volubilitas	volubilidad	volubilità	volubilité	volubility

¶ Most of the foregoing Spanish words become Portuguese by only joining e after the last d. Also those words marked thus*, depart quite from the general Rule; and those marked thus †, are a little irregular in their Orthography.

To the foregoing Simple words may be added these Compounds following, which are formed after the same Manner in all those different Languages.

LATIN	LATIN	LATIN
inabilitas	infelicitas	immutabilitas
inaffabilitas	inflexibilitas	improbabilitas
incivilitas	immensitas	impossibilitas
incapacitas	inhumanitas	improprietas
incredulitas	inhospitalitas	insinceritas
incongruitas	impietas	insecuritas
indignitas	impuritas	insoliditas
inæqualitas	immoralitas	instabilitas
infidelitas	immortalitas	inutilitas, &c.

In the following words, you cut off *s* the last Letter of the *Latin*, putting *te* in its stead, and they become *Italian*, *Spanish*, and *Portuguese*; and by cutting off their *e*, they are then both *French* and *English*. Also observe, that in the second Column, where there is but one word, it comprehends the *Italian*, *Spanish*, and *Portuguese* Languages, and where there are two words, the first is *Italian*, and the other *Spanish* and *Portuguese*.

LATIN <i>in</i> ANS.	IT. SP. & POR. <i>in</i> ANTE.	FRENCH & ENG. <i>in</i> ANT.
abundans	{ abundante abundante	†abondant abundant
constans	constante	constant
consonans	consonante	{ †consonnant consonant
elegans	elegante	elegant
instans	instante	instant
ignorans	ignorante	ignorant
petulans	petulante	petulant
vacans	vacante	vacant
vigilans	vigilante	vigilant
LATIN <i>in</i> ENS.	IT. SP. & POR. <i>in</i> ENTE.	FRENCH & ENG. <i>in</i> ENT.
absens	{ absente, †ausente,	absent
accidens	accidente	accident
antecedens	antecedente	antecedent
		benevolens

LATIN	IT. SP. & POR.	FRENCH & ENG.
benevolens	benevolente	benevolent
consequens	{ *consecutivo †conseguijente	consequent
confidens	{ confidjente *confiado	confident
continens	continente	continent
competens	competente	competent
complacens	{ *compiacente complacente	†complaisant
conveniens	conveniente	{ *convenable convenient
decens	decente	decent
diligens	diligente	diligent
differens	{ diferente †diferente	different
evidens	evidente	evident
elemens	elemente	element
eloquens	eloquente	eloquent
eminens	eminente	eminent
efficiens	{ efficiente †eficiente	efficient
excellens	{ †excellente excelente	excellent
evidens	evidente	evident
impotens	impotente	impotent
impertinens	impertinente	impertinent
imminens	imminente	imminent
indolens	indolente	indolent
insolens	insolente	insolent
innocens	innocente	innocent
incidens	incidente	incident
incontinens	incontinente	incontinent
intelligens	{ intelligente †inteligente	intelligent
indigens	{ indigente *pobre	indigent
magnificens	{ magnificente *magnifico	*magnifique magnificent
munificens	{ munificente *liberal	munificent
negligens	negligente	negligent
opulens	{ opulente †opulento	opulent
omnipotens	{ omnipotente *todo poderoso	*tout puissant omnipotent
	O o 3	penitens

LATIN	IT. SP. & POR.	FRENCH & ENG.
penitens	penitente	penitent
presens	presente	present
patiens	{ patiente †paciente	patient
pertinens	{ pertinente *tocante	pertinent
prudens	prudente	prudent
precedens	precedente	precedent
presidens	presidente	president
pestilens	pestilente	pestilent
providens	{ providente *proveido	*prevoyant provident
potens	{ potente *poderoso	*puissant potent
refulgens	{ refulgente †refulgiente	*reluisant refulgent
recens	recente	recent
vehemens	vehemente	vehement
violens	{ violente †violento	violent

Note, *Those words that do not strictly follow the Rule, or that differ in their Orthography, are distinguished as before.*

To the above *Latin* words in *ans* and *ens*, may be added these Compounds following: viz.

invigilans	improvidens	inconveniens
inconstans	impertinens	indecens
inconsonans	incontinens	indifferens
inelegans	impenitens	impotens, &c.

Note, In the following list of *Latin* words ending in *tia*, only change *t* into *c*, and they are entire *Spanish*; and by changing the whole *Latin* Syllable into *za*, they are *Italian*; but the *French* and *English* both generally end in *ance* or *ence*.

LATIN	SPANISH	ITALIAN	FR. & ENG.
<i>in antia.</i>	<i>in ancia.</i>	<i>in anza.</i>	<i>in ance.</i>
abundantia	abundancia	†abondanza	{ †abondance abundance
constantia	constancia	constanza	{ constance constancy
consonantia	consonancia	consonanza	†consonnance consonance

LATIN <i>in antia.</i>	SPANISH <i>in ancia.</i>	ITALIAN <i>in anza.</i>	FR. & ENG. <i>in ance.</i>
elegantia	elegancia	eleganza	elegance
ignorantia	ignorancia	ignoranza	ignorance
substantia	*hacienda	†sostanza	substance
instantia	instancia	istanza	instance
petulantia	petulancia	petulanza	petulance
temperantia	temperancia	temperanza	temperance
vigilantia	vigilancia	vigilanza	vigilance
LATIN <i>in entia.</i>	SPANISH <i>in encia.</i>	ITATIAN <i>in enza.</i>	FR. & ENG. <i>in ence.</i>
absentia	†ausencia	absenza	absence
accidentia	accidencia	accidenza	accidence
abstinentia	abstinencia	abstinenza	abstinence
benevolentia	benevolencia	benevolenza	{ beinveillance benevolence
beneficentia	*bien-hecho	beneficenza	{ beinfaifance beneficence
credentia	credencia	credenza	{ †creance credence
competentia	competencia	competenza	competence
clementia	clemencia	clemenza	{ clemence clemency
continentia	continencia	continenza	continence
confidentia	*confianza	confidenza	confidence
complacentia	complacencia	†compiacenza	†complaisance
corpulentia	corpulencia	†corpolenza	{ corpulence corpulency
conferentia	*coloquio	conferenza	conference
consequentia	consequencia	consequenza	consequence
convenientia	conveniencia	convenienza	convenience
concupiscentia	concupicencia	concupicenza	concupiscence
conscientia	consciencia	conscienza	conscience
differentia	†diferencia	differenza	difference
diligentia	diligencia	diligenza	diligence
diffidentia	*fospecha	diffidenza	{ †deffiance diffidence
decentia	decencia	decenza	{ *bienfeance decency
essentia	essencia	essenza	essence
eminentia	eminencia	eminenza	eminence
eloquentia	eloquencia	eloquenza	eloquence
existentia	existencia	†esistenza	existence
evidentia	evidencia	evidenza	evidence
excellentia	†excelencia	†eccellénza	excellence

imperti-

LATIN	SPANISH	ITALIAN	FR. & ENG.
impertinentia	impertinencia	impertinenza	impertinence
influentia	influencia	influenza	influence
insolentia	insolencia	insolenza	insolence
innocentia	†inocencia	innocenza	innocence
indolentia	indolencia	indolenza	indolence
indulgentia	indulgencia	indulgenza	indulgence
indigentia	*pobreza	indigenza	indigence
intelligentia	†inteligencia	intelligenza	intelligence
licentia	licencia	licenza	licence
magnificentia	magnificencia	magnificenza	magnificence
munificentia	*liberalidad	munificenza	munificence
negligentia	negligencia	negligenza	negligence
opulentia	opulencia	opulenza	opulence
patientia	†paciencia	†pacienza	patience
prudentia	prudencia	prudenza	prudence
presentia	presencia	presenza	presence
prescientia	prescienzia	prescienza	prescience
præ-eminentia	pre-eminencia	pre-eminenza	pre-eminence
providentia	providencia	providenza	providence
pestilentia	pestilencia	pestilenza	pestilence
sapientia	*sapiduria	sapienza	sapience
scientia	†sienzia	†sienza	science
sententia	sentencia	sentenza	sentence
temperantia	*templanza	temperanza	temperance
violentia	violencia	violenza	violence
vehementia	vehemencia	vehemenza	vehemence

To the above may be added these *Latin* Compounds, that are formed the same way as their simple words in all the foregoing languages.

imprudentia	indifferentia	inconsonantia	inconvenientia
impatientia	inclementia	incontinentia	indecentia
impotentia	inconstantia	incompetentia	intemperantia

In the following list of Nouns, and numerous others of the like sort, by adding *ne* to the *Latin*, they are *Italian*, and by cutting off the *e* of the *Italian*, they become entire *Spanish*, *French*, and *English*.

LATIN	ITALIAN	SP. FR. & ENG.
accessio	accessione	accession
admissio	admissione	admission
compassio	compassione	compassion
		confusio

LATIN	ITALIAN	SP. FR. & ENG.
confusio	confusione	confusion
confessio	confessione	confession
conclusio	conclusione	conclusion
conversio	conversione	conversion
compressio	compressione	compression
comprehensio	comprehensione	comprehension
divisio	divisione	division
diversio	diversione	diversion
decisio	decisione	decision
digressio	digressione	digression
expressio	†espressione	expression
extensio	†estensione	extension
intrusio	intrusione	intrusion
intercessio	intercessione	intercession
impressio	impressione	impression
intermissio	intermissione	intermission
incisio	incisione	incision
omissio	omissione	omission
passio	passione	passion
pensio	pensione	pension
propensio	propensione	propension
provisio	provisione	provision
professio	professione	profession
processio	processione	procession
progressio	progressione	progression
persuasio	persuasione	persuasion
permissio	permissione	permission
remissio	remissione	remission
successio	successione	succession
visio	visione	vision

In the following and numerous other Nouns, by adding *ne* to the *Latin*, they become *Italian*, and by changing the *Latin t* into *c*, and adding *n* to the last letter, which is *o*, they are *Spanish*; but only add *n* to the *Latin*, or change *c* of the *Spanish* into *t*, and they become both *French* and *English*.

LATIN	ITALIAN	SPANISH	FR. & ENG.
administratio	amministrazione	administracion	administration
benedictio	†benedittione	†benedicion	benediction
confideratio	confideratione	confideracion	confideration
determinatio	determinatione	determinacion	determination
educatio	educatione	educacion	education
			fornication

LATIN	ITALIAN	SPANISH	FR. & ENG.
fornicatio	fornicatione	fornicacion	fornication
glorificatio	glorificatione	glorificacion	glorification
humiliatio	humiliatione	humiliacion	humiliation
impositio	impositione	imposicion	imposition
limitatio	limitatione	limitacion	limitation
meditatio	meditatione	meditacion	meditation
natio	natione	nacion	nation
operatio	operatione	operacion	operation
petitio	petitione	peticion	petition
qualificatio	qualificatione	†calificacion	qualification
representatio	representatione	representacion	representation
significatio	significatione	significacion	signification
terminatio	terminatione	terminacion	termination
veneratio	veneratione	veneracion	veneration

☞ See more of these words ending in *sion* and *tion*, in page 51, 52, to 55 ; most of which, by the like variation as above, form five different languages.

The following is an alphabetical List of Verbs in the Infinitive Mood of four different Languages corresponding to our own.

LAT. & ITAL.	SPANISH	FRENCH	ENGLISH
assaltare	assaltar	assaillir	to assault
augmentare	aumentar	augmenter	to augment
certificare	certificar	certifier	to certify
castigare	castigar	châtier	to chastise
confirmare	confirmar	confirmer	to confirm
considerare	considerar	considerer	to consider
consultare	consultar	consulter	to consult
colorare	colorar	colorer	to colour
confutare	confutar	confuter	to confute
comparare	comparar	comparer	to compare
curare	curar	curer	to cure
dedicare	dedicar	dedier	to dedicate
entrare	entrar	entrer	to enter
fabricare	fabricar	fabriquer	to fabricate
formare	formar	former	to form
fomentare	fomentar	fomentier	to foment
fortificare	fortificar	fortifier	to fortify
frequentare	frequentar	frequenter	to frequent
governare	governar	gouverner	to govern
			gratificare

LA. & IT.	SPANISH	FRENCH	ENGLISH
gratificare	gratificar	gratifier	to gratify
inclinare	inclinár	incliner	to incline
informare	informar	informer	to inform
levare	levar	lever	to levy
lavare	lavar	laver	to lave or wash
notare	notar	noter	to note
obligare	obligar	obliger	to oblige
passare	passar	passer	to pass
preparare	preparar	preparer	to prepare
presentare	presentar	presenter	to present
pronunciare	pronunciar	prononcer	to pronounce
remediare	remediar	remedier	to remedy
refutare	refutar	refuter	to refute
ruinare	ruinar	ruiner	to ruin
separare	separar	separer	to separate
supplicare	suplicar	suplier	to supplicate
terminare	terminar	terminer	to terminate
visitare	visitar	visiter	to visit
vomitare	vomitar	vomir	to vomit
usurpare	usurpar	usurper	to usurp

Note, *Most of the above French verbs are entirely English nouns, and may be declined with the general or limited Article.*

LAT. & IT.	SP. & FR.	ENGLISH
assistere	assister	to assist
cedere	ceder	to cede
convenire	convenir	to convene
convertere	convertir	to convert
consentire	consentir	to consent
definire	definir	to define
dormire	dormir	to sleep
partire	partir	to part
fervire	fervir	to serve
vestire	vestir	to vest

The *English* Tongue shews its original partly from other Languages (*although by Corruption*) as in the following words,

IT. & SP.	ENGLISH	IT. & SP.	ENGLISH
arteria	artery	alabaſtro	alabaſter
astrologia	astrology	breve	brief
astronomia	astronomy	bravo	brave

cedro

IT. & SP.	ENGLISH	SP. & POR.	ENG.
cedro	cedar	afno	afs
crudo	crude	ancora	anchor
concordia	concord	animoso	couragious
diamante	diamond	aviso	advice
filosofia	philosophy	aspero	fierce
flauto	flute	bala	ball
famoso	famous	barbaro	barbarous
fresco	fresh	concha	conch or shell
gloria	glory	corte	a court
generoso	generous	castigo	chastisement
genealogia	genealogy	capaz	capacity
geometria	geometry	comun	common
geographia	geography	copioso	copious
industria	industry	caritativo	charitable
invidioso	invidious	captivo	captive
impetuoso	impetuous	dia	day
interno	internal	duque	duke
ingrato	ingrate	delicado	delicate
limone	lemon	estomago	stomach
membrana	membrane	escuma	scum
memoria	memory	emperador	emperor
misericordia	mercy	flor	flower
modestia	modesty	familia	family
maestro	master	facil	facile
minuto	minute	fortunado	fortunate
numero	number	famoso	famous
notorio	notorious	feroz	fierce
necesario	necessary	governador	governor
passivo	passive	honra	honour
poesia	poesy	igual	equal
pio	pious	infamia	infamy
perpetuo	perpetual	largo	large
profano	prophane	letra	letter
prodigo	prodigal	monte	mount
proprio	proper	mina	a mine
profeta	prophet	magistrado	magistrate
pronto	prompt	maduro	mature
santo	saint	numero	number
teologia	theology	navio	navy
tygre	tyger	necesario	necessary
vena	vein	odiofo	odious
vino	wine	principe	prince
valoroso	valorous	pintor	painter
virtuoso	virtuous	papel	paper

SP. & POR. ENG.

proa	prow
prodigo	prodigal
profano	prophane
profundo	profound
salario	salary
soldado	soldier
sal	salt
sexto	sixth
septimo	seventh
santo	a saint
seguro	secure
sagrado	sacred
sagaz	sagacious
secretario	secretary
trono	throne
victoria	victory
zeloso	zealous

also these VERBS,

aventurar	to adventure
ancorar	to anchor
avisar	to advise

continuar	to continue
conservar	to conserve
corresponder	to correspond
conceder	to concede
concluir	to conclude
contratar	to contract
defender	to defend
declarar	to declare
demandar	to demand
examinar	to examine
embarcar	to embark
finir	to finish
obedecer	to obey
observar	to observe
pagar	to pay
punir	to punish
pintar	to paint
prometer	to promise
recobrar	to recover
remeter	to remit
tornar	to turn
vender	to vend

In the following List of Words, which bear a great Similitude to the English, we may observe, that the Dutch generally write those Words with d, v, and z, which the English write with th, f, and s; as also those with ch, which they write with gh.

DUTCH ENGLISH

<i>d</i>	<i>th</i>	vork	fork
dik	thick	vriend	friend
drie	three	vader	father
dertig	thirty	vrydag	friday
dertien	thirteen	vier	four
donder	thunder	veertien	fourteen
moeder	mother	veertig	forty
broeder	brother	vyf	five
dank	thank	vyftien	fifteen
<i>v</i>	<i>f</i>	vyftig	fifty
vlam	flam	vergeeten	to forget
vlag	flag	vriezen	to freeze
vlas	flax	vorst	frost
vox	fox	veld	field
		vis	fish

DUTCH	ENGLISH
vlieg	fly
vingeren	fingers
z	f
zo	so
zand	sand
zeven	seven
zeventien	seventeen
zeventig	seventy
zes	six
zestien	sixteen
zestig	sixty
zee	sea
zien	to see
zoon	son
zon	sun
zuster	sister
zoet	sweet
zweet	sweat
zomer	summer
zilver	silver
zondag	sunday
zoeken	to seek
zenden	to send
zadel	saddle
zenuwen	sinews
zotelaars	futtlers
zout	salt
bezyden	besides
ch	gh
acht	eight
nacht	night
midder nacht	midnight
nachtegaal	nightingale
dochter	daughter
fechten	fight
gezicht	sight
voorzicht	forefight
licht	light
'tweerlicht	twilight
recht	right
flacht	slack
zucht	sigh
achtien	eighteen

Also these mixt

regen	rain
segen	say
segel	seal
hagel	hail
hel	hell
maan	moon
ster	star
planeten	planets
waereld	world
ys	ice
sneeuw	snow
dooi	dew
dag	day
middag	midday
rivier	river
fontein	fountain
dyk	ditch
daal	dale
kusten	coast
eiland	island
altaar	altar
bisschop	bishop
aartsbisschop	archbishop
priester	priest
diaken	deacon
mis	mass
munnik	monk
goedheid	godhead
wyffelyk	wisely
godlyk	godlike
passelyk	passingly
menschlyk	manlike
kirk	church
heilige geest	holy ghost
schriftuur	scripture
orgelift	organist
doodgraaver	grave-digger
ould vaders	ancient fathers
martelaar	martyr
lutheraanen	lutherans
kwaakers	quakers
jooden	jews
doktoor	doctor
apoteeker	apothecary
	musikant

DUTCH	ENGLISH
muſikant	muſician
dansmeester	dancingmaſter
bakker	baker
pakker	packer
weever	weaver
kuiper	cooper
goudſmit	goldſmith
hoedmaker	hat-maker
ſchoenmaker	ſhoe-maker
pruikemaker	perukemaker
ſchoolhouder	ſchool-maſter
ſchipbreak	ſhipwreck
laading	loading
rekening	reckoning
wol	wool
huiden	hides
horens	horns
yvoor	ivory
koper	copper
ſtaal	ſteel
kwikſilver	quickſilver
keil	keel
ſtroom	ſtream
ſtruurman	ſteerman
bloemen	bloom
vruchten	fruit
riet	reed
roos	roſe
lily	lilly
tulp	tulip
violen	violet
zonneblom	ſunflower
korſt	cruſt
kruim	crumb
melk	milk
hoen	hen
kapuin	capon
roch	roach
hareng	herring
tarbot	turbet
oeſters	oiſters
karper	carp
peper	pepper
boter	butter
brood	bread

DUTCH	ENGLISH
kaas	cheeſe
moſtaard	muſtard
lamoenſop	lemon juice
anſjovis	anchoovies
radyzen	radishes
ſpergies	aſparagus
artjesjokken	artichokes
appelen	apples
peeren	pairs
nooten	nuts
haazenooten	hazle nuts
abrikoozen	apricots
bruid	bride
bruidegom	bridegroom
weduwe	widow
weduwenaar	widower
oud man	old man
maagd	maid
meid	maid-ſervant
neus	noſe
oogen	eyes
ooren	ears
baard	beard
lippen	lip
tong	tongue
ſchouders	ſhoulders
elleboog	elbow
nagels	knuckles
ribben	ribs
hart	heart
long	lungs
lever	liver
gal	gall
bloed	blood
been	bone
knien	knees
hielen	heels
toonen	toes
ſmaak	ſmack
pis	urine
wond	wound
droom	dream
woord	word
kam	comb
ſnuif	ſnuff

DUTCH	ENGLISH		
werk	work	goed	good
kop	cup	hoog	high
coffy	coffee	laag	low
bier	beer	lang	long
wyn	wine	wyd	wide
hooi	hay	naauw	narrow
stroo	straw	rond	round
spooren	spurs	heet	hot
glas	glass	koud	cold
hopels	hoops	ryk	rich
deur	door	eind	end
kandelaar	candlestick	eigen	own
keetel	kettle	huis	house
schelling	shilling	een uur	an hour
kroon	crown	een kwartier	a quarter
el	ell	een jaar	a year
roed	rod	hond	hound
papier	paper	muis	mouse
parkement	parchment	rot	rat
ipons	sponge	raave	raven
reim	ream	swaluw	swallow
straat	street	maandag	monday
laan	lane	woensdag	wednesday
markt	market	zaterdag	saturday
klooster	cloister	heligen-dag	holiday
kar	cart	werken-dag	working-day
banken	benches	te laat	too late
glazen	glasses	by de kerk	by the church
juweelen	jewels	op de tafel	on the table
kouleur	colour	in't midden	in the middle

DUTCH	ENGLISH
nieuwejaers dag	new-year's day
daar is de geldt	there is the money
op wat plaats	on what place
onder de stoel	under the stool
zo haast als hy	so hasty as he
Ik en myn broeder	I and my brother
zo wel als ik	so well as I
meer als de heft	more than the half

These

These English words following are all entire French, differing in nothing but the Pronunciation.

<i>a</i>	cause	docile	<i>l</i>
abandon	certain	doctrine	latin
abject	cabinet	double	legion
acre	champion	dragon	leopard
adieu	chance	duel	lieutenant
air	chaos	<i>e</i>	long
alcoran	chaste	eclipse	lucre
amble	cherubim	edifice	lustre
amen	christ	empire	
amiable	cicatrice	europe	<i>m</i>
ample	circuit	exact	major
angle	citron	extreme	male
antidote	civil	<i>f</i>	
antipodes	colonel	face	malice
arsenic	combat	famine	mars
art	commerce	file	melon
article	complexion	flame	mile
artisan	conjecture	flute	million
aspect	cordial	force	mine
avarice	correct	fortune	minute
austere	couple	france	miracle
	cousin	fruit	mitre
<i>b</i>	crane	fusileer	mule
bible	creature	<i>g</i>	muscle
billet	credit	gabion	<i>n</i>
blaspheme	crime	gain	nature
bracelet	crocodile	grace	niece
blame	cruel	grain	noble
brave	<i>d</i>	<i>b</i>	note
brigade	danger	homicide	notice
brigadier	date	humble	novice
brute	desert	hypocrite	<i>o</i>
<i>c</i>	dialogue	<i>i</i>	oblique
calice	digestion	jasmin	obstacle
camp	direct	idiot	opinion
cancer	disciple	jesus	oracle
canon	discipline	indocile	orifice
carabine	disgrace	instinct	<i>p</i>
castor	dispute	intellect	pale
catalogue	distinct	issue	pardon
catastrophe	divers	justice	pelican
cave	divorce		perspective

pipe	public	<i>s</i>	<i>t</i>
pirate	<i>q</i>	saint	table
place	quart	saxon	temple
pleurisie	question	scorpion	theme
point	quote	scribe	theatre
poison	<i>r</i>	second	transport
pores	race	secret	triangle
posture	rare	sermon	triple
pot	rat	serpent	trouble
preface	ravelin	service	<i>v</i>
prejudice	region	severe	vain
prison	respect	suspect	vice
profane	rime	simple	<i>u</i>
profit	robe	sincere	union
protestant	rude	sole	urine
province	rupture	sphere	<i>z</i>
prune		six oranges	zone

Also these following ending in al, age, and ment.

<i>al</i>	original	language	<i>ment</i>
animal	portugal	message	amusement
capital	rival	marriage	argument
cardinal	total	outrage	complement
carnival	tribunal	pottage	compliment
conjugal	<i>age</i>	portage	document
fatal	age	privilege	emolument
final	adage	pilotage	engagement
frugal	arrearage	pillage	ferment
general	bandage	plumage	instrument
legal	courage	page	moment
liberal	cordage	rage	monument
literal	carnage	ravage	movement
local	cage	refuge	pavement
metal	engage	sage	regiment
moral	heritage	sarge	testament
mineral	hermitage	siege	vehement
nuptial	image	village	



These following English words, ending in n, r, and or, are entire Spanish, and of the same Signification in both Languages.

Amen	altar	auditor	successor
regimen	render	assessor	superior
region	vender	bachelor	pastor
legion	condescender	confessor	preceptor
religion	vernacular	doctor	mayor
union	peculiar	executor	terror
communion	articular	inferior	posterior
question	particular	interior	proprietor
opinion	perpendicular	exterior	prolocutor
margin	ardor	intercessor	

The following words, terminating in ble, are entire Spanish, French, and English, and of the same Signification in all the three Languages, differing in nothing but the Pronunciation.

abominable	irreprehensible	miserable
alterable	impenetrable	notable
culpable	incomprehensible	*intelligible
detestable	immutable	irreproveable
execrable	visible	irreparable
comparable	invisible	*comfortable
incomparable	inevitable	terrible
sensible	innumerable	irritable
insensible	instable	variable
separable	invincible	formidable
inseparable	inviolable	incapable
possible	intolerable	corruptible
impossible	probable	incorruptible
curable	improbable	incorrigible
incurable	disciplinable	incompatible
*irrevocable	divisible	incomportable
venerable	indivisible	indeclinable
infallible	favourable	inexorable
indeclinable	inestimable	indeterminable
memorable	indubitable	inscrutable
intractable	impenetrable	vegetable

Note, Those marked with a Star, differ a little in Orthography.*

The following English Words become entirely Spanish, by only adding a, e, or o, to the last Letter.

<i>a</i>	person	violet	*lad
angelic	*plat	*vend	*lob
atheist	*poll		*last
*barb	*quit	<i>o</i>	liquid
calvinist	*ran	am	leopard
comet	rasp	an	leonard
cost	ruin	access	*man
carp	republic	accent	much
calm	*falt	barber	*mud
*dam	folid	bernard	may
*ell	fusan	*bob	*most
evangelist	*tom	*bell	morter
*ireland	*trip	*bled	mariner
*joy	*till	*cast	merit
*hay	torment	*cub	magic
logic	*van	camp	*nab
line		*card	organ
lantern	<i>e</i>	*caball	occult
*mat	art	content	pulpit
*mam	apart	chrisostom	palm
music	banquet	*dig	pur
*miss	convenient	divers	*pin
*man	*call	dispenser	pulp
*pap	conform	excess	pals
*pop	fraud	ecclesiastic	public
pint	firm	firm	prosper
papist	grand	gust	*quart
prophet	guard	*gall	ray
planet	*hall	hall	*ram
problem	*infant	*horn	*rat
*put	incontinent	honest	talent
poet	part	*hart	van
*pin	paquet	humid	violin
plant	parent	human	violent
*plum	patent	secret	vassall

Note, Those marked with a Star, have a different signification in Spanish.*



These words following are English and Dutch, and of the same signification in both Languages.

as	hair	milt	storm
arm	ham	oven	stopper
by	hop	over	signet
bed	had	pan	ten
brave	in	pap	turf
drink	is	pen	west
god	ink	ring	wind
hard	land	span	water
hand	man	spit	winter
half	mast	stand	wolf, &c.
haven	my	stout	

These words following are English and Welsh, and of the same signification in both Languages.

angel	cap	gem	pôst
barr	carr	lamp	print
box	cart	marl	sp
camel	cost	mew	toll
canon	elephant	mold	

F I N I S.



21 W 17

Wiseman, Charles

A complete english grammar on a new plan For the use of foreigners ... ;
in two parts

London 1764

Augsburg, Staats- und Stadtbibliothek -- S 1822
urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb11279299-7